

FUTUH AL-HABASA

THE CONQUEST OF ABYSSINIA

TSEHAI



[16th Century]

Paul Lester Stenhouse. is a Catholic priest, a member of the Congregation of the Missionaries of the Sacred Heart of Issoudun. France. He has spent all his priestly life as a journalist. A foundation member, and a member of the Council of the Societe d'Etudes Samaritaines, he has translated into English the Kitab al-Tarik of the 14th Century Samaritan Priest Abu l-l'ath. and is the author of a number of monographs on Middle Arabic Grammar, and various aspects of Samaritan history, chronology and religion. He writes extensively on Middle Eastern politics and history. His special interest over the past twenty years has been Lebanon/Syria and the Balkans.

Richard Pankhurst, the founder and first Director of the Institute of Ethiopian Studies of Addis Ababa (formerly Haile Sellassie I) University, has lived in Ethiopia for over thirty years. He is currently Chair of the Society of Friends of the Institute, as well as a founder member of the Committee for the Return of the Aksum Obelisk and of AFROMET: the Association for the Return of Maqdala Ethiopian Treasures. His published writings include numerous monographs, among them An Introduction to the Economic History of Ethiopia (1961). Economic History of Ethiopia (1968). The History of Ethiopian Towns (1982, 1984). A Social History of Ethiopia (1990), An Introduction to the Medical History of Ethiopia (1990), and History of the Ethiopian Borderlands (1997). William Simpson's Diary of a Journey to Abyssinia. 1868. which he edited in 2002. is also published by Tsehai Publishers.

A word should be said about the title of this work - 'Futuh **al-l** lahasa,' or 'Conquest of Abyssinia' - which undoubtedly reflects the situation as it seemed to its YamanT author at the time of its composition. The forces of Imam Ahmad bin Ibrahim had occupied the greater part of Ethiopia. The resistance of Emperor I ebna Dcngel had virtually come to an end, and many Christians had chosen to

convert to Islam. The victorious Imam's regime seemed there to stay.

It was, however, far from the end of the story. The Imam was killed in battle on February 21, 1543, whereupon his army almost immediately disintegrated. Those of his soldiers who could do so made their way back to the East. Not a few Muslim converts reverted to their former faith.

Die T'utuh thus refers to a relatively short, though crucially important, period in Ethiopia's long history. The book is nevertheless valuable, in that its author was an eye-witness of many of the events he describes, and writes, as far as we can judge, with a degree of objectivity rare for his time.

Cover art by Marcos Jembere.

Courtesy of Michigan State University Museum. Photo by Raymond Sylverman.

CONQUEST OF ABYSSINIA

INTRODUCTION

The rise in the early sixteenth century of the charismatic Adal leader Imam Ahmed bin Ibrahim; his seizure of power at the old Islamic city of Harar; his campaigns against Somalis and other fellow Muslims in the neighbouring lowlands; his *jihad*, or Holy War, against what he considered the 'non-believers' of south-west Ethiopia, and his subsequent neardestruction of the age-old Ethiopian Christian state - all this constituted a major turning-point in the history of Ethiopia and the Horn of Africa.

The wars of Ahmed bin Ibrahim - Ahmed Grafti, or the Left-handed, as he is often called - had immense consequences. These included the conversion to Islam, albeit in many cases only temporary, of a vast proportion of the Ethiopian population; the virtual collapse of the traditional Christian Ethiopian empire; the breaking-down of long-established feudal relationships, and related taxation; heavy loss of life, by combatants and civilians alike; the capture, and despatch to Arabia (and also to India) of innumerable slaves; the destruction of some of the country's finest Christian churches, monasteries, and treasures; and the bringing to Harar, and export to Arabia, of considerable quantities of gold, used in part by the imam for the purchase of fire-arms and other weapons.

The warfare associated with the imam, which had an important international dimension, became increasingly enmeshed in the global conflict between the Christian Portuguese and the Muslim Ottoman Turks. This led to the arrival of many Arab fusiliers and canoneers on the Imam's side, and of their Portuguese counterparts, led by Vasco da Gama's son Christovao. Of that of the Ethiopian

Christian state.

Imam Ahmed was finally defeated in 1543. after which the Adal state declined, and thereafter adopted a largely defensive stance. On the other hand the Ethiopian Christian monarchy, though victorious, did not recover its prestige, area, or wealth for several centuries.

The fighting of this period, and the weakening of both contestants, was followed meanwhile by extensive population movements, most notably the northward migration of the Oromos. then generally referred to as Gallas. as well as that of the inhabitants of Gafat. Damot and elsewhere.

The imam's wars constituted a great, and at times tragic, human drama, a saga of death, pillage and destruction, as well as of military heroism and religious ecstasy. Many of the actors, on both sides, risked their lives to propagate, or defend, their religion, and deeply-held beliefs. Others tried no less desperately to save their skins, and those of their relatives and loved ones, by accommodation to the exigencies of the hour. Many others again were influenced, if not governed, by all-important family ties. There were many forced conversions, and though a few heroic men and women willingly faced martyrdom for their beliefs, others displayed considerable ingenuity in the day-to-day struggle to survive.

For our knowledge of this important, and fascinating, period of Ethiopian history, which is the subject of numerous legends, we are deeply indebted to one of imam Ahmed's followers, Sihab ad-Din Ahmed bin'Abd al-Qader bin Salem bin TJtman. He was a scholarly Yemani. who accompanied his master and hero on several of his expeditions.

Sihab ad-DIn's work, the *Futuh al-Habasa*, or Conquest of Habasha. i.e. Abyssinia, is an elaborate, and remarkably detailed, narrative written in Arabic shortly after 1559. Though prone at times to exaggerate, and to adopt flowery language, interspersed with poetry, its author was on the whole a good and. for the most part, dispassionate observer. He writes largely as an eye-witness. He tells us for example that he was present at the famous battle of Sembera Kore in 1529: was with the imam and the latter's wife Hajirah at Bararah. where the Adal army was greatly inconvenienced by the wind and the rain: and. passing by way of I fat. later joined his masters camp at Wasal. prior to the siege of the Amba. which lie describes in such detail that one can only assume that he was present.

The *Futuh* has much to tell us about the imam: his character, motives and aspirations, it throws valuable light on his relations with his allies and supporters in Arabia; with his soldiers, many of whom were at times most reluctant to follow

him on campaign: and with various sections of the Ethiopian population - nobles, peasants, merchants and slaves, as well as Christians, Muslims, Falasas and Animists.

Sihab ad-Din's oral sources were apparently also both informative and reliable. Beside the Imam himself, they included such individuals as Abbas and Azmac Haibi, who had fought in the Christian army at Sembera Kore or elsewhere, before defecting to the forces of Adal.

The author of the *Futuh* is thus able to present a largely balanced report of the *minutiae* of events, as well as detailed, and historically invaluable, descriptions of the country through which the Imam's army passed, its mountains, rivers, and towns. The text thus provides us with many interesting glimpses of the lands Ahmad ruled, conquered and taxed.

Sihab ad-Din's account is, however, incomplete: it ends shortly after the imam's conquest of the islands of Lake Tana in 1537, i.e. four years before the coming of the Portuguese expeditionary force, and six before the imam's demise. The existing text, which the author describes as the first volume of his work, thus represents only part of a study probably intended to run to two, or perhaps more volumes. Scholars over the years have searched for later chapters, but in vain. Whether they were never written - perhaps on account of their author's death, or were lost, remains a matter of speculation. The mystery has even given rise to the suggestion, made however entirely without any evidence, that the work may have been destroyed by the Imam's widow. The surviving text, which forms a unity in itself, is nevertheless a testimony of unsurpassed historical importance.

The significance of the *Futuh* was first recognised in Gujarat, the region of India with closest connections with Ethiopia, and the destination of numerous slaves captured by the imam in the course of his campaigns. A copy of Sihab ad-Din's work reached Gujarat within only a few decades of its composition. The text was considered so important in explaining the influx of Abyssinian slaves into that part of India that the Gujarati writer ■Abdallah Muhammad bin Omar al-Makki al-Asafi al-Ulugkanl, better known as Haji ad-Dabir, included portions of it in his history of Gujarat written in Arabic around 1605. He may have been encouraged in this by the fact that he was in the service, successively, of two noblemen, Muhammad Yaqut Ulugh Khan and Abdul Kerim Dayfud Muhammad Fulad Khan. Both had apparently been captured in the Imam's wars, or were the descendants of persons so captured.

The *Futuh* was not, however, known to European scholarship for almost a quarter of a millennium. Perhaps the first to learn of Sihab ad-Din's work was the

British traveller Richard Burton, who described it in his *First Footsteps in East Africa* as 'a rare work'. He declared that the Amir of Harar 'had but one volume' of the *Futuh*. and added, on what evidence he does not state, that 'the other was to be found in Mocha or Hedaydah'.

Though undoubtedly rare, several copies of the first volume of the *Futuh* (but none of any second) subsequently came to light. Copies were obtained by the French scholarly travellers Antoine and Arnauld d'Abbadie; the Egyptian conqueror of Harar, Rauf Pasha; the British consular representative on the Somali coast. Major Hunter; the French trader in Aden. Alfred Bardey; the British governor of the Sudan. General Charles Gordon; and the French scholar, Casimir Mondon-Vidailhet.

The *Futuh* acquired enhanced European interest in the last decade of the nineteenth century, a time when the Italians, French and British were coincidentally also developing expansionist interests - or ideas of 'conquest' - in the area.

The first version of the *Futuh* in Italian, was produced by Dr Cesare Nerazzini, an Italian military physician in Ethiopia, and was published in Rome in 1891. Entitled *La conquista mussulmana dell'Etiopia nel secolo XVI*. it was based on a copy of Sihab ad-Din's text, which the Italian had managed to see (but not to purchase) in Harar. and was somewhat inadequately paraphrased by his local interpreters.

The publication of Nerazzini's work attracted the interest of a British scholar. Samuel Arthur Strong, of Cambridge. Basing himself on a copy in the then British Museum, he published a short extract, entitled *Futuh al- Habasha or the Conquest of Abyssinia by Shihab al Din Ahmad B. 'Abdal Kadir B. Salim B. 'Uthman*. Part 1 of this work, a slim volume, appeared in London in 1894. In his Introduction, he comments that copies of the *Futuh* were 'extremely rare in Europe, and that those that exist in the East seem to be jealously guarded by their owners'. Strong's work ran to a mere 48 pages, and took the story only as far as the battle of Sembera Kore in 1529. Strong also envisaged issuing an English translation, but, learning that Rene Basset had plans to publish the *Futuh* with a French translation, abandoned all further work on it. Part I was thus the only part to see the light of day.

A second translation of the *Futuh*. again in French, had meanwhile been started by Antoine d'Abbadie who died, however, before its completion. His work was subsequently completed by the Austrian traveller Philipp Paulitschke. It was entitled the *Futuh e! Habacha: Des conquêtes faites en Abyssinie au XVI^e siècle*. It appeared in Paris, with the publication date 1898.

Rene Basset meanwhile was continuing with his work, and later published the resultant Arabic text, with a new French translation. These appeared in Paris, in two volumes. Entitled *Histoire de la conquete de l'Abyssinie (XVle siecle)*. Basset's Arabic edition, though issued shortly after that of d'Abbadie and Paulitschke, to which it refers (for the most part critically), was actually dated a year earlier, i.e. 1897. The French translation appeared over ten years later in 1909.

The Arabic text of Haji ad-Dabir's *History of Gujarat*, with its extracts from Sihab ad-Din's work, was published by Dennison Ross, the British historian of India, in London, in 1910-1928.

Most of the above works were published over a century ago, when the historical geography of the Ethiopian region was still relatively little known to the outside world. The present translation of the *Futuh*. by Paul Stenhouse. is based on Basset's published Arabic text, but also refers to variants in the Gujarati text. The present work is the first English translation ever issued. It is designed to make Sihab ad-Din's work available to the present-day Anglophone reading public, both Ethiopian and foreign, as well as to offer the reader more up-to-date annotations. Though many of the places mentioned cannot be located without extensive field-work beyond the means of either translator or annotator, the footnotes by Paul Stenhouse the translator (S), and Richard Pankhurst the annotator (P). attempt to throw light on the translation, and to identify the principal places, as well as many of the more important individuals, institutions and customs, referred to in the text.

Basset's Arabic text was based on three MSS. which he designated A. B and C. MS. A was a gift from Alfred Bardey to the Bibliotheque Nationale of Algeria [MS. No. 1628; formerly 1732]. MS. B was the British Museum MS. No.2409 that had belonged to General Gordon. This was the MS. that

Strong started to translate and courteously abandoned when he learned that Basset had undertaken a French version. MS. C was the Mondon-Vidailhet text which in Basset's judgement belonged to a different family of MSS. from Alfred Bardey's MS. A.

We have departed from MS. A. Basset's preferred text, and followed alternative readings - mainly from MS. C - when this seemed called for. Occasional *lacunae* that occur in Basset's translation, caused by *homoioтелеута*, have been remedied. The translator's aim has been to produce a text that can be understood by a wide readership, and generally literalness has been preferred to elegance where the latter might have called for an above-average grasp of the English language. However, the literal translation of *Futuh al-Habasa* is "Conquests of Abyssinia" but we have followed Basset, and used the singular. 'Conquest.' as the plural seemed

inappropriate.

The text poses major problems of transliteration in that it is written in Arabic, but includes many Ge'ez, Amharic or Tigrinya names as well as several phrases in Ethiopian languages. Arabic/Muslim names have been transliterated in accordance with conventional practice, but Ethiopian/Christian names have been rendered as far as possible in their original form, to make the translation more intelligible. The Arabic usage as given in the *Futuh* has, however, as far as possible, been indicated in footnotes. Local names which could not be identified with any precision have been left unchanged.

A novel feature of this edition is the division of the text by the insertion of section titles: these are designed to explain the contents of the various parts of the work, and should assist comprehension of an at times difficult and convoluted narrative.

Sihab ad-Din's work, as the reader will perceive, is invaluable. It throws light not only on the military events with which the author is primarily concerned, and on their religious consequences, but also on economic, social and cultural conditions in many parts of the country, as well as on the traditions of the Ethiopian people in all walks of life.

March 25, 2003

- Paul Stenhouse and Richard Pankhurst

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I should like to thank Professor Richard Pankhurst for drawing my attention to the Arabic text of the *Futuh al-Habasa*, for contributing the annotations to the English translation, and for numerous acts of scholarly kindness. Thanks are due to a number of other friends without whose help and skills, especially computer skills, this work would not have been completed: Vony Sugiarto, Gershwin Luhur, Joseph Turner, Jeanne Ryckmans, Joseph Assaf, Rudi Hariyanto, Hendrikus Wijono, Terry Baldwin, Tony Bonanno and Fouzy Raffoul. Professor Alan D. Crown offered valuable advice and encouragement. Inevitably, inconsistencies and misspellings will occur in a translation of a work as complex and varied as the *Futuh*. For these and any other errors that may inadvertently have been overlooked, I crave the reader's indulgence.

Paul Lester Stenhouse MAY the generous God, endowed with graciousness, openhandedness, and the performance of good deeds; who gives before the asking, 'and amply bestows upon us good things,'¹ favours and largesse, be praised. He

begins with creation, follows up with his support, and pursues what is proper. God be praised for his abundant and plentiful gifts, his unceasing and inexhaustible graciousness that is without favouritism. I declare that there is no God but Allah,² who is unique, and without peer.

I also declare that our lord, Muhammad, is His servant and Messenger whom He sent to us - a faithful and self-evident Messenger, a Prophet, the Prophet for the believer, Muhammad the elected one, the chosen one. May God bless him and grant him salvation as day follows night. And may God bless his family and his companions who have defended the true religion with their swords and their spears and generously given of their wealth and very selves, and left their people and their fatherland.

Now then, to our topic. Know that the Messenger of God, may God bless him and grant him salvation, is the best of messengers and his nation is the best of nations. This is what the Lord of Lords decreed in the sure [place] of the Book where the Most High says: 'You are the best of the nations which has been selected for the people'." He also says, 'And thus we have made you a well-balanced nation.'"⁴ And all this only because they followed the most gracious of Messengers, the first of them in grace, the last of them to be sent, Muhammad, may God bless him and grant him salvation. Thus they became the most celebrated of nations; and their most renowned service of God was held to be their persistence in the truth, and their fighting against the infidel opposed to this religion, coming from every race and from all directions: from where the stars first appear" and the west wind blows;⁶ from north and south.

They proclaimed it with their swords in the east and the west, in the rugged mountains and the valleys. 'They well prepared the land/ and thoroughly subdued the infidels with their swords. They drove their religion's tent pegs deep, and built it into a mighty pavilion .

By the kindness of the Most High God, their descendants never cease following in the footsteps of their ancestors; and those who struggle against them receive nothing but disaster for their pains. And they, up till now, make the infidels and the dissemblers drink deep from the cup of death; and sprinkle upon them the dust of calamity until, God willing, the day of resurrection puts an end to their arrogance.

In the words of the Most High, 'Then your Lord announced that he would certainly send against them those who would subject them to the most evil punishment, until the day of resurrection.

Muhammad said, peace be upon him [f2] 'No part of my nation that is steadfast in the truth will ever suffer harm from apostates among them, or from the disobedient ones among them. Until God's command comes they will [always] be like this.'

Abu Daud,⁹ and others as well, transmitted this genuine saying. How, therefore, can people be so ignorant and stupid as to say 'these are the last days,' and 'we are in the Millennium'? How can they be so ignorant of the promise made to the communities? And if they see the better in their time, they follow, instead, the worse. That is the result of their wicked opinions, and inadequate understanding, their ignorant prattling and their non-existent intelligence, basing themselves on what is without foundation - viz.: [the

belief] that Judgement Day has arrived, and its portents have been revealed: among which portents are the waxing of evil, and the waning of good.

Even if this were true, it would not be necessary that it be true of every country, or verified in the case of every servant of God. And again, one should not be depressed by what certain ignorant people say who transmit the following *hadith*.^(f) 'I will not grant the earth 2,000 years'. In any case,

knowledgeable men, through whom God assists us, have said that it is not a [genuine] *hadith* but a false one.

as-Suyuti ¹¹ - may God the Most High show him mercy - has said that the prophetic *hadiths* indicate that this Muhammadan nation will outlast a thousand years, but the supplementary years will not reach the five-hundredth. What happens after this the Most High God knows; he is Allknowing, the Omniscient One. We know' that the eye of God watches over the nation of Muhammad, may God bless him and grant him salvation, and that their religion will never cease to be proclaimed and renewed.

If someone should say, 'O most competent observer, O most scrupulous questioner of momentous deeds, and of the happenings down the ages, delight me with tales of the *mujahidun* ¹² who have sacrificed their lifeblood, waging war from dawn to dark. Regale me with what has happened in your own time, and with what you have seen with your own eyes,' I would reply: As for the tales that treat of the Chosen One, may God bless him and grant him salvation, and his companions, these have gladdened the times.

And as for the tales of the Caliphs¹¹ who followed the true faith, endowed with

understanding and keenness of perception, these are written in their biographies, and in the chronicles of the learned, radiant with their graciousness and their deeds. Every' book is full of the tales of those who came after them; there is no room for doubt about this; no problem.

But I will present you with solid and authentic fare that will arouse longing in souls and through which the Prophet, may God bless him and grant him salvation, will teach us. For it is true of him, may God bless him and grant him salvation, that he rose from his place¹⁴ and said to them, 'Nothing was and nothing will be until the day of the resurrection, but I will notify you of it.' The one w^ho has uttered warnings about this day is he upon whom we can rely for help, in the events that God has brought about amongst us. He, may God bless him and grant him salvation, had indicated who would be the restorers for this nation of the authority of its religion.¹⁵ Some there will be among them who will renew' it by spreading knowledge in faraway countries; others will renew it by striking schismatics and hypocrites with their swords.¹⁶ Others again will renew it by good administration and knowledge born of experience.

[Sources of the Chronicle]

Pay attention to me that I may recite to you at length. All of you gather round me, to receive the testimony.¹ And cast a glance at my book entitled 'Futuh al-Habasa' - The Conquest of Abyssinia^{1 s} - effected by the celebrated, glorious, high-minded, renowned fortunate imam, whose equal one has never heard of, nor has there ever been his like. May God proclaim over us and over the Muslims his blessings and his amiability: the triumphant king, the glowing flame, the star of religion, from the stock of the lords of the *mujahidun*, one of the imams akin to the Mahdi, attentive to God's commands, w^ho has put pleasing God ahead of all other aims, our Lord and master, the elevated, the revered honourable lord, the emir^{1'} of believers, the sultan, the imam Ahmad bin Ibrahim al-Gazi, the *mujahid*, the mooring cable.

May the Most High God have mercy on him, the mercy that exonerates, that makes him dwell close to Him in the world to come, by the good offices of Muhammad, the Elect, the chosen one, his family and his companions, the righteous and the elite. May the Most High God grant him all his desires, and whatever occurs to him to want in the afterlife, and in this world. For He is master of this world, and Lord of all that is in the next one. Amen. O God, Amen. For He is famous for this, both by his very name, and by the description given of Him as depicted in the books.^{2"}

It was my lord the sheikh, the universal pole, the sparkling tight, endowed with long-standing responsibilities, the performer of pleasing deeds, the seeker of revelations, both secret and public, who is conversant with the Most High God - the friend of God, Sams ad-Din 'All bin 'Umar as-Sadill al- Qarsi al-Yemenr¹ - may God assist us through him and his learning, Amen - who pointed him out. He commemorated his~~ wondrous deeds, just as the imam al-Mas'udr' commemorated his battles and other things besides.

They reported on his conquest of Abyssinia, the whole of it: its plains and rugged mountains; and on his humiliating of its leaders and scattering of its treasures and setting fire to its churches, [f³]

My lord, the shickh, the friend of God the Most High, and the son of God's friend Muhammad bin Ahmad bin Muhammed bin 'Abd al-Wahid bin Yussef bin Ya'qub al-Qarsi al-TunisI al-Magrabi al-Dahmani said [to me], 'O my son, he [the imam Ahmad] is one of the most outstanding of the pommels of God,' and he was right: he was one of the most outstanding of the pommels of God, and one of the most outstanding of the swords of God w hom the Most High unsheathed so that his religion might triumph: and so that the infidels might be subjugated: and spurious books might be torn to shreds; and that the houses of lies might be burnt down; and the party of Satan the acursed, might be split asunder. Ahmad's first command was outstanding. And the appositencss of his judgement may be adduced from the memorable events, and famous conquests, and the foregathering of victorious armies.

*The author'** may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: They whom I could trust concerning these events, from among *the story tellers* who were eye-witnesses, are my informants: for example, the emir Husain bin Abu Bakr al-Gaturi, and Ahmad -Din bin Kalid bin Muhammad bin Kair ad-DIn, who commemorate from among those who ruled the land of Sa'd ad-

Din.²ⁿ and from among the *mujahidun* who administered the country, the sultan Muhammad bin Azr.^{2ft}

[Background to the *jihad*]

The storyteller says: The sultan Sa'd ad-Din had, among his children, Abu Bakr and Badlai. The latter had tw'o sons, one of whom was Muhammad bin Badlai.^{2ts} grandfather of the sultan 'Utman bin Suleiman; and Abu Bakr had tw'o sons, of whom one was'All who was grandfather of the sultan Barakat, and [the other was]

Habib. 'Alf's children were 'Umar-Din bin Muhammad bin Azhar ad-Din bin 'All bin Abu Bakr bin Sa'd ad-Din;⁹ and his second son's name was Azar bin Abu Bakr: he was the grandfather of the sultan Muhammad bin Abu Bakr bin Muhammad bin Azar bin Abu Bakr bin Sa'd ad-Din. And Badlai bin Sa'd ad-Din's second son's name was Sams ad-Din and his line became extinct.³⁰

The sultan Muhammad bin Azar bin Abu Bakr bin Sa'd ad-Din ruled the country for thirty years during the ninth century.³¹ And after Sultan Muhammad embarked on the *jihad* in the country of Abyssinia, there was a clash between the Muslims and the infidels; with the infidels inflicting disaster upon the Muslims, killing a vast number of them.

Returning to his country Sultan Muhammad was murdered by his inlaw³² Muhammad bin Abu Bakr bin Mahfuz, a prominent person in the country, who ruled the country after him for one year. Then Muhammad bin Abu Bakr bin Mahfuz was, in his turn, murdered. His killer was Ibrahim bin Ahmad, ruler of the country of Hubat." of the tribe of Balaw,³⁴ a prominent person in the country who ruled the country after him for three months.

Ibrahim bin Ahmad was killed in his turn. His murderer was Wasani the slave of Garad Mahfuz,⁰ a prominent person in the country- who ruled the country for three months. He was arrested after this, and his captor was

3>6

■*

37

Mansur bin Muhammed who sent him in shackles to Zayla* and he was murdered by one of the slaves of Yafa' in Zayla'. In his stead ruled the emir Mansur bin Mahfuz bin Muhammad bin Garad Adas.* Garad Mansur waged war against Garad Abun"" for five months.

After this Garad Abun came against him,⁴⁰ and ruled for seven years. He clung to the truth, and exercised justice and authority in a fairway, banning what was forbidden [in the Law], killing highwaymen, forbidding wine, games, and dances accompanied by drums. The country flourished. He cultivated the nobles and the Qur'anic teachers, the dervishes and the sheikhs. He ruled over his kingdom, and worked for the good of his subjects.

[Ahmad bin Ibrahim]

Our lord the imam of the Muslims, Ahmad bin Ibrahim at-Gazi was at that time a knight under Garad Abun, endowed with intelligence and foresight who consulted, in his youth and in his prime, the inspiration of God the Most High in regard to the commission that God willed should be entrusted to him. Garad Abun loved him mightily, when he saw how^f courageous and astute⁴¹ he was.

After this, the sultan Abu Bakr,⁴² son of the sultan Muhammad bin Azr from the stock of Sa'd ad-Din, stood up against Garad Abun. He raised against him a band of Somalis⁴¹ whom he had recruited from among the riffraff and highwaymen. They fought against Garad Abun and waged a bloody battle against him, killing Garad Abun bin Adas in his homeland as he defended his country and his family⁴⁴ He died a martyr's death. May the Most High God have pity on him.

The sultan Abu Bakr ruled the country after Garad AbOn. He laid the country waste. Highw'avmcn re-appeared, as did alcoholic drinks. In his time, the people of his realm harassed travellers in order to do them harm. Corruption re-appeared and no one in his day received justice for evil done against him. The nobles, Quranic teachers and sheikhs rebuked him for his conduct.

When the imam Ahmad realised that the sultan and his army had left the path of the Qur'an and the Sunna by their daring to do what was forbidden, and their ignoring of the prohibition against illicit acts, he took to flight, accompanied by people of the country who had formed part of the army of Garad Abun. They assembled their forces in a country called Hubat,⁴⁶ and settled there. The number [f'4] of their horses was at that time a hundred or more.

[The first *jihad*]

They made Garad ^kUniar-Din⁴ their emir over them. It was while he was in this position that they heard that one of the patricians of the Hati ^{4*} king of the Abyssinians, a Christian, named FaniTel,⁴ ' from the Dawaro ' people, along with a band of other patricians, had invaded the country of the Muslims up to a point in the country of Hubat not far from where they were. These had plundered the country of the Muslims, captured the wives and families of the Muslims, and taken their livestock. The imam Ahmad bin Ibrahim and his forces heard this news and immediately set out to attack the infidels, goading each other on to wage the holy war in the way of God.

They joined forces at a place called "Aqanr ¹ - it was a mighty river, with copious water - and the Muslims drew up their battle lines. The infidels, unaided by God, did likewise, and mobilised their infantry and their cavalry. The Muslims attacked them in a single wave. The fighting was intense, the battles hard fought, with choking dust, hero joining with hero. At that time all that could be heard was the thud of sword against leather shield.

The imam Ahmad attacked the middle rank of the infidels and scattered their united front, splitting them all asunder. He charged into the midst of them, and

brought their cavalry to the ground.

The Muslims attacked with him the left flank of the infidels who turned tail before the blows of their swords and the thrusts of their spears. Then the right flank of the infidels counter-attacked. Amongst these was the tyrannical and obdurate patrician, the rebellious Satan. Fanu'cl, may God curse him. He wore protective armour, and on his head a helmet of iron^{y>} so that all that could be seen of him were his eyes peering out; and his companions likewise.

The Muslims met them with hearts worthy of Islam and a zeal akin to Muhammad's. The fighting that took place there was fiercer than before, but the Muslims withstood them, and turned them back with sword blows. The infidels turned tail, and on that occasion a throng of patricians was killed, along with thousands of soldiers.

On that day the Muslims captured sixty horses, and an innumerable quantity of weapons and mules. They took back the Muslim captives and all the livestock that the infidels had captured, and restored them to their people. The Muslims returned rejoicing and happy to the town called Zifah, close to the town of the sultan Abu Bakr bin Muhammad. Not one of them had been killed.

[Conflict between Ahmad and the sultan]

When the sultan and the Somalis he had with him heard the news about them and what they had done during the *jihad* against the infidels, and the booty they had taken, they were overcome with anxiety and fear, and fled the country, he and the Somalis with him, to a town called Kidad in the country of the Somalis.

The imam Ahmad bin Ibrahim and his companions heard news of the flight of the sultan and his Somalis from the country, and set out after them and reached Kidad and ran the sultan and his Somalis to earth in a place called Qam - a river filled with much water - at mid-day.¹⁴

They organised their forces and joined battle, and the sultan and his Somalis were put to flight. A troop of them was killed. The imam took thirty horses from amongst their mounts, as booty. They sacked their country, and collected vast booty from it. The imam and his companions returned to their country, Harar, part of the land of Sa^bd ad-Din.⁵³

They had not settled down very long when the sultan Abu Bakr assembled a force against the imam Ahmad and his companions, made up of an immense army of Somalis and others. Their horses and troops were so numerous as to be

incalculable. They all reached the district, that is to say, Harar. When the imam and his companions heard of their coming, they withdrew from the country and proceeded to the town called Hubat Zcbrta. In Hubat there was a high mountain which they climbed.

The sultan learned of what they had done and set out in pursuit of them as far as the mountain itself. Here he besieged them, hemming them in with a siege that lasted somewhere between thirteen and nineteen days.⁶ The imam and his companions were so exhausted by the siege that they descended the mountain by night. A terrible battle ensued and the companions of the imam were put to flight. The emir whom they had chosen to rule them, 'Umar Din, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, was killed. So the imam and his companions went back to their homes.

After this the people mediated between the imam and the sultan and the Somalis. The imam and his companions entered the service of the sultan Abu Bakr for a few days, but then the sultan Abu Bakr violated the pact and

the peace, and betrayed the imam, Ahmad, and his companions, confiscating their swords, their mounts, and their weapons. The imam had only three of all his horses left.

Among the imam's companions who were killed after the peace and the pact [were violated] was an outstanding emir [f°5] whose name was 'Utman bin Yas.^v The sultan devastated the country, tyrannizing the citizenry along with some of the sheikhs, the Quranic teachers and the learned men. The imam's life was threatened so he left, fleeing by night from the country, taking with him his three horses.

He went to his home in a town called Za'ka, a day's journey from the town of the sultan. He encountered a young man in the employ of the sultan Abu Bakr bin Muhammad, whose name was Hamdus bin Mahfuz, who had four of the sultan's horses with him. He took them from him, and set out from his town of Za'ka for a place called Rabat al-Baqr This was a place of many trees, with a well-fortified mountain. He stayed there one day, and then went on to a place called Sih"¹ which was a mighty, flowing river. He then had seven horses. He was joined by an emir called Garad Abu Bakr bin Ismail.

The imam went ceaselessly from village to village until he arrived at the country of Hubat. There he was joined by the emir Husain al-Gaturi as a support.

The sultan, meanwhile, never ceased sending out spies into every place so that

information could be secretly obtained about the imam whom he wanted to kill. Hearing that the imam was in the country of Hubat, the sultan Abu Bakr set out with his infantry and his cavalry and went to the village of the imam Ahmad. He burnt his home, and looted the possessions of the Muslims there.

The imam and his companions heard what the sultan had done in his village, so he and they set out by night from the country of Hubat and kept on

going from town to town harrying the sultan, and being harried by him, until they came to a place called Jadar.⁶ Exhausted from their journeying they fell asleep there. Around noon the sultan and his forces caught them unawares as they slept. They awakened and fled but not one of them was captured.

Around two-hundred infantry along with seven horses joined forces with the imam in a town called Wasln.⁶¹ The sultan got to know about them, and attacked them in a surprise raid killing two men in the imam's forces one of whom was a knight called Muhammad bin Ibrahim, and the other was an infantryman, one of the equerries of the imam.

His forces, which were scattered to the winds, regrouped in the country called Hubat. One of the sultan's emirs, Sanbara byname,⁶ then attacked them with a force made up of an uncountable number of infantry, and fourteen cavalry.

The imam Ahmad drew up his battle line with infantry; and the emir did likewise with his forces. They joined battle and the fighting was intense, with Sanbara's lines being broken through, and his being killed. The imam captured twelve of his cavalry: two of them tied.

When the sultan Abu Bakr learnt of their defeat and of the death of his emir, he quit his country for that of the Somalis, leaving behind in the country, five emirs from among those entitled to carry the pennants, sixty cavalry and a vast number of infantry. When the imam Ahmad and his forces heard about the departure of the sultan from his country and about his leaving some emirs there he immediately organised his army, set out and reached Za'ka in the neighbourhood of the sultan's town. When news of this reached one of the sultan's emirs entitled to bear the pennants, Kusem Abu Bakr by name, the husband of the sultan's sister, he organised his army and set out for the imam's town.

The imam Ahmad drew up his battle lines and organised his twenty cavalrymen. The sultan's emir, on the other hand, had as many as one-hundred cavalrymen. They formed their lines and came close to one another until they met

eye to eye. Kuscm Abu Bakr and his companions broke ranks without battle being joined, and they fled to their town of Harar. even though not one of the imam Ahmad's companions pursued them.

The imam went on to a place called Jarir,^{6"} assembled his forccs there and considered the situation. They said, 'Let us catch them unawares in their [own] country, God will give the victory to whomever He wishes.¹ So they made their plans and set out for the sultan's town w^rhere they arrived just at the afternoon prayer time, called "Asr,⁶⁴ in the month of Ramadan.^{1'3} They comprised a few more than ninc-hundred-and-thirty men.⁰⁰

The companions of the sultan remained holed-up in a fortified place in the town. The imam attacked, then saw that the enemy w^rere in an impregnable position, and withdrew from the fight, away from the town. Each of the forces spent the night in its ow n position.

The storyteller says: On the second day, the imam Ahmad set out to return to his village. The companions of the sultan learned about their return and regrouped their forccs and their cav alry and set out in pursuit of them, overtaking them at a place called Samanjud/⁷ but the imam repelled their attack with his cavalry and his infantry and a fierce battle ensued. The companions of the sultan were routed, and the imam captured their entire cavalry, one-hundred or more; and a lot of them were killed.

The imam returned with his own forces to Harar. He ruled the country', and saw^r to it that truth prevailed and corruption ceased. The town crier proclaimed, ⁴ Everyone must remain in his own house; and each may observe

his own customs. Do not be afraid, and do not [f°6] grieve and do not be jealous of any of the people.'

The storyteller says: The imam then left for the furthestmost parts of the country, to bring peace to the citizens and the poor. And he left behind him in the country an emir responsible to him. The country's population grew and everything went well with it.

The sultan found out about the imam and his taking over his country as well as his horses, and made preparations for attacking him. He assembled a vast army from the country of the Somalis and beyond. Bringing with him innumerable horses and a great army, he drew near to where the imam was.

When the latter learnt of his moving against him, he organised his troops and marched against the sultan who was in a place called Dakkar. " The sultan and his forces ascended a fortified mountain called Hun,⁶¹ out of fear of the imam, and of his courage and skill.

Peace between them was brokered by the nobles, the emirs, the sheikhs, the Quranic teachers and the learned men, on condition that the sultan ruled as before, and that the imam should be the emir subordinate to him; that each should live in his customary fashion, and that the country should be shared evenly between them.

The imam was happy to avoid bloodshed, and offered no opposition to the advice of the Quranic teachers and the sheikhs. The sultan set out for the town called Harar while the imam went to the town of Sim.

[Portents and visions confirming Ahmad]

The storyteller says: It was the custom in the land of Sa'd ad-Din that every emir had the dignity of ruling and of choosing functionaries, and the right to lead a raiding party and a *jihad*. He had vast forces at his disposal as

by right, while the sultan had only what the *karaj* " could dredge up from the city.

So, after this the imam Ahmad left Sim to go where the sultan was. When he began to get closer to the town and made as if to enter the sultan's presence, an extraordinary sign of the esteem of the Most High God for him was, by His grace, manifested. God willed its manifestation.

The storyteller says: A swarm of bees⁷¹ flew by, like a black cloud that overshadowed his head, until it concealed the eye of the sun from the place called Samanjud to the house of the sultan. Upon the imam's entering the Sultan's presence they greeted each other and exchanged pleasantries. In the meantime the swarm of bees remained at the door, until the imam Ahmad withdrew, whereupon the bees swarmed above his head, causing harm to no one, until he reached his home. The swarm then returned to the tree. This was a portent for the imam, bringing good news to him from God the Most High.

The storyteller says: He was worthy of this sign and for that reason was called thereafter *the Imam*.

The author, may God have mercy upon him, says: the sheikh Muhammad bin Ahmad al-Dahman al-Magrabi told me the following story: 'Once when I was

asleep, in the very dark of night, I saw two saintly men. I was at that time between sleep and waking. One of the two was the sheikh Ahmad son of the sheikh Muhammad son of the sheikh ‘Abd al-Wahid al- QarsT al-Tunisi⁷² - may God make him profitable [for us]. The second was our lord the great sheikh who knew God the Most High, the celebrated, endowed with brilliant qualities, with acceptable actions, and authentic deeds, and unheard of ecstatic revelations, the divine leader, the incomparable one, the everlasting one, our lord the noble Abu Bakr son of the great and famous sheikh ‘Abd Allah al-‘Alderus. May God make them both profitable for us.

The two of them said to me: “Do not call him sultan, and do not call him emir, but call him *imam* of the Muslims”. And, he said, I asked them both, ‘The Imam of the Last Days?’ And they said to me. “Yes, and [this can be known] from his miracles also.”¹⁷.

The storyteller says: I learnt from sources in whom I have confidence, like ‘All bin Safah al-Jabali and Ahmad bin Tahar al-Mara’wi who both heard it from a man called Sa’d bin Yunus ⁴ al-‘Araji who said, ‘When I was asleep in the darkest part of the night, I saw the Prophet - may God bless him and bring him salvation - and on his right was Abu Bakr as-Saddiq, and on his left was ‘Umar bin al-Kattab and in front of him was ‘All bin Abi Ta lib -

may God be satisfied with them.

In front of ‘AH bin Abi Talib - may God do him honour - was the imam Ahmad bin Ibrahim. So I said to him, ‘O Messenger of God, who is this man who is in front of ‘All bin Abi Talib?’ And he replied - may God bless him and grant him salvation - ‘Through this man God will subdue the country of Abyssinia.’ This vision occurred when the imam was only a soldier and the visionary who had this dream did not know him before, apart from seeing him standing in front of ‘All bin Abi Talib - may God pay him honour.

The visionary came to the city of Harar in the days of Garad Abun and recounted the dream to the people of the city who asked him, ‘Is this one [Garad Abun] he whom you saw in your dream?’ And he said, ‘No’. And one emir succeeded another in a continuous line of rulers of the city until the visionary came at the time when the imam Ahmad was appointed to rule it. When he saw him he recognised him from his appearance which he had first seen in his dream, when he stood in front of our lord ‘All bin Abi Talib - may

God honour him. He then said to the people of the city, ‘This is he whom I saw

before".

Indeed this is what was told to him in this [f'7] vision. The Messenger of God - may God bless him and give him salvation - has said: 'Whoever sees me in a dream has really seen me, for Satan cannot appear in my likeness.' ⁷⁶ It was truly as he saw: the vision was confirmed: Ahmad ruled the country of Abyssinia and brought it peace just as will be recalled later on, if the Most High God wills.

[Ahmad's first raid into Abyssinia as imam]

The storyteller says: The imam Ahmad remained close to the sultan in the country. He judged it, and governed it appropriately. He forbade evil, put a stop to highwaymen, and the citizens enjoyed peace in his day. He won the heart of his kingdom by his love for the nobles, the learned men, the dervishes, the Qur'anic teachers and the sheikhs.

He organised his army, provided weapons, swords and horses and undertook a military expedition against the country of Abyssinia. After thoroughly equipping his army he set forth against the country of the infidels finally arriving at the furthestmost part of their country, a place called Dawaro, where they amassed vast booty: horses and mules, slaves, and livestock. Afterwards they doubled back, wanting to return home. But the infidels in Dawaro, all of them, massed a force against him. The imam had one-hundred or more cavalry, and no one could count those of the infidels, who pressed close upon the Muslims in a narrow defile, killing a great number of them upon whom God had put the seal of martyrdom.

They captured seven of the emirs of the Muslims, among them were the emir Husain al-Gaturi, the emir Zaharbul Muhammad, ' ' and the emir 'Abd Allah, the emir 'Umar and Ura'i Ahmad, and Jibrall a Somali, and another [unidentified] emir. These emirs - may the Most High God have

mercy upon them - were heroes of the Muslims; and their courage as horsemen was renowned.

Regarding the fate of the emir Husain - they went with him to a secluded part of one of their villages and removed his armour and sought to take off his outer garment, as they wanted to kill him. There were seven of them wanting to kill him. Bound though he was, by the grace of Islam and the blessing of Muhammad - may God bless him and bring him salvation - his bonds were cut and he pounced on one of his captors, taking his dagger from him and cried out with a shout: 'They/M*/ for the sake of God'. And when they heard him crying out 'The *jihad* for the sake of God,' they were put to flight and the emir Husain, though wounded, returned to his

companions by night and [soon] recovered.

The other emirs remained in captivity and were sent to the king of Abyssinia; two of them were killed.

[Ahmad kills the sultan Abu Bakr]

The storyteller says: The imam turned back, returning to the country* of the Muslims, after looting much booty and settled down in his town of Za'ka. He then went to see the sultan Abu Bakr and peace was made between the two of them. Afterwards, however, the sultan's mood changed. He treated his subjects unjustly, corruption reappeared, as did hostility towards the imam whom he sought to kill. The learned men and sheikhs did their best to reconcile them both. The sultan, however, opposed these moves and started a war against the imam. He abandoned the path of truth and plotted to deceive the imam, but was duped by his own cunning just as the Most High God says in the masterful passage in his illustrious book: 'The vile ruse entraps him who concocts it.'

The imam killed him, and the country was saved from him. The Muslims found release from his evil ways. The imam Ahmad remained in the land, putting an end to corrupt practices, and wiping out highwaymen. He ordered the town crier to announce, 'Whoever is envious of one of the

Muslims will forfeit his life and his property.' His subjects found peace and tranquillity under his rule.

After the imam Ahmad had appointed 'Umar Din, the sultan's brother, in his brother's stead, the country experienced peace under his sovereignty and his government. Revolutions died down, falsehood was abolished, hypocrisy ceased, the tricks and dodges of Satan were rendered impotent and finally annihilated. 'The command of God prevailed, even though they detested it.'"

The storyteller says: In the time of Sa'd ad-Din, and in the time of those who governed Harar after him, and even up to the time of Garad Abun, the infidels made incursions into the country of the Muslims and laid it waste

QQ

f —•R1

many times; so that some of the Muslim towns even paid them the *karaj*. This was the situation until the imam Ahmad ruled. He prevented the infidels' doing this, and conquered their country.

In his time, he would sit with the poor and show them kindness. He was

merciful to the humble, and disdained the proud. He was sympathetic to widows and to orphans and just towards victims of oppression, so that justice was given back its rightful place. God, the sternest of critics, found him blameless. He was faithful to all his religious duties, as the Most High says: '[one of] those who, should we establish them in the land, will keep up prayer, and pay the poor-rate, command what is exemplary, and forbid what is contemptible.

After this, one of the foremost sultans called Ura'I Abun came to the imam. When the country had been torn by disputes, he had gone to live with the Somalis. He became reconciled with the imam and the latter gave him a district for his support. A tribe called Gim'^v then came to the imam. A dispute had arisen between them and their companions in another tribe [f°8] called the Marraihan,^{v4} whose emir was called Hirabiu^ so the imam Ahmad sent a message to Hirabu emir of the Somalis, to make peace between them.

[Incursion by Degalhan: Ahmad defeats him]⁸⁶

The storyteller says: While he was preoccupied with this discussion on behalf of the Somalis, the imam heard about an important patrician, one of the

R7

tyrants by name Degalhan, a brother-in-law' of the [Abyssinian] king, with a vast number of patricians under him, who had readied the furthestmost borders of the country of the Muslims, had plundered it, and taken by force their wealth, and made improper advances towards female members of their

on

families, amongst whom was the mother of one of the emirs of the imam, by name Abu Bakr Qatin, The infidels had more than six-hundred cavalry, while their army was like a plague of locusts.

The imam made preparations for meeting them, arranging his army, its provisions and its number. The number of the Muslim horses and horsemen was two-hundred. They launched the attack, setting out at the time of the sunset prayer. They marched night and day until they readied a mighty river called 'Aqam at sunset on the second day where they encamped. The imam sent a band of the Muslims ahead, to try to ferret out some news of the infidels, but not one of them returned with news. So, after this he sent one of his emirs, by name Husain al-Gaturi, as his informant, with seven cavalymen. These reached the proximity of the infidel army which was an

immense force, and then doubled back, returning to the imam Ahmad,
notifying him of their findings.

The imam and his army set out for the neighbourhood of the infidels, and arrived at a point where the only barrier between them and the infidels was a fortified mountain. They encamped there, and he climbed the mountain barrier separating the two armies, along with four of his knights. Among them was the wazir⁴ ‘Addoli, the emir Baradaly¹ and the emir ‘All. They

».

• 92

overlooked the infidels who had made their camp in a place called Dir. ‘ Its lights were blazing. The imam and his companions then retraced their steps, returning to their army and settling down for the night, after they had made preparations for the battle.

The day after this, the infidels set out for their own country with the imam and his army on their heels. These had harnessed their horses and mounted them, after donning their armour and taking their weapons⁹ just as the poet says:

‘How beautiful before the breaking of dawn is the voice of the herald “Come on the *jihad* to the races of men of noble rank who give their lives so highmindedly in order to please the magnanimous One.’⁹⁴

On horseback, they are like lions;

Dismounted they are the tent-pegs of the country.’

While they were proceeding in this manner after them, some of the infidels turned around and saw the Muslims in their rear. They notified their companions, and all of them wheeled round and saw the Muslims behind them. Then they turned around, went back and drew up their battle lines, fixing the position of their forces - may the Most High God forsake them.

The imam likewise arrayed his forces - to the right, to the left, to the centre and with some on both flanks - and the advance proceeded.

The Muslims drew[^] near, as compact as a construction whose pans were held together in such a way that there was no space between them; and the cavalry charged. The first of the Muslim knights to do so was one called Farasaham Sultan

bin ‘AH^{4*} of the tribe of Yamli. He was one of the most courageous heroes. After exclaiming ‘God is Great’ he attacked the infidels, breaking through their lines, scattering their massed forces and killing a group of them. He took prisoner one of the patricians, by name Sabbaru, son of the patrician Takla.^{g°} He grabbed him, pulled him from his saddle, and took him ;nto the presence of the imam Ahmad who sent him to Arabia/

The emir ‘All also attacked the infidels, killing many of them, and capturing [another] one of the patricians whom he presented to the imam. The Muslims appeared in battle like savage lions, galloping full tilt, with spears held high, army merging with army. The wretched infidels stood their ground before the attack of the noble Muslims as the tide of the battle rolled on relentlessly, with horses interlocked with horses, and infantry with infantry.

On that day, nothing was to be seen but cut-off heads, spirits in the throes of death, and palms of hands flying in the air. The Muslims cricd out with a mighty cry: ‘There is no God but Allah/ and ‘God is the Greatest,’⁹⁸ and prayed for the bringer of good news, and the herald; and all the tribes responded, and the earth trembled under them.

On that day the battle-cry of the Muslims was ‘*Yahu. Yahu,*”^w and dismay fell upon the hearts of the infidels who began to desert. The imam showed himself to be a man steady of heart. No cavalryman came near him without being tossed to the ground; and he lunged with his spear at no one whom he did not slaughter. The infidels w^rere as powerless before the Muslims as a Hock of sheep or goats before a lion.

How many thousands of infidels died only the Most High God ean number. The Muslims took possession of horses, valuables and booty, and on that day they took four-hundred-and-eighty-four prisoners, and livestock and mules too numerous to count. They also recaptured from the infidels the wealth that these had previously plundered from the Muslims.¹⁰¹¹ They returned the wealth of the Muslims, in its entirety, to its owners. Not one of the Muslims died; only a few^r suffered light wounds, from which they recovered.

The imam thereupon summoned the prisoners, who were brought into [f°9] his presence. Some of them he sent to Zabld.^{1°1} to the emir Suleiman the governor there. They w^fere enslaved to the emir of Zabid. Some others of them he had killed. Others of them simply died.

How excellent arc these Muslims and their imam! They waged the holy war for

God whose due it was. They were patient and resolute in confronting the enemy. They made the sacrifice of their *jihad* in order to please God. They did not hold back until they had torn Faithlessness from its throne, and plunged it into its grave. Islam was raised up, and manifested; and Faithlessness was humiliated, and forced to take flight.

Nor did they do any wrong, for the Most High God has said of the Muslims waging *jihad* in a passage of his well-known Book: 'Do not consider those who are killed for the sake of God " to be dead. Rather they live, and are provided sustenance by their Lord, rejoicing' etc.¹⁰⁰ Know that God shows you mercy, that the martyr goes to his Gracious Lord and lives in a place whose dwellers never know death: and whose young never grow^r old. As He who is the most credible of speakers says, 'Hardship shall not afflict them [in heaven] nor can they ever be driven out from it.'¹⁰¹

The storyteller says: The imam Ahmad and his army went back, carrying with them vast booty', with the Most High God as his guide and companion on his journey towards his country of Harar: his status enhanced, triumphant, wearing the victor's crown, joyous. The imam at that time was twenty-one years old.¹⁰¹

[Ahmad wins over the Somali tribes]

Now', having finished this, let us return to the earlier narrative, and look at what happened during the Somali campaign.

When news of the imam's leaving for the outlying provinces of Abyssinia reached them, a certain person, by name Hirabu, a chief of one of the Somali tribes called Marraihan, had arrived half-way along the route to the country of Harar. After verifying the departure of the imam to the land of Abyssinia, he doubled back and returned to his own country.

Among the Somali tribes there was another called Habr Maqdi,¹⁰² from which the imam had demanded the alms tax. They refused to pay it, resorting to banditry on the roads, and acting evilly towards the country. The

imam set out for a locality known as Ra[^]bud,¹⁰³ between the country of the Muslims and the country of the infidels, as if he intended going on to Abyssinia. But then he doubled back towards the country of the Somali evildoers. The Somalis were routed, and the imam Ahmad followed them almost to the sea, a day's march. He plundered their territory thoroughly and devastated it. Then he turned round and went back.

Those Somalis who had entered the service of the imam Ahmad and the previously mentioned Sultan Ura'i Abun, were with the imam as we mentioned before, and the tribe of Habr Maqdi, which the imam put to flight, had plundered their territory.

The tribe of Girri complained to the imam, saying to him, 'They would never have ravaged our country if we had not entered your service, and made peace with you'. This distressed the imam Ahmad who organised his forces and went to the country of the Somalis, to the Habr Maqdi who were engaging in brigandage and plundering the possessions of the Muslims, time after time.

The imam defeated them and plundered their wealth a second time, destroying their cities which he reduced to ashes and then he turned around and went back to his country.

The Somalis wearied of the looting of their possessions and the ravaging of their country, so they accompanied their ruler Hirabu and went to see the imam, and all of them became reconciled with him in a covenant that was sincere and agreeable.

[Ahmad's second *jihad* against Abyssinia]

After this, the imam made preparations for a *jihad* against Abyssinia, assembling his troops and the Somalis with their leader, Hirabu, who then set out under his command. The imam then got together a vast throng and launched the attacks, setting out, he and the Muslims, for the infidel territory.

They arrived with him at a place called Waduh Meceg^{1 s} in the country of Fatagar,^{lw} meeting no resistance. There was no fighting. Between them and the king of Abyssinia was a day and a half's march, so the Muslims deliberated amongst themselves about going on. The imam and a group of the emirs advised, 'Let us march out and take the king unawares. One of two good things will then happen: either success, with its reward of booty; or martyrdom in the way of God and paradise by the grace of God.'¹¹¹¹ But the majority of the army said, 'Let us go back to our country from over here.' So the Muslims took a great quantity of booty, and went back.

The storyteller says: The imam was desolated, and wept bitter tears until his eyes were bloodshot from the excessive weeping at their returning, and their disagreeableness. And so they went back to the city of Harar in the land of Sa'd ad-Din. The imam could not rest until he had tied a standard to a spear, and

entrusted it to the emir Mansur bin Mahfuz al-Gaturl, He gave him one-hundred knights, and more than two-thousand infantry. He commanded him to march into the land of Abyssinia to the city named Qay-Ge.¹¹¹ So the above-mentioned emir set out until he arrived at Qay-Ge, meeting with no resistance. He amassed a vast booty of slaves and horses and mules, and other things as well. Then they turned round and went back to their country.

Then the imam tied another banner to a spear and entrusted it to the wazir 'Addoll and attached to him five-hundred¹¹² knights and one-thousand infantry, well-equipped for war, and for battle. He ordered them to march to the land of Dawaro to a place called Wanbarih.¹¹¹ so they set off for it, and met with no resistance. They took much [f 10] booty, and then turned round, and headed back, seeking the land of the Muslims.

Meantime, while he was returning home along the route, the people of Dawaro met him with their infantry, their patricians and their cavalry. They met up with them in a place called Zamit which was a river flowing with much water. Cavalry confronted cavalry, hero confronted hero.

One of their patricians, Arba* Samal by name, was a giant: and their cavalry and infantry could not be counted. Battle was joined between them. They struck with their swords and stabbed with their spears until their spears shattered, and their forearms were numb from striking the necks and the heads of the infidels. Then one of the Muslim knights, by name the emir Mujahid bin 'All bin 'Abd Allah Suha, charged. He was an illustrious horseman, and a voracious lion. He attacked the patrician Arba¹ Samal.¹¹⁴ striking him a blow that knocked him from his horse to the ground and God cast his soul quickly into Hell, "an evil place to settle in".^{11"}

Another one of the Muslim knights, by name Nur, attacked one of the patricians, and struck him on his neck so that he fell off his horse onto the ground. Then the fray grew more savage, and the fighting more brutal. The Muslims fought a deadly battle, raising their voices in the battle cry. "There is no God but Allah." and 'God is the Greatest.' and in prayers for the bringer of good news, and the herald. The infidels turned tail, and the Muslims attacked them with sword blows and pike thrusts, killing an uncountable number of the infidels. Not one of the Muslims was killed. War * Addoli turned back to the country of the Muslims, flushed with victory and laden with booty.

[The third *jihad*]

The storyteller says: Then the imam Ahmad bin Ibrahim made preparations for a military expedition against the country of the infidels, forming a force made up of

his valiant leaders and heroes.

He tied a red banner to a spear and entrusted it to the emir Husain al- Gaturi to whom he detached one-hundred knights from among his warriors and fighters. Then, tying a white banner to another spear he entrusted it to the Wazir Nur to whom he also gave more than a hundred knights. In those days the banner of the imam was yellow, and under it were two-hundred knights chosen from among the courageous and heroic lighters, skilled in the cut and thrust of war; they were fighters par excellence.

There were seven-thousand infantry, placed under the command of five soldiers.¹¹⁶ One of them was called Naqdiya.¹¹ At that time he was a Muslim but he later apostatized - May God save us from that! - and was an infidel when he was killed. The second was 'Abd al-Karim bin 'Utman known as 'Dawaro \ The name of the third was 'Umar bin 'Abd Allah. The fourth was called "Utman bin 'Abd Allah from the people of Sim. And the fifth's name was Muhammad. All of these had converted to Islam.^{1 IS}

The imam Ahmad set his forces in order, cautioning that there was to be no retreating, and then set out with his tremendous army of knights and heros, each of whom had previously met in battle with at least one-hundred infidels. He launched the attack and they went on until they reached a place called Zamir Din in the territory of the Muslims, a section of which belonged to the infidel s. The cavalry and infantry made ready for battle and there was discussion about what course to follow. It was unanimously decided to attack Dawaro.

The storyteller may God have mercy upon him, says: Abu Bakr bin Isma'il told me, and he took part in the events of those days, that they set out for the place called Kahal Bari in the vicinity of Dawaro, where they battled with some infidel infantrymen who had assembled in a narrow defile, hemming in the Muslims who were fighting there. The Muslims eventually

were victorious with the help of the Most High God. The infidels fled, after a group of them was killed.

There was a church there, called Zaharaq, belonging to the ancient kings. The Muslims set Hrc to it. and then turned back, seeking to return to their own country. The infidels had an encampment at a place called Kub¹¹⁴ between the country of the Muslims and their own.

The Muslims discussed among themselves what to do. Some of them said 'Let

us return to the country of the Muslims/and others of them said 'Let us go back towards the country of the infidels'. Some of the Muslims fled by night, without the imam's knowledge, seeking to return to their own country. The imam set off after them, overtook some of them and brought them back by force.

The storyteller says: When the army reached K.ub they said to the imam: 'We will not accompany you to Abyssinia unless your wife Del Wanbara ^{1:0} returns to the country of the Muslims. She shall not come with us to the land of the infidels. Not one of the emirs before you ever took his wife with him [on a military expedition]; only you.' His wife, Del Wanbara, replied, "I will not go back'. So her husband took her as far as [fat¹⁻¹ in the

land of the infidels.

Organising his army and his forces he left by night for Abyssinia, finally reaching the 'Awas¹²² which was a mighty flowing river that

meandered through many different countries. In autumn¹ it was impossible to cross it except on timber that had cow-hide tied underneath it like a boat.^{1"4} Their name for this is *Jaka}*~~ The river goes from Damot^{1"*} until it peters out in the salt sea in the vicinity ofZayla^{4[f°1 1]}.

[Division of the booty]

Then the Muslims deliberated amongst themselves about the booty because when they had entered the land of Dawaro they had agreed amongst themselves that whatever booty they took would be divided equally among the army. However, while some of them had taken plunder, others had not, because of earlier opposition on the part of some of them. So when the Muslims reached the 'Awas, they brought up the matter of the booty. They declared, 'We will not take any more booty; we will not take anything and what booty we have taken belongs to the Most High God: all of it! But, if

• I ⁷⁷

anybody docs take booty, then [from now on] it will belong to him.' "

The imam sought the advice of Garad Din of the Sagara^{us} tribe. His advice was: 'Do such and such'. Then the imam announced to the army: 'After the *fifth* part^{1""*} has been taken out. then whatever booty someone takes will belong to him who takes it\ So the imam Ahmad organised his soldiers, dividing the army into three units: in charge of the first unit was the wazir ' Addolf, a person of good counsel*

wisdom and foresight, w hom he ordered to pass the territory of Ifat¹" on the right flank. In charge of the second unit was the Wazir Nur bin Ibrahim whom he ordered to pass by Ifat on the left flank. The imam himself w^ras in command of the third unit and with him was the glorious cavalry and the noble heroes. He took the middle position, between both flanks,

[Wanag Jan is killed by Farasaham Satut]

The storyteller says: As for what happened to the unit under the command of the wazir 'Addoli. it was marching on the right flank¹¹ oblivious of the infidels that w^fere there. As he followed the road, suddenly he came upon tents that had been pitched, with the infidel army and their patricians within them.

The emir of the patricians was called Wanag Jan,¹ ² which means in their language 'the king's lion'. Wanag was well-known as the governor of Ifat. He was one of the courageous ones. The Muslims did not delay long in attacking them, and they fought a heated battle at first light.

One of the Muslim knights, from the people of Dawaro, was called Farasaham Satut. He had been a Christian but had gone down from the infidel country to that of the Muslims, submitting to Islam with a conversion that was genuine, and of sterling quality. He was one of a rare breed of horsemen, renowned for his bravery. SJim of body, he was a tighter for the territory of Islam. He straightaway attacked the accursed patrician Wanag Jan and struck him a blow that unseated him and threw him to the ground. And God cast his spirit into Hell, 'an evil place to settle in'.¹ ”

The infidels were routed and tied. A great number of them was killed, so great as to be uncountable. The Muslims plundered their tents¹⁴ and all their belongings. And as for horses and mules, weapons and livestock and other things - they were innumerable. Along with their belongings they also captured their women, among w hom was the daughter of the maternal aunt of the king Wanag Sagad^o bin Na'od bin Admas bin Zar'a Ya'qobJ " whom the imam gave to the wazir "Addoli who sent her back to the country of the Muslims. The king of Abyssinia paid a ransom of fifty ounces of red gold for her.

[Antokya]

The storyteller says: The army unit that the imam commanded headed straight for Antokya, ' a place w here the king would sometimes reside.

The guide for the Muslims on the road was a certain person called Simu known

as Saqara 's. He was at that time a Muslim but afterwards he apostatised and became a Christian. He seized two infidels and made them stand in the presence of the imam who interrogated the two of them about the infidels. They replied: 'We only know about the patrician Wanag Jan, that he followed the route of the wazir *Addoll'

In Antokya there was a Christian church, which the great emirs among the Muslims entered: the emir Husain bin Abu Bakr al-Gaturi, governor of Dawaro after the invasion; the emir 'All, governor of Angot¹⁴⁰ after the conquest; and Garad Ahmus; and Kusem Abu Bakr; the sheikh, the great ascetic Hamad son of the gracious ascetic, the sheikh Wasara. The imam entered as did his wife Del Wanbara,¹⁴¹ daughter of the emir Mahfuz. When they could not find any treasure in it, they set fire to it and destroyed it.

In the meantime a messenger from the wazir ^kAddoll arrived, gladdening them with news of his victorious conquest and booty, and the killing of the patrician Wanag Jan. The Muslims rejoiced greatly, banging small drums¹⁴¹ and metal drinking vessels.

The army unit that was commanded by the wazir Nur passed to the left of the land of Antokya and plundered it before returning to the imam. The wazir 'Addoll did the same. The Muslims assembled in Antokya.

The imam pitched a white tent in the area of Antokya which was part of the territory of Ifat in the land of Abyssinia. When it was time for the afternoon prayer the Muslims saw the infidel vanguard close by them. The imam galloped after them, accompanied by a troop of horsemen, leaving the camp as it stood. The infidels took flight, and one of their number was killed.

He was killed by al-Kusem Abu Bakr who that day was mounted on a horse. He dismounted and killed him.

Then the imam and his companions turned back, and returned to the camp. The next day the Muslims made a foray into the territory of Ifat [f°12] leaving the tent pitched in its place. The Muslims captured much booty, including slaves and weapons. Afterwards some of them returned to the camp, while others spent the night at the place of the foray: ¹⁴² the Somalis and others including the soldiers known [from that time] as 'al-Gazu'; and some of the soldiers of the imam. On the following day the imam met up with them on the road, an extraordinary sight, they and their vast booty which included a large number of the daughters and sons of the patricians.

On the fourth day the imam put his forces in order and set out for the city of Gendebclo,¹⁴¹ with the emir Ahmus as his guide, riding with the vanguard carrying the red standard. They marched all that day along a narrow route up hill and down dale, with men and animals becoming exhausted; and on that day, on account of the narrowness of the path, men had to carry the imam's wife on their shoulders.¹⁴⁴

At sunset the tent of the imam Ahmad was pitched in a place called Daq, where *qat*¹⁴² grew in abundance; and the camp of the vanguard was pitched, after great difficulty, by the emir Ahmus. The one who pitched camp for the rearguard was Garad 'Abd an-Nasr. Ahmus said to him as he was pitching camp, 'When you are tired how God revives you, O 'Abd an-Nasr. How strong you are when pitching a tent!'

The storyteller says: The night had already lengthened when the imam Ahmad arrived with the rearguard and the last of the army at the tent and the encampment. They were so wearied from the harshness of the route that they went to sleep without eating anything; they were so tired.

[Ahmad and the gold of Gendebclo]

In the morning the army set out for a place called Bazamli in the district of Ifat, in the country of the infidels. It was a forbidding place. They spent the night there and next morning went on to Gendebelo in Abyssinia. It was ruled by the king of Abyssinia but had Muslims living in it who paid the poll-tax¹⁴⁶ to the king.

The people of Gendebclo came to the imam Ahmad and his army - the sheikhs, the Qur'anic teachers,¹⁴⁷ the merchants, the people of the villages - and honoured them; and the Muslims [of Gendebelo] helped them with twenty ounces of gold. In those days the imam was poor, and the soldiers and the emirs took some of the gold and said to the imam: 'We will give this gold to your wife Del Wanbara.' The imam resisted, saying 'this is for the conducting of the *jihad*'

The emirs tried to talk him round, but he again resisted their efforts to do so. They were the emir Husain al-Gaturl, the wazir 'Addoli, Garad Din and the emir 'All, governor of Angot. He refused to allow the gold to be given to his wife, and got the better of them in this matter. He said to them. 'It is not

permissible to [give this to] her. This is to help Islam. I won't give her any of it; I will spend it on the *jihad*' May God forgive him.

So he sent the gold to the sharif^{54*} Muhammad as-Satari^{14v} and purchased one-

hundred swords with which he gave witness at the battle of Sembcra Kore.¹⁰⁰ This was a help to the Muslims.

The imam intercepted some infidel traders in Gendebclo who had in their possession valuables belonging to the king of Abyssinia. He killed them in the middle of the town, and took their valuables, their mules, and their hacks.¹⁰¹ along with their loads. The imam stayed with his army two days in Gendebclo, and then set out from there in the afternoon to return to the country of the Muslims taking with him the treasure of the king of Abyssinia. They spent that night close by the ¹A was and the next day set out again.

This time their guide took them off the beaten track into rocky and heavily wooded territory. The imam questioned the guide about the route and he replied: 'This used to be the best used track, but now it has been overgrown through too little use.' They had not travelled very far when they found themselves in the midst of a forest, with trees growing together, closely entangled in one another; and because of the trees, they lost their way. They discussed amongst themselves what to do, asking the guide, 'How' can we get back onto the road?' The guide said, 'If I had taken you by the top road, it

would have been long, and there would have been no water; and the journey would have taken an extra day.'

The Muslims found themselves in the middle of the forest, and the guide repeated what he had said: 'It wouldn't have been any different if I had taken you by the bottom road: the people would have been exhausted from the journey because of the scarcity of water.' The Muslims became [even more] bewildered, and their moaning and groaning redoubled. The imam then said to the troops: 'Get to work on the trees with your swords.' The trees were enormous. The army followed his advice, and hacked away at the trees with their swords from the forenoon prayer time, until the sun sank in the west, and eventually broke through to a wide road.

The storyteller may God have mercy upon him. says: When the imam advised the troops to hack their way through the forest with their swords, they were exhausted. They said, 'We have been battling infidels; and now we are compelled to battle the forest.' But when they had hacked their way through the forest and arrived at an open road, they were amazed and thanked God, and the imam as well, for his advice.

[Elephants and wild antelopes]

The troop then came upon the river 'Awas which was full of water, and travelled a further two days' journey [f°13] from the 'Awas.

On the third day, at the morning prayer time, they arrived at a place named Kub^{1 2} - a mighty river. They had hardly had time to halt before a cloud of dust swirled up behind them, filling the sky so that they could not see the mountains or the trees for the amount of dust. The Muslims thought that a troop of infidels was pursuing them, so the imam organised his forces, trooped the cavalry, readied their equipment for battle, and then mounted.

The w^razir 'Addoli approached him and said, 'Don't go¹⁵³ yourself: let us go and spare you the trouble, and we will seek out information.' The imam replied, 'Why should I not go? I am a God-fearing man. However I will follow the example of other God-fearing men What should be done is plain enough.' So then the imam sent horsemen off to bring news back to him. These horsemen returned and said, 'this dust cloud is not caused by a troop of infidels, but by the tramping of herds of elephants and wild antelopes.'

After this the Muslims went on until they came to Dir, 011 the border of the Muslim territory. There the imam pitched the White Tent, and brought out the *fifth* part of the booty even to the very thread and needle. The *fifth* part comprised five-hundred head of slaves, a thousand head of livestock and a vast number of mules. The imam, victorious, his status enhanced, and exceedingly happy then entered his city of Harar where he divided the *fifth* part among the eight categories that the Most High God described in his illustrious book.^{1>1}

[The fourth *jihad*]

He lingered hardly any time in the city before he organised another expedition - may the Most High God have mercy upon him.

The storyteller says: He sent messages to a group of Somali tribes and others as well. He sent them some of the Abyssinian booty and wrote them a letter in which he goaded them on to a *jihad* and commanded them to respond out of obedience to the Omniscient King. He also wrote down the saying of the Most High: 'Go forth lightly or heavily laden and carry out the *jihad* for the sake of God, with your property and your persons.' ^ He said in the course of this, 'Whoever aids the religion of God. God will aid him: and whoever feels he can do without this, then God will do without him'*

He then despatched three persons with the letters and waited to see what their

replies would be. Among those whom he dispatched was ‘All Goita bin ‘Adruh. His father was one of the courageous heroes who died a martyr in Bali¹⁵⁶ - may God the Most High have mercy upon him - in the days of Sultan

Muhammad. The imam sent "Ali 10 one of the Somali tribes called Yibbciri.^{1'''}

He also sent [a messenger] to the tribe of Girri which was the tribe whose leader and chieftain was Mattan bin ‘Utman bin Kaled, the Somali, his brother-in-law^{1 N} who was one of the heroic and gracious knights who died as a martyr in the battle for the Amba¹⁹ as will be recalled at some length later on.

He sent [another messenger] to the tribe of Marraihan whose chieftain was Hirabu bin Goita^{1''} Tedros bin Adam, and he also sent [messengers] to the outlying Provinces to spur them on to *thcji/iod*, for God. and in the way of the Most High God.

The king of Abyssinia. Wanag Sagad bin Na'od. had despatched traders into the country of the Muslims carrying gold, *wars*.^{1M} ivory, civet cats,^{1'} - and slaves - a vast quantity of wealth that belonged to the king. They had sold their merchandise in the country of the Muslims and crossed the [Red] Sea to as-Sihr^{1fb} and ‘Aden¹⁶⁴ and then they turned back and returned, seeking their own country' and the presence of the king.

The imam got to know about them, stole their wealth, which then became booty for the Muslims, and divided it among the tribes for the sake of the *jihad* in the way of God. They were strengthened by this wealth, against the infidels.

Two of the messengers returned from their journey bearing good news about the arrival of the Somali tribes. ‘No one heard your letter read out,' the two of them said, ‘without responding obediently to the Most High God. They have responded to your plea. Great numbers of them have equipped themselves with armour made from chain rings with overlapping tiers. The tribes have followed one another, kinsfolk in the footsteps of kinsfolk, tribe in the footsteps of tribe.’

[The Somali tribes reach Harar]

The first of the tribes to reach the imam was Habr Maqdi with their lord and chieftain Ahmad Girri bin Husain, the Somali. They encamped in a place called Qasa in the heights above the valley of Harar. They showed off their equipment and their weapons, and paraded their horses. They were anights, and what knights! And they were foot-soldiers; and what foot- soldiers! The imam rejoiced at their

arrival exceedingly. They met the imam face to face, and he welcomed them with the warmest of welcomes. He gave them gifts of apparel, and provisions, and treated them graciously, garbing Their chieftain, Ahmad Girri, in particularly exquisite clothing.

After them it was the tribe of Girri who came up. Their chieftain was Mattan^{16>} bin 'Utman bin Kaled, the Somali. They showed off their weaponry and armour, paraded their horses and had their bows slung sash-like over their

shoulders as they met the imam face to face. He commanded them then to go ahead to a place called Sim. Their chieftain had brought with him his wife, Fardusa, the sister of the imam Ahmad. And he set out ahead, he and his army.

Then the tribe of Zarba¹⁶⁶ came up after them. Their chieftain was the sultan Muhammad,¹⁶ son of the paternal aunt of the imam. With him were one-thousand-and-sixty notable infantry, and forty knights. The imam made them welcome and showed them his favour. He [sultan Muhammad] resided at Harar. The imam was exceedingly delighted at this and gave thanks to the Most High God.

The army camped around the city, with each tribe being kept apart from the others. The tribe of the Marraihan was, however, wavering. Their chieftain was a man fond of intrigue and procrastination. Extremely wily, he loved double-dealing and swindles. The imam organised some of his soldiers and went to the Marraihan and confronted Hirabu and his tribe and said to him, 'Why are you lagging behind in coming on the *jihad*?' Hirabu complained about his plight, and excused himself on the grounds of his poverty-stricken state.

The imam accepted his excuse, and then said to him, 'But no good will come to you from just wishing [that things will improve]'.^{16K} Thereupon Hirabu appointed [f'14] his nephew to command the Marraihan and they rallied around the imam - ninety cavalry and more than seven-hundred foot-soldiers - with Hirabu bringing up the rear. The imam went back to his city of Harar, taking the tribe of Marraihan with him.

Thereupon the imam made preparations for Abyssinia, for the *jihad* for the sake of the Most High God. The imam equipped his soldiers and his army and all the tribes. He sold the gold and silver jewellery of his wives, and the furnishings of his house in order to provide the tribes and the soldiers with weapons of war, keeping nothing back for himself - may God forgive him, for

he hoped only for the reward held out by the Most High God, the Gracious One,

and sought from God that he might make him dwell in the paradise of delights, and bless him with the *hour/s* with the intensely white and deep black eyes, and enfold him in His never-ending Favour.

[The expedition sets out: birth of Ahmad's son Muhammad]

Then the cry went up for the commencement of the march into Abyssinia. He set out with his soldiers, and the tribes coming one after the other, banners unfurled. The imam set out with his wife Del Wanbara, daughter of the emir Mahfuz; she was pregnant. They reached a town called Zifah where they found food and good things in abundance. They were met by Garad Din bin Adam, a man of peace who loved the poor and the unfortunate, and who frequently called on the name of the Prophet - may God bless him and grant him salvation. He treated them graciously and hospitably; as did Garad Satna'un; and Garad Kamal the brother-in-law^r of the imam, to whose sister, Munisah the daughter of 'Utman, he was married; and the emir Mujahid. They paid profound homage to the imam and his army; as did Absama Nur. All of them greatly honoured the imam.

The army camped for six days at Zifah. The imam Ahmad's wife, Del Wanbara gave birth in Zifah, and bore a boy who was called Muhammad. She deferred going on the expedition on account of this, and stayed with the imam's sister Munisah. Thereupon the Muslims set out for Abyssinia until they reached a place called Dir which was a river with an abundance of water. They joined forces there - the Muslims and the heroes who professed the unity of God - small and great alike.

[Wanag Sagad leaves for Bet Amhara]

The storyteller says: News of the arrival of the Muslims reached the king of Abyssinia Wanag Sagad when he was in the country- of Badeqe.¹⁶ ' His spies informed him, 'The Muslims are advancing in your direction, devastating your country and burning your churches. This force is deadly serious, and one to be reckoned with/

The king summoned his patricians and chamberlains and the special military¹ advisers of his kingdom, and then set out from Badeqe for Bet

170

Amhara, the capital of his kingdom, and of the kingdom of his fathers and his forefathers, of their homes and their official dwellings.

He left behind in Badeqe one of his patricians called 'Utman bin Dar "AIT who

had been a Muslim, like his father before him, but in the time of the sultan Muhammad was captured by the infidels, apostatised from Islam and became a Christian. The king made him a patrician, but afterwards he repented and returned to Islam when he had had many children born to him in the country of the infidels. He took part in the *jihad* and died a martyr in the battle for the Amba as will be described later on.

When the king reached Bet Amhara he assembled his forces, mobilised his troops, and around him gathered the Christian people, the tribes of Tegré,¹⁷¹ the tribes of Agaw,¹⁷² the tribes of Gojjam,¹⁷³ the people of Bagemder,¹⁷⁴ the people of Angot, the people of Qeda,¹⁷⁵ the people of Gan and the people of Bahr¹⁷⁶.

The whole of Abyssinia was in turmoil. Twenty-four of the patricians were from amongst the most illustrious patricians of Tegré. Under each patrician there was a force too great to be counted. The same could be said of the people of Bagemder, the people of Angot, the people of Qeda and the people of Gan.¹⁷⁷ They made up an army that was like a plague of locusts whose number the Most High God alone knows. All the Christians, and the infidel army, with their soldiers assembled in Bet Amhara in untold numbers,

wearing armour composed of chain rings set in neatly tiered rows, and with awesome weaponry.

The author,; may God the Most High have mercy upon him, says, I heard this from 'Abbas, one of the Muslims who was in the king's presence at Bet Amhara that day, an apostate who returned to Islam, and what a true Muslim he turned out to be!

He reported that the king said to him, 'What do you say, 'Abbas? When the imam sees this army, will he be able to withstand my attack, or not?' He said, 'And I said, "He personally will continue to follow one of two courses that he finds attractive;¹⁷⁸ but as for what the army will do, that I do not know".' The king said to 'Abbas, 'You spoke the truth. If you had said that the imam's army would resist my attack, I would have considered you a liar, and I would have had no faith in you. You did well when you said to me "I don't know".'

The storyteller says: In the meantime, the patrician Ura'I 'Utman the apostate, whom the king had left behind him in Badeqe, gathered together the infidel forces, such as the people of Dawaro, and the people of Bali, the

people of Wanag Jadab, the people of Wanag Amba, the Maya people, the people of Ar'an,¹⁸¹ the people of Ganz,¹⁸² the people of Fatagar, the people of Damot.

There were seven main patricians, each of whom had a mighty army under him. In the time of the grandfather^{5X3} of the king of Abyssinia among the Fatagar there used to be only one chieftain who was a patrician. But this [present] king had created seven patricians who had been vying with one another to do battle with the Muslims, [f¹15]

So numerous was the army, and the bands of infidels, that no one was left in the kingdom who had not been summoned to make war against the Muslims, or to ward them off from their country, and their churches, and [especially] the king's church which was in Badeqe, in the same place where his residence was. It was the imam's intention to put it to the torch.

The Christians said 'He will not reach the church until we have been killed, to the last man of us.' The patrician assembled his army and his soldiers in Badeqe on the look-out for the imam, just as the king of Abyssinia was on the lookout in Bet Amhara, with his army and his soldiers.

[Ahmad commissions his commanders]

The storyteller says: Now, as for the situation with the Muslims:

When they had gathered together in Dir, they set out thence a journey of two days, reaching a place called Baqa]-zar^{IM} which was a river with an abundance of water.

At that time the imam assembled his forces and called up his army. He tied a white standard to a spear, and entrusted it to the wazir 'Addoli and the people of Sim rallied to him,¹⁸¹ from the tribe of the Somalis the Habr Maqdi, and the tribe of Ahmad Girri, and with them two-hundred cavalry and two-thousand infantry like savage lions.

The chiefs of the cavalry were from the Malasai¹ ^contingent of the *mujahid*. the emir Mujahid Suha, Absama Nur, Garad Sama'un, Garad Barhan, Balaw 'Abd,¹⁸¹ 4Alus^{18N} bin al-Hcgano, Aiyub and Kaled al-Warad: this latter was their guide along the route. They were all drawn from the courageous heroes of the cavalry and foot-soldiers. Kaled was their guarantee [as guide]^{1 s 1} and he likewise was from the number of knights well-known for courage: al-Ura'i Nur Qata bin 'Umar, brother-in-law of Garad Mahfuz; Farasaham 'Utman Yemaj;¹⁹⁰ Amajad

Ahmad bin al-Husain; Sar Abu Bakr; Muminat Abu Bakr; Del Sagad, the knight of Sim; *sum* Waradai; hegano 'Utman Waradai:^{1 M} all of these were converts to Islam. Their conversion was

sincere, and they fought a fine *jihad* for God.

That consummate lord, the abstemious fighter of the *jihad*, Wasara sheikh Hamed. son of the consummate ascetic, was one of the number of learned and pious ascetics who followed these afore-mentioned knights.

Then he [the imam] tied a red standard to a spear and entrusted it to his brother-in-law Mattan bin 'Utman bin Kaled, the Somali, their chieftain, their knight, and the most courageous, the bravest of them all. There rallied to him one-hundred-and-ten knights and three-thousand infantry, along with the tribe of Harti,^{1q} the tribe of Jairan and the tribe of Mazra, all of whom were Somalis.

He tied a third standard, yellow and red combined, to the spear which he entrusted to the wazir Nur bin Ibrahim. The tribes of Sawa,¹⁹³ artd the tribes

of Hargaya¹⁹⁴ rallied to him. At that time their chieftain was Muhammad bin Ibrahim, the brother of the imam;¹⁹³ and the army of Jarir whose chieftain was the half-brother of the Sultan Umar Din from his mother. There were one-hundred cavalry amongst them, and two-thousand foot-soldiers. The imam attached them to the wazir Nur bin Ibrahim.

Amongst the leaders of the cavalry were the sheikh Daud, the shiekh Zamala, Garad 'All Fanqala, Goita Ibrahim lord of Gedaya, Farasaham Wasan Jai and Goita 'Utman. All of these knights were courageous, as were those who followed them.

[The inscriptions on the imam's standard]

The imam's standard, which was in the centre at this time, was white with a red border. Written around its circumference was 'In the name of God the beneficent, the merciful. Surely we have given you a clear victory': that God may forgive you your past faults and those still to come, and make perfect His Favour for you and keep you on the right path: and that God might assist you with a most powerful assistance';¹⁴⁶ 'help from God and victory close by.'¹⁹ *God has written down: Surely I will prevail, I and my Messengers: God is most certainly strong and mighty.'¹⁹⁸ 'Helping the believers is ever an obligation for us'.¹⁹⁹ 'Most truly we assist our

Messengers, and those who believe in the life of this world, and in the Day when the martyrs shall rise up'.²⁰⁴ 'Surely our word has gone out concerning our servants the Messengers. Most certainly they shall be the assisted ones. And most surely our force alone shall be victorious.'"¹ 'O our Lord, pour down on us patience, and make our steps firm, and help us against the unbelieving people.'² 'O our lord, pour down on us patience, and may we die as submissive ones.'"⁰ 'Have you not considered the chieftains of the sons of Israel²⁰⁴ after the time of Moses when they said to their prophet: "Raise up for us a king so that we may fight in the Way of God." He said to them: 'Is it not possible that when fighting is laid down for you, you will not fight?' They replied: "What reason would there be for our not fighting in the way of God? We have been forced to abandon our homes and our children.'¹ But when fighting was decreed for them, all but a few of them fled; and God knows the evil ones.'²⁰⁵ God has surely heard the cry of those who said: "God is poor and we are rich." We will write down what they say: how they killed the prophets without reason; and we will say: 'let them taste the punishment of burning'".²⁰⁶

In the middle of the standard there were four consecutive lines: The first line read, "Have you not seen those to whom it was said: "Restrain your hands, be assiduous in prayer and pay the alms tax. But when fighting is decreed for them, behold a faction of them fears men as it ought to have feared God, or with a greater fear. Say: "O our Lord, why have you decreed fighting for us? Why did you not defer it for us until our appointed time of death drew near?" Say: "This world's riches are as nothing."²⁰

The second line read: I have done good things to you with what is living, and what is authentic; with what [f16] will never die. I have repelled evil from you by repeating thousands of times: "there is no might, and no power other than in God who is the Elevated One, and all powerful",^{20*}

The third line read: 'The next life is exquisite for whoever fears God.'^{2(W} 'Describe for them the true tidings about the two sons of Adam. When they offered sacrifice, the sacrifice of only one of the two was accepted: the other's was not accepted. This latter one said: "I will surely kill you". To which the other replied: "God accepts only from those who fear him"²¹⁰

The fourth line contained the following two verses that it is said 'AIT bin Abi Talib, may God be pleased with him, had had inscribed on his standard: 'If you engage in war, then do not be faint-hearted; be patient in its vicissitudes, death will come at the appointed time.'

This was inscribed that day by our lord the Quranic teacher, the holy man, the pious Mufti of the Muslims, our Lord Abu Bakr bin Nasr ad-Din bin Muhammad also known as 'Arsuna'. He was among those who witnessed the battle of Sembra Kore with the imam Ahmad. He witnessed other battles with the imam Ahmad. He was a devout man, exceedingly attached to reciting the Qur'an. Whether on the march, or seated, standing or mounted on his horse he would be studying the Qur'an. He was a preacher for the Muslims and acted as their imam for prayers. When he read the prayers he would only read verses about war and battle, and never ceased reading the verses that honoured the *mujahidun* in the way of God. He spurred them on to battle, exciting their desire for it.

[The names of the knights lighting with Ahmad]

That day the imam of the Muslims Ahmad bin Ibrahim was in the centre. Surrounding him were two-hundred horsemen who were his companions and his equerries, like raging lions, mounted on harnessed horses.

Among the chieftains of the cavalry renowned for their courage were the emir Husain al-Gaturi lord of Dawaro after the conquest; and the emir Zaharbul Muhammad, the cousin of the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him. He had been captured by the infidels during the expedition against Dawaro as we have mentioned. They sent him to the king of Abyssinia.

The imam sent a messenger to them who said to the king: 'This prisoner w'hom you have is my cousin. We will send you money for his ransom.' W'hen the king heard that he was the cousin of (he imam he had him sent off to a distant part of the land of Abyssinia called Damot. This was just how God wanted it - so that his Muslim servant should be saved from the hands of the idol-worshippers.²¹¹ He rescued him by his power to the extent that he escaped from the prison and his bonds. He would walk determinedly by night, while by day he would hide himself, remaining alone in deserts and wastelands until he finally reached the country of the Muslims four months before the battle of Sembra Kore .

He was present at Sembra Kore and at other expeditions, and fought the *jihad* for God, and his was an authentic *jihad*. He was one of the courageous ones, generous, powerful and intrepid, as we will describe later.

And Kusem Abu Bakr, devout, abstemious, a worshipper of God, a *mujahid* an axis: he died a martyr at Dawaro as we will describe later.

And Garad Ahmusu bin Ahmad, a notable hero; an exterminator in horseback. And Garad 'Abd an-Nasr lord of Ganz ²¹² after the conquest; one of the pious

mujahidun, and one of the courageous and renowned ones, who sacrificed his blood, zealous for the way of the Most High God. He was one of the members of the household of the imam, their servant, who gave him good counsel in all matters.

And Sabr ad-Din, a fearless horseman who, if ever he saw an infidel, could not control himself until he had seized him. He was like a camel in heat. Blood flowed from his nose, so infuriated did he become for God, and so deep was his longing for the *Jihad* in the way of God.

And Farasaham Sultan bin 'AH from the tribes of Yamli. And his companion Nur bin Nasr bin'AIT. And Garad Siddiq bin'AIT who governed Sarkah“ after the conquest.

And Farasaham Din. He had been close to the Hat^{21j} and was a Muslim who persevered in his religion after the death of the imam,^{21'} He then went with the emir Nur, son of the wazir Mujahid^{21h} to the country of the Muslims, to the city of Harar and died there, may the Most High God have mercy upon him. He governed Lcayyah. And Farasaham "AIT, lord of Angot after the conquest.

And al-Ura‘T Muhammad bin ‘Abd al-Wahid. And the emir Abu Bakr nicknamed ‘Qatin¹ which means ‘the gaunt’.²¹⁷ He was from among those renowned for their courage, and among the rare horsemen whose exploits became proverbial. And Goita Tedros bin Adam. And Jasa‘Umar who after the conquest governed the land of Walaqa^{21*} on the border of the Abbay²¹⁴ which is a mighty river that meanders and empties itself into the Egyptian

Nile. And Takla bin Agaw. And Ahmad Din bin Kaled bin Hargaya Muhammed.

And Garad ‘Utman bin Juhar governor of Jan Zalaq after the conquest. And al-UraM Abun bin ‘Utman Bin Suleiman bin as-Sultan Muhammad bin Badlai from the line of Sa^kd ad-Din. He was one of the courageous heroes.

And Besara bin Jasu“^{!!} who died as a martyr in the battle of Maya as will be recalled later on. And of those who followed them, there was not one who had not attacked a hundred infidels or more.

The author says: The Muslims set out from Baqal-zar and reached Kuba which is a great river. Between them and the river ‘A was was a journey of two days through the bleakest of deserts, without water. Some of them were for continuing on to ff¹⁷] Abyssinia from this place but they would only be able to travel by

night because of the heat of the sun and the scarcity of water. The Muslims deliberated amongst themselves what to do. Some of them said, 'Let us travel by night,' while others said 'Let us travel by day'. They entrusted themselves to their Creator, who provided for all their schemes, and set out by day, saying: 'O our Lord, our Creator, do not abandon us'.

They continued on and none of them knew where water was to be found. While they were travelling in this fashion, their journey became exhausting from lack of water, but thanks to the high-mindedness of the *mujahidun* and to their putting God first, they found water flowing on the top of the ground even though it had not rained, and the region was not known, before this, for having water. They dismounted there by the water, and watered their horses and their pack-animals, and after drinking their fill of the water, they camped there overnight.

On the second day they reached the 'Awas, The Muslims' guide over the route this time was Kaled al-Waradi, along with Jimma "All. Azeri bin Dalmassi and his brother. These were they who guided the Muslims,

The author says: When the Muslims had spent the night near the 'Awas one of the Muslims whose name was Ibn Dalmassi stole one of the horses from the Muslim cavalry belonging to Abun Dawah, brother of the emir Mujahid, and rode it to the infidel camp. The horse's owner informed the imam. The *mujahidun* assembled and read out the *Fatiha* against him. When the time for the forenoon prayer came, there was the horse, returned all by itself. And what happened to the one who stole the horse is not known even until now. Some said that he was drowned in the 'Awas; others said that he was killed. All this was because of the merit of the *mujahidun*. The Muslims said: 'This is one of the signs of victory, if the Most High God wills it.'

So they travelled from the 'Awas and arrived at the land of Mergay. They regrouped there. The Somali tribes complained about the scarcity of supplies, so the imam sent the wazir 'Addoli with his army off ahead to a place called Jilbi, in the land of Abyssinia, to forage for food.

222

The imam Ahmad in the meantime took the road for Kassarand reached Amajah. The wazir 'Addoli who had procured some provisions, including cattle and the like, went back and returned to the imam Ahmad.

[Ahmad and the Muslims of Amajah]

They gathered in Amajah where they stayed three days. It was one of the towns

in Abyssinia that had Muslims living in it. But it belonged to the king. Its inhabitants then went to the imam Ahmad and said, 'The king of

Abyssinia has a mighty force with him; the number of his horses is

incalculable. Only the Most High God knows the number of his coats of mail, helmets, foot-soldiers and shields made of hide. Your fathers, your ancestors, the emir 'All, the emir Mahfuz your father-in-law, along with Garad

Ibrahim²² ' and the sultans who long ago used to rule in the country of Sa'd

ad-Din - not one of them ever attacked the king of Abyssinia in his own country, in his own dwelling-place. Instead, they would lead expeditions to the borders of the country, collect booty and then return. And when one of the infidels pursued them they would fight [to protect] what they possessed. But you want to attack the king of Abyssinia in his own country! Watch that you do not bring ruin upon the Muslims.'

The imam replied: 'The *jihad* in the way of God is not a hardship for the Muslims'. Then they said. 'Our only desire is for the *jihad*. Whichever one of us is killed will go to paradise;^{22*} and whoever amongst us survives, will survive happily. We know that the Christian dog'-r> Wanag Sagad is powerful; and numerous. But we do not fight them by force or by numbers; we do battle only by this religion which God has graced us with/Then the people of Amajah started weeping, put copies of the Qur'an on top of their heads, treated the soldiers hospitably, called victory down upon them, and triumph over the enemies of the Most High God.

The storyteller says: Then the Muslims set out on the fourth day. at the time of the afternoon prayer, and came to a halt in the land of Jan Zalaq. Near the Muslims there was a mountain called Kassani, upon the top of which they could see the infidels. The imam Ahmad set out, after choosing from his army thirty horsemen and they approached the mountain. The infidels saw the Muslims and how few' of them there were, so four of the patricians came down against them, amongst whom was the patrician Nasr, governor of Mergay with fifty horsemen and a great number of foot-soldiers.

The Muslims met them with staunch hearts, and finely-honed swords, and

penetrating spears. The first of the Muslims to attack one of the infidel cavalry was Muhammad bin⁴Adruh who pierced him with his spear, throwing him from his horse to the ground: then God cast his soul into the fire, 'an evil place to settle in'.²²⁶ Then, after him. Kaled al-Waradi attacked one of the patricians, striking him a fatal blow with his spear, and he fell dead from his horse, may the Most High God not have mercy upon him. The infidels then turned tail and went back up the mountain, going down the other side. A detachment of them was utterly destroyed.

The Muslims took booty that included twelve cavalry horses and a great number of mules and pack animals. They said: 'This is the first

victory'. Then the imam and his companions returned to the camp, where their [other] companions were. The people of the camp had lighted fires. [fT8] Some of the people were recalling the Most High God; others were blessing the Prophet, may God bless him and grant him salvation; others were reciting the Qur'an.

The imam Ahmad had captured a troop of the infidels and he questioned them about the king of Abyssinia and his party. They replied: 'The patrician Ura'i 'Utman bin Dar 'All has a vast force with him in a place called Dukam,"²⁷ which is a big river not far from you.' Garad Mahfuz, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, had gone to this river. And as for the king Wanag-Sagad he was in Bet Amhara with his forces and his army. The forces of Tegrc had arrived at Dabra Berhan.'" Their patrician was [Azmac]

Takla Iyasus. 'AzmatS'^{2*19} in their language means the same as 'patrician" for the Byzantines." ⁰ He had with him many patricians, among them Fcqra [yasus, and the patrician Wasu 'Utman who had been a Muslim and then apostatised: may the curse of God be upon him.

The storyteller - may God have mercy upon him, says: Then the Muslims left the land of Jan Zalaq and halted in time for the afternoon prayer at the approaches to a place called Mcsk,^{2,r} where they passed the night.

[In the morning of the second day they set out, and it was the time for the forenoon prayer when they sighted a group of infidels close by them. They sent a detachment of cavalry ahead to bring back news.

These captured a number of the infidels and presented them to the imam Ahmad who questioned them. They related that the [king's] party was far off, high up [in the mountains). So the Muslims set out and stopped at the time of the afternoon prayer by a river called Maju" ⁱ in the land of Fatagar.

On this day there was a driving and cold wind, so they passed the night there. When next day came, they set out, halting only when they came to a place called MasTn, the village of Umar Abun. They set fire to it, as they also set fire to the king's church.

The Muslims never passed by an infidel village without destroying every trace of it.

[The battle for Badeqe]

Upon the third day they set out, finally arriving in the neighbourhood of Badeqe which was where the king's houses were and where his treasure was stored. The Muslims made enquiries about soldiers but no one could give them information about them. They [the townsfolk] said to them, 'there isn't a single soldier in Badeqe'.

So the Muslims advanced towards Badeqe without organising their forces, and without proper preparations. They dismounted from their aweinspiring horses and rode their mules, leading their horses with halters.

While they were engaged in entering the village, the infidel army, may the Most High God forsake them, advanced like a locust plague, to trap the Muslims before they entered the village. Their adornments were unmistakable. With their banners raised aloft, they raced like a lighted flame, protected by coats of mail like David's,²³³ by obstructive helmets. In their hands were razor-sharp swords and piercing spears.

The storyteller, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: The king of Abyssinia Wanag Sagad had ordered them, * Don't attack the Muslims until they have entered the city, and have burnt the houses and the churches.' They desired to extinguish the fire of God with their mouths: and God only consents in order to make his light perfect, even though the infidels attack it.²¹⁴

These were the patricians who arrived at Badeqe: there was the patrician Sarse Behtwadad,^{23"} like the patrician Degalhan, brother-in-law of the king; the patrician Maha Tenta Dawaro Nagas;^{ij6} the patrician Ura'1 'Utman, the apostate who was the son of Suleiman, the son of Muhammad Badlai bin Sa'd ad-Din; the patrician Fatagar; the patrician Takla lyasus, governor of Tegre.

The patricians were at logger-heads with one another. They, that is the aforementioned patricians, said, 'We will not fight the Muslims until after they have

entered the village and burnt the houses and the churches as ;he king has commanded us. We will not disobey his command.'

On the other hand, the patricians of Tetre, among them the patrician Robel,²³⁷ the patrician Aser^{2's} and the patrician Aron and the patrician Feqra lyasus, the patrician Wasu 'Utman, and all those of Tetre said,¹ 'We will attack the Muslims before they enter the city until the last one of us perishes.if we are all killed, then let them do what they wish.' So the infidels incited one another to do battle with the Muslims.

As for the remaining patricians mentioned above: they refused to do battle, and stayed in their places. Then the proud, headstrong and rebellious Satan, the patrician Robel, arose, and mounted his horse. When he mounted, the patricians of Tetre mounted with him: the patrician Ascr, the patrician Feqra lyasus, the patrician Wasii 'Utman and the patrician Aron; and their followers. Each patrician had under him a mighty army. They marched towards the gate of the city of Badeqe.

Between the city and the Muslims there was a great river, by name

_ 239

Samarma. ■ The infidels marched to the river and remained there. They arrayed their forces, dressed their horses and mounted them, after they had been loaded with equipment and weapons, and crossed the river that was the barrier between them and the Muslims.

The storyteller; may God have mercy upon him. says: when the Muslims approached the city and saw^r the infidels and how ready their armies were for war and battle, the imam Ahmad said to his army,'Mount your horses, but do not be in a hurry to light. Look tor a place that is suitable for war and for cavalry manoeuvres; and hurry.'

The wazir 'AddolT set out at the head of the army, with all of the units following him. The imam Ahmad brought up the rear of the army, and had with him fifty knights from among the illustrious heroes, people of constancy and strength about whom legends have grown up. With him were two- hundred foot-soldiers, seasoned fighters famous for their courage bearing razor sharp swords and Indian shields. These stuck closely to the imam Ahmad, and were never ahead of him or behind him throughout all the war. They were ready for battle.

Then they mounted their horses and the imam Ahmad encouraged them to fight the *jihad* and to remain firm before the enemies of the Most High God. Among

other things he said: ‘O you who are believers, be patient, and excel in patience and remain steadfast, and be careful of your duty¹ to God so that you may be successful,^{1”4”}

Now for what happened to the wazir ‘Addoli and the Muslim army [f’ 19] which had advanced with him. They arrived at the river that separated the two forces, and crossed over the water. The first to cross over was a foot-soldier named Sabrah, from the tribes of Ganz. He was a humble fighter for the way of God. He attacked the infidels and the Muslims attacked with him, attacking as one man. unit intermingling with unit. The ignoble Abyssinians withstood the charge of the noble believers momentarily. But then the right wing of the infidels broke ranks, while the soldiers on their left wing held firm - the patrician Robel, the patrician Aser. the patrician Feqra Iyasus and the patrician Wasu ‘Utman. They and their standards stood firm like mountain crags wearing protective armour of helmets and coats of mail.

At that moment, the emir Abu Bakr, nicknamed ‘Qatn launched an attack against the patrician Aron. Even though he thrust his spear into his mouth, and the shimmering point emerged under his ear, the patrician sat firmly in his saddle. An[other] infidel patrician then attacked the emir Abu Bakr, striking a blow to his right hand that shattered it. But the Muslims tied it up for him and it was as good as if nothing had ever happened. This was one of the graces of the *jihad* .

Then one of the Muslim cavalry called Kusm Abu Bakr attacked one of the patricians, striking him a blow' on his neck that left no trace because of the quantity of iron armour and equipment that he wore. He struck him a second time, but with no success. He struck him a third blow, but again it left no trace.

The infidel patrician called Wasu ‘Utman, the apostate, may God’s curse be upon him, attacked Kusm Abu Bakr, stabbing him in the chest, the point of the spear piercing his breast-plate and coming out of his back. He stabbed at him a second time in the same manner, but Kusm Abu Bakr was preoccupied with the first patrician whom he had struck, and remained firmly in his saddle.

A Muslim knight called Marfu, one of the vassals of Garad Mansur was killed; as was another of the Muslims called Nasr bin Adam, one of Mansur’s equerries. A third Muslim to be killed was called as-Saddiq, one of the companions of ‘Abd an-Nasr.

Also killed was a Muslim foot-soldier who was commander of the infantry. His name was Del Sabbar. One of the infidel patricians was on horseback; he was on foot. He had grabbed hold of the patrician and was trying to pull him⁻⁴¹ from his

saddle when an infidel cavalryman attacked Del Sabbar from behind without his knowledge, and he was struck from behind, on his back, with a spear whose point exited through his breast, and he died a martyr. God took his spirit quickly to Paradise; and what a happy repose!

[Ahmad rallies his troops]

After these had been killed, the emir Abu Bakr and al-Kusem held their ground, injured though they were. But when they saw that their companions were dead, the two of them turned round and fell back. The Muslims saw the two of them fleeing, so they, too, all tied in the direction of the imam Ahmad, but as they were crossing the river, a group of them was drowned in it, and the infidels took a great number of their horses.

When the imam Ahmad saw them fleeing, he confronted them and asked, as he berated them, 'Where are you fleeing? Are you fleeing from Paradise? Is not this the fate that was decreed?' Then the imam Ahmad dismounted from his horse and sat on the ground and his cavalry dismounted with him. The Muslims milled about, and great was the din they raised. They pressed one against the other in a surge around the imam Ahmad.

The storyteller, may the Most High God may mercy upon him, says: The imam had dismounted in a place that was narrow, and not at all suitable for cavalry manoeuvres so then the emir Husain said to him, 'O imam of the Muslims, pitch your tent now and we will do battle like the Arabs, that is to say, after the manner of the Companions of him towards whom may God be merciful.' So thereupon he halted and pitched his tent. The Muslims who were fleeing saw the tent pegged down tightly with the firmness of God, who helps whom he helps.

The infidels, in the meantime, arrived at the river and sought to hinder the Muslims from [crossing] the water. The infidels were attacking the Muslims and being repulsed by them.

Now this river had three crossings. So then the imam Ahmad divided his forces into three units. One unit in which was the imam, was to hold the middle crossing, in the centre. At the head of another unit he put Mattan, the Somali, who was chieftain of his tribe, whom he ordered to seize and hold the upper crossing on the right. The third unit he put under the control of the wazir 'Addoli, commanding him to seize and hold the lower crossing, on the left. Each of them then set out with his unit.

The unit under Mattan fought a bloody battle at the right-hand crossing.

Sometimes they attacked the infidels, and sometimes the infidels attacked the Muslims who drove them back. They were tireless²⁴² in this, from the time of the forenoon prayer, until the afternoon prayer time.

Then Mattan sent a horseman named Abu Bakr who crossed the river and arrived at where the imam Ahmad was to seek his aid, because the battle was going badly for them. So the imam sent them around fifty knights from among the people of courage and strength, and the most renowned of the knights, among them the emir Ahmusu and the wazir Nur bin Ibrahim, and 'Abd an-Nasr. treasurer²⁴⁴ of the imam Ahmad, and Farasaham Sultan, and Ura'I Nur, and Farasaham Din bin Adam, along with their followers. They set out for where Mattan was, and fought there a battle to the death. They stood the test, until nightfall separated the fighters. Theirs was the bloodiest of battles.

As for what happened to the imam Ahmad and his companions - they fought in the middle crossing²⁴⁴ harder than can be imagined: they fought the most desperate of battles. But then - the achievement is God's - one of the Arabs called Hamzah al-Jfiti engaged in a battle to the death in front of the imam of the Muslims. He was one of the foot-soldiers and stood his ground, and stood the test, confronting war with a full heart. He never struck one infidel whom he did not unhorse, dead. He killed so vast a number of them in the middle of the river, that the river water was turned red by the blood. The idolaters, however, stood their ground against him. but then the Muslims stood firm when they saw him unhorsing the infidels. Hamzah did not turn his back on a thousand idolaters.

Then the imam Ahmad prayed for him, as did the Muslims, that he might stand firm. He kept on fighting for the remainder of the day, and the Muslims with him, until nightfall separated the combatants.

[What happened to the arrows shot at the Muslims]

The emir who was on the left, the wazir 'Addoli, was accompanied by the Somali archers from the tribe of Marraihan who had their bows, [f'20] Sometimes, when they fired their arrows, the infidels repelled them; and sometimes they repelled the arrows of the infidels. Among the infidels were the Maya, a people who used poisoned arrows, and they had archers with them.

The storyteller.; may God have mercy on him, says: The imam had said that day to the Muslims, 'When they shoot arrows at you, collect them; don't leave them. For if you leave them on the ground they will pick them up and they will shoot them at you a second time. Gather them all up, and give them to me.' So it happened that when they shot arrows at them, the Muslims collected them, and at

sunset, when the battle ceased, each emir came with his force, each of them carrying a sheaf of arrows that he had picked up.

They unfastened the sheaves in the presence of the imam who commanded that they be taken and given to one of his treasurers, the chief of them, whose name was Dakal. All of them were given to him. When night fell, a cow was butchered but there was no wood. Dakal said to his companions, 'Look at these arrows. Tomorrow, if we are captured, the infidels will take them. Why don't we burn them and use them to roast the meat?' They replied, 'What a good idea,' and did just that. They burnt them and roasted the meat of the whole cow above them. This was one of the most amazing things we saw in the battle^{24^} of Sembera Kore in the year 935, less six months.²⁴⁶

Regarding what happened to the tribe of Marraihan - they and the infidels spent the whole of that day shooting at each other with arrows. The Muslims attacked the infidels, and the infidels attacked the Muslims, until nightfall separated the combatants. And each of them passed the night in his own place.

The *storyteller*,; may God have mercy upon him, says: The next day, when the fighting proved difficult for the Muslims some people, from among those whose wretchedness has been decreed, apostatised from Islam and became Christians, and they left to join the infidels. Nevertheless, the imam and his companions stood firm, and survived the night.

Other Muslims also wanted to flee, but the imam thwarted them by egging them on to do battle. For two days the horses remained harnessed: they were not unbridled or unsaddled. The imam said to those who wanted to flee, 'Don't run away at night; the infidels will kill you when you turn your backs. Be patient. It may be that God will send [you] his assistance: "Be patient; excel in patience and remain steadfast. Be careful of your duty to God that you may succeed".'⁴[Ahmad deals with deserters]

The *storyteller*,; may God have mercy upon him, says: When day broke the crowd of soldiers fled, leaving nobody with the imam Ahmad apart from forty knights from among the leaders famous for their courage; and around twenty foot-soldiers. So the imam and his companions set off after the deserters to bring them back.

It was at daybreak [the same day] that the imam sent two of his Muslim knights of whom one was the emir 'All [who was to become] lord of Angot, and the other was the wazir Nur bin Ibrahim, commanding the two of them to move the front line of the army forward. He said. 'Kill any of the Muslims who have run away/

The two knights set out like ravening^{4*} lions, crossed over the river Dukam, outstripped them, blocked the road against them, cut down four of the foot-

soldiers, and demanded, 'Whither are you fleeing?' and swore an oath, 'By God, whichever one of you moves forward, we will be within our rights to kill him. Otherwise, go back and stand your ground and fight the infidels. If any amongst you should be killed, he will go to paradise; and if any of you should survive, he will live happily.'

Thus they goaded the Muslims on to the *jihad*, and the Muslims held their lines until the imam reached them. But a great number of the Muslims were killed, and a group of them was wounded.

It was the Quranic teacher, Said! Abu Bakr, who that day roused the deserters to fight the *jihad*, repeating the words of the Most High 'How often has a small party conquered a large one. with God's permission. God is with the patient ones.'^{2M)} On that day the infidels hit him with an arrow, but he was in the river, and was unharmed.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: Thereupon the imam Ahmad stirred up the enthusiasm of the Muslims for the *jihad* in the

way of the Most High God. He said to them, "There is a great distance separating the country of the Muslims from that of the infidels. And, by God, you won't ride away from here except by the power of your swords, by blows and spear thrusts! Would you escape from the infidels? What is this but the appointed time that was written about/

So, after that, the Muslims stood their ground. The tribe of the Somalis said, 'it was the tribe of Harla^{2"}1 that gave us away,' while the tribe of Harla

said, it was the Somali tribe that gave us away'.

The imam split his forces into three divisions: all the Somalis were in one division whose command he entrusted to Mattan; another division was made up of the [tribe of] Harla whose command he gave to the sultan Muhammad, son of the imam's maternal aunt; and the other division was made up of the Malasai. a people used to incursions and to a thorough-going *jihad* upon whom he could rely in battle: heroic leaders, over whom was the imam, who ordered them to stand resolute^{""4} so that they never became disunited.:"At the time when the Muslims deserted, seeking their own country, these stood firm,"^{""4}

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him. says: As for what happened to the infidels: immediately after the Muslims took flight in the early morning, and

God directed his blessings towards the Muslims, desiring that His prestige should be enhanced, and that of the infidels humbled, the latter argued amongst themselves.

Some of them said, 'Let us pursue the Muslims because they will be unable to raise any support for themselves.' Others of them said, 'This is a ploy of theirs to entice us to leave this narrow place for a wider one where

they will turn upon us." And others among them said, 'Let us hold our ground until the king rejoins us; for he is close by us, and we should not pursue them. The king should join us today around the time of the forenoon prayer. Were we to follow them there would be a danger of our being defeated, and the king would rebuke us, saying, "I was close by you. Why did you not wait for me until I came to you?"'. They approved these words, and held their positions.

The storyteller may the Most High God have mercy upon him. says: Some of the infidel forces, when they saw the rout of the Muslims, outdistanced them and occupied a mountain along their route. The Muslims arrived at the mountain and saw the infidels on its summit. Immediately they encircled it, and killed the infidels, all of them. Not one of them escaped.

[The rout of the Maya people]

The Muslims set out from the mountain for a place called Agange, a river in the country of Lai,² of the Fatagar, not far from Zcqala.^{2ft} The Muslims dismounted there by the riverside, gave fodder to their horses and mules, and took their own repast: they had not eaten for two days.

They remained there two days. It was on the first day that there came a huge force of infidels, and with them the Maya people who had long-bows and poisoned arrows. Whenever one of these latter struck someone, the hair on his head fell out² from the strength of the poison. They were [f²¹] more than three-thousand in number. They were making a beeline for the king of Abyssinia, to aid him. but as God wanted to support this religion [of Islam] it was the encampment of the Muslims that they headed for, assuming it to be

the camp of the infidels. When they realised that it was the Muslim camp, they fled towards the road to Masin to the side of their king. Thereupon the Muslims pursued them, killed them, and made prisoners of them, to the very last man. The multitude of them was so abandoned by the Most High God that one [Muslim] knight took twenty prisoners; another eighteen; another ten. They were handed over to the imam who ordered them to be put to death so that the ground was

covered with their dead bodies.

Their emir, one of the Maya, was captured by Farasaham Sultan, and when they handed him over to the imam he said, 'I will ransom myself with two-hundred ounces of red gold.' To which the imam replied, 'We don't need your gold. Kill the dog, the son of a dog/ So they killed him. All the Muslims rejoiced at the victory.

As for what happened to the infidels, their king came to them at Badeqe at the time of the fore-noon prayer, with his patricians, his army and his soldiers in uncountable numbers. Their king asked them, 'Why didn't you allow the Muslims to enter the city to burn it?' To which the band replied, 'They shall not burn the church of our sister/

The storyteller; may God the Most High have mercy upon him, says: Now the church which was in Badeqe had been built in a most beautiful fashion by the king's mother,^ whose lineage was from the sons of Tetre, which was why they said 'they shall not burn the church of our sister. We will fight for it, and will die to defend it. That is the reason we prevented the Muslims from entering the city.' The king thanked them that day for what they had done, rewarded them for it, and clad their leaders in garments of honour.

[April 1529 AD: The battle of Sembera Kore]

Then the king with his army and his soldiers set out from Badeqe in pursuit of the Muslims: the soldiers accompanying him being so numerous that they covered the land far and wide. They arrived in the vicinity of the Muslims, and passed the night there. Then the next day the infidels sent out their vanguard to discover news of the Muslims. They spied on the Muslims, and the Muslims likewise spied on them. And on the third day they set out to return to their country. Around noon-time they arrived at the river Maju. ^ They then dismounted from their horses, watered them and said the mid-day prayer and passed the night on the heights of Sembera Kore. This was the evening of Wednesday, at the onset of the seventh month of the year nine-hundred-and-thirty-11 ve.^{2,111}

The Muslims spent the night recalling God, praising him, extolling him, worshipping him. The imam Ahmad rose up in the midst of his companions, and praised the Lord, speaking in the most laudatory terms of him, and prayed for the Prophet, may God save him and grant him salvation. He said, 'You are people of fortitude and (if power.' He ordered them to be alert, and to prepare themselves [for battle]. Then he said, 'O people, entrust yourselves to God; and seek refuge in God.¹ The Muslims got ready their military equipment.

The Muslim knights advanced, each exhorting the other. In the meantime [the imam] asked, 'what is your opinion about this matter?' The companions of the imam Ahmad talked [amongst themselves] and said, 'As for us, fighting is the object of our desire and of our hopes, and we will never cease holding our own against them [the enemy] despite sword blows and spear thrusts and death itself,'²⁶¹ "until God judges between us; for he is the best of judges".²⁶²

What they said gladdened the imam and he replied, 'May God grant you success and show you the right path: now prepare your weapons for war and for battle.' Thus they passed the night, rejoicing on account of the *jihad*.

When day broke, and dawn appeared, dazzling bright, the *nmczzirr* proclaimed, 'Come to the means of attaining Paradise' .*

The Muslims rose, recited the morning prayer, and in their midst the preacher stood up. Said! al-Faqlh ~^{ftD}Abu Bakr also known as Arsuna - may God Most High have mercy upon him. He inspired the Muslims, preached them the good news of Paradise, and how God has promised this to the *mujahidun*: and cautioned them about Hell-fire. which God has promised to those who run away. And he said, 'O you who are believers, be patient; excel in patience; remain steadfast. And be assiduous in your duty to God that you may be successful.'²⁶⁶

Upon this, the Muslims set out in the direction of Amajah. going down towards their own country, through the centre of Sembera Kore, in an easterly direction from the star Canopus.~^{hl}

The king of Abyssinia had changed direction, coming against the Muslims from the direction of the Qibla [i.e.] from the eastern side.^{26*4} With him was an army like a plague of locusts. He said to his patricians, 'Seize them; let none of them escape.' The enemy of God imagined that he would achieve what he hoped for. But God saw to it that he received nothing but ignominy.

The king decamped with his army and his weaponry, like water gushing forth. Both rear-guards caught sight of each other, and the infidels set themselves in order, organising their army and their soldiers into seven battle- lines. No line could see its outermost point. The Muslims likewise drew up their battle-lines and organised their soldiers.

The storyteller; may God have mercy upon him, says: My informant is one of the Christians, Azmac HaibI by name, who took part in the battle of Sembera Kore with the king. After his conversion to Islam he recounted to me as follows: 'The

number of the king's cavalry that took part in the engagement of Sembera Kore was sixteen thousand knights, each of whom had a mount from the Arabian sea-coast. The foot-soldiers, more than two-hundred- thousand of them, these carried shields and bows, that is to say, they were archers with poisoned arrows; and they carried glistening spears. And as for the Abyssinian cavalry, their forces were so vast as to be innumerable and uncountable. They blended one with the other like a well-compacted construction with no spaces left between its various parts.'

[Eulogy for Ahmad]

At this the imam Ahmad, may God have mercy upon him, applied himself to arranging his forces - to the right, to the left, to the middle and on both flanks. He said, 'O God, make us all patient, and victorious for your religion'. I said about him,

He it is who arranges matters; who is the regulator of the wars.

Audacious in attacking during battle;

He is [like] the blows of a sword.

For the sake of the *jihad*, he is the destroyer of disunity that stubbornly resists, by subterfuge, the one who knows the divine secrets.

He is the spearman who bests his strong opponent with his thrust;

And with his iron sword, he is a wielder of blows.

The infidels he has left wallowing in the dust: the tear ducts of any who survive, overflow.

He had launched attacks against them with a tumultuous din:

He struck them incessantly with humiliation and torment.

O you who ask me about Ahmad, he is a lover of the just, and hater of a man who lies.

He is the respecter of the law of the religion of His Prophet:

Humble towards his Lord, and also fearful of Him.

[f22] He is unceasing in his observance of the prescriptions [of the Law']; Persevering in his observance of legally binding acts of devotion.

O Lord, guard him by your grace for all to see;

O Merciful one, make him last as a strong wind lasts.[Ahmad disposes his forces]

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: The imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, summoned the sultan Muhammad son of the sultan 'All, son of his maternal aunt, and the sheikh Ans, son of the shiekh Sihab bin 'Abd al-Wahab, son of the sheikh Biiba, " and put under their command all the tribes of the Harla, as for instance the tribe of Zaman Bara, the tribe of Barzara with their chieftain, the tribe of Yaqula, and the tribe of Jasar. the tribe of Arab Tka, and the tribe of al-Qa: all of these belonged to the Harla. The imam commanded them to hold the Muslims' right.

Then he assembled the Somali tribes: the tribe of Girri, the tribe of Marraihan, the tribe of Yibbcri with the chieftain Ahmad Girri, the tribe of the Harti, people of Mait, the tribe of Jaran, the tribe of Mazzar. the tribe of Barsub: all of these were Somalis and they were ordered by the imam to hold the left. Each tribe had its own emir.

In the centre was the imam Ahmad bin Ibrahim, may the Most High God have mercy on him, with the cavalry surrounding him. like ferocious lions. The leaders of the knights were the emir Husain bin Abu Bakr al-Gatun, the emir Zaharbui Muhammad, may the Most High God show him mercy, and Farasaham 'All, the wazir Nur bin Ibrahim, the emir Mujahid, Farasaham as- Sultan, and 'Abd an-Nasr, the shiekh Dawa,²⁷¹ the emir Abu Bakr Qatin.²⁷² and Farasaham Dm.

Then Ahmad addressed the Muslim forces, 'Now I say to you what was said by the Prophet Muhammad - may God bless him and grant him salvation - to his companions: rise up to the "garden of paradise which is as extensive as the earth and the heavens; it is prepared for God-fearers, for those who believe in God and in his prophets. This is a grace that God bestows on those who please Him. And God is the Lord of all-powerful grace.

Amongst them was Garad Ahmadus⁴ bin Mahfuz, brother-in-law of the imam who was married to his sister Del Wanbara, the daughter of Mahfuz; and Ura'i Ahmad Din bin Kaled, Garad Sama'un, Besara, Sabr ad-Din, Jasa 'Umar,²⁷ Garad Ahmusu, Ura'i Abun, Garad 'Utman bin Jauhar,⁷⁶ Ahmad Juwita, Barhan, Garad Saddiq, Del Sagad, and others like these from among the knights famous for courage. Then the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God show him mercy, assembled some courageous infantrymen well-known for endurance, from among those who had participated with him in battles, and expeditions, in war and in fighting: five-hundred heroes who never abandoned the imam Ahmad - may God

the Most High have mercy upon him - whether he was present, or [absent] on a journey.

The imam ranged them before the cavalry . Among the leaders of the infantry was Hamzah al-Jufi who died a martyr this day, may the Most High God show him mercy; the commander of the infantry Fanj Sabbar; Juhuh;²⁷⁷ Ara'da; Nabi Ahmad ; Husain Dawaro; Takla; Jadid Kurju'⁷¹ - and those who followed them. That day the cavalry of the imam numbered five-hundred-and- sixty, with twelve-thousand infantrymen.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: On the left was the Somali tribe of Hart], from the people of Mait: a people not given to yielding. There were three-hundred of them, famous among the infantry as stolid swordsmen. In the same way there was the tribe of Yibcri, around four- hundred infantrymen, archers. So the imam attached them to the five-hundred who held the centre, saying to them, 'Hold your positions; don't budge, any one of you.' The tribe of Girri were all horsemen, renowned as riders.

The imam arranged his battle formation, and each group of Muslims prayed the two-fold prostrations after two-fold prostrations, on account of the great things that had befallen them. The Quranic teacher 'Abd Allah, dismounted from his mule, took his shield and his sword and humbled himself before the Most High God: he was a Sufi,²⁷ ' ascetic, pious, worshipful and learned.

Now, about Hamzah al-Jufi: when he saw the infidels he could not have restrained himself from doing battle, had it not been for two of the Muslims foot-soldiers who held on to him. He became as excited as a camel in heat, craving for battle and for *ahj/lmd* and for the pleasure of the Lord of mankind, that he might grant him his heart's desire. The whole tribe of HartI was like him. The Muslims had to hold them back, saying to them, 'Be patient until the infidels get closer to you'.

[Disposition of the Abyssinian forces]

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: As for the infidels, when they had drawn up their army, they advanced against the Muslims in seven battle lines. The king of Abyssinia, Wanag Sagad, was this day in the rear-guard.

On each of his flanks he had. to the right, four-hundred men; and to the left four-hundred. On this day he split all of them up amongst his army. He brought out his treasures: weapons of war, Davidic suits of mail, helmets of king Sabur, Egyptian swords²⁸⁰ and spears of Katt,^{2*1} and then distributed them to his

patricians and to his soldiers.

As for his cavalry, it was beyond counting. As the armies drew near, and the advance commenced. Each of the infidel lines was five times bigger than

that of the Muslims who were like a white birth-mark on the hide of a black bull.

Then the imam Ahmad addressed the Muslims, 'Remember God the Most High. Don't look at them; look at the ground. Have recourse to God against them. Be patient. God will be with you. Strive for victory and God will be your Protector and your Supporter.'

As the infidels drew nearer to the Muslims there was a cloud above them that shaded them; while the Muslims were exposed to the full heat of the sun. The imam Ahmad immediately humbled himself, and prayed. In his prayer he said, 'O God, O Living One, O Eternal One, O Creator of the heavens and the earth, O Glorious and Gracious One, these are your enemies, they are the enemies of your Prophet, " " and of your Messengers; they eat the nourishment you give them, but they adore something other than You. Yet you give them shade."^{SI} and we Muslims are in the full heat of the sun."

The storyteller, may God's mercy be upon him, says: The imam Ahmad had hardly finished uttering his prayer when the cloud moved from above the heads of the infidels to above the heads of the Muslims, shading them from on top. The king of Abyssinia and his host looked towards the Muslims [to see] their state of mobilization, but the cloud was shading them and their serried ranks, and their spears on the ready. Fright and regret came over them.

[Abu Bakr and Ahmad exhort the Muslims to the *jihad*]

284

Then the Qur'anic teacher Abu Bakr, also known as 'Arshuta'~ arose and preached near the banner of the imam. He goaded the Muslims on to battle. He harangued them until their hearts were filled with dread, and their eyes [f°23] brimmed full of tears. He said, 'O band of Muslims, paradise is beautifully ornamented; and Hell-fire is shut tight. The angels are gazing down; the *houris* with black eyes are preening themselves; rejoice at [the prospect of] life eternal/'¹⁰

Then he recited, 'Surely God has bought from the believers their persons and their property in order to give Paradise to them! They fight in the way of God; they slay and are slain by virtue of a promise which is binding on Him in the Torah, the Gospels and the Qur'an. Who is more faithful to his promises than (God)? Rejoice

then in the bargain that you have made with him: for that is a mighty triumph.’²⁸⁶

Thereupon the Muslims said to the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, ‘Let us attack them’. But the imam held them back from fighting. He said, ‘Maintain your positions. Don’t begin to fight them until they have begun to fight you. Hold your spears on the ready, cover yourselves with your shields made of hide, and don’t make a move with your feet without keeping God in mind.’

As the Muslims moved from their position to do battle with their enemies, the imam was saying to them, ‘O people of Islam, steadfastness means resolution, faint-heartedness means failure.’⁸¹ Be sure of this, those who persevere are those who will vanquish. Faint-heartedness and cowardice are the twin causes of disappointment. God will see that whoever is constant triumphs over his enemy, for God is with him. Whoever holds his ground against the cutting edge of a sword, he is the achiever of the future; and will never again suffer fatigue. If he walks with God, his dwelling place shall be the more honoured, his efforts acknowledged, for God loves those who persevere.*

[Muslims and Christians join battle]

When the ranks moved forward the Muslims could see a huge army, its sword blades sparkling. Then the enemy of God, the Abyssinian dog, Wanag Sagad, screamed out to his army to charge. They charged the Muslim right as one man, but the Muslims held firm against them. Then in the same way the right wing of the idolaters charged the left wing of the Muslims, made up of the Somali tribes, while the tribes of Tegre and the depraved patricians charged the centre where the imam Ahmad, may God may mercy upon him, was. The imam and his soldiers confronted them with Islamic hearts and Muhammadan high-mindedness.

Army fused with army, swords were unsheathed, spear tips were aimed, emblems and banners were unfurled, flags fluttered, bridles clanked, horses whinnied, vast clouds of dust billowed up, and sweat poured from the breasts of the soldiers on account of the weight of the armour. Nothing could be heard from armies but the battle-cries of soldiers and the neighing of horses at the blows of the swords hitting the hide-covered shields and the iron helmets shaped like ostrich eggs.

The crier proclaimed, ‘O people of Muhammad, may God bless him and grant him salvation, be a little patient, and you will obtain much: here is the black-eyed *hourī* in the shade of the swords, and at the tip of the spear.’ The imam Ahmad Bin Ibrahim, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, and those with him, held their ground. Then in the midst of the tumult he burst forth against the infidels,

wiping them out most successfully. Above his head the banner of victory streamed.

[Slaughter of the Somalis]

As for what happened to the Somalis on the Muslim left wing, when the fighting became unbearable they took to flight, with the infidels in pursuit, and were killed by them in a devastating slaughter. Some of them were captured, but three-thousand of them died.

Their chieftains, however, stood firm: Mattan bin 'Utman the Somali, brother-in-law of the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, fought a fine *jihad*. Holding firm with him was Ahmad Girri; and 'All Garad, Mattan's brother; and Farasaham Taf brother of Bcsara; and 'All Mad Jira from the tribe of Mattan; and Husain Musa Bin 'Abd Allah Makida; and Yusscf Latahia, from the tribe of Ahmad Girri. Their achievements this day truly are God's doing.

When [the flight of] their companions was revealed, they returned to the side of the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, and in his presence fought a bloody fight.

Now for what happened to those from the people of Harla who were holding the Muslim right wing: the first, second and third ranks [of the Abyssinians] charged them, and the fighting between them revolved like a mill-stone, with men's heads being cut off. The Abyssinians committed more forces against the Muslim right. But the Muslims endured with a remarkable endurance.

Another squadron of cavalry attempted to dislodge them, and the infidels drove them towards the centre near to the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him. They fought there a terrible battle. To God alone is due the success of the army of Bahr, among the Muslim infantry. They fought amongst the cavalry.

The battle intensified until the dust clouds grew so dense that none of the Muslims could recognise his companion, and none of the infidels could recognise his companion; nor could brother see brother.

The fighting went on between the various parties until the Abyssinians were pushed back into those who were following them and thousands of them perished, with the ground being covered with the bodies of those who died. The numbers of wounded on both sides grew, but they were higher for the Abyssinians.

The fighting between them went on from the forenoon until the time of the last

of the afternoon prayers. The Muslims were loud in proclaiming 'There is no God but Allah,' and 'God is the Greatest.' and praying for [Muhammad] the Herald who announced the good news. God gave them the victory, and struck terror into the hearts of the infidels who turned tail, with the Muslims in pursuit, capturing and killing them until darkness intervened.

[Abyssinian casualties]

How many thousands of infidels were killed, God alone knows. Many of the patricians were killed, among them the patrician Robel, from the patricianate of Tetre . He was killed by Ara'di, the equerry of the imam. Also killed was Aqba MikaTI, younger brother of Robel. powerfully intrepid and intractable. He was killed by the imam Ahmad, may God the Most High have mercy upon him, who struck him with his spear, and its tip emerged from his back, glistening.

Also killed were two slaves, eunuchs attached to the treasury of the king. One of them was named Juhar and the other was named Mendel. On that day the two of them were standing, with the king's standard above their heads; the infidels put them on almost the same level as the king. Juhar was killed by the emir Muhammad, son of the emir Muhammad bin Zaharbul 'Utman. Mendel was killed by Del Sagad, a knight from Sim.

The patrician Sire²⁸⁹ *Silnr⁹ⁱ* was killed by Garad Din, governor of

Maya after the conquest. A notable patrician, a relative of the king on his mother's side, named Yona^l," ¹ had his hand cut off by Garad Sama'un, and 'Abd an-Nasr struck him in the back with his spear, but he lied and was saved.

One of the Muslims, named 'Utman, a sheikh from the tribes of Gedaya, was riding his mule on this occasion, and attacked a patrician named Jan Balaw⁷ Ras, striking him in the back. The patrician was wearing protective armour, but the sword sliced through the armour and the coat of mail, and cut him in half. The top half flew to the side while the other half remained on the horse, and finally tumbled off.

The *sum* of Salamt ^ was killed by one of the Muslims, as was the patrician Gabra Madherr⁹ one of the king's vassals. His killer was a shrivelled-up toothless man called Aumayada; the patrician Zamanjan, nephew of the patrician Wasan Sagad, was killed by the wazir 'Addoll

The patrician Maha Tenta was struck in the eye by a spear thrown by a Somali spearman called Adam, the commander of the spearmen. God [f'24] cast his soul

into Hell, 'an evil place to settle in'.^{2 M} The patrician Wajamu w^fas killed by Takla bin Agaw.^{2^}

The patrician Za-Wangel, the Bahr Nagas,^{2 m} lord of Dokono^{2^7} was killed by "Abd al~Razaq bin Suha, brother of the emir Mujahid." ^s The patrician *sum* of Agame,"⁰¹ and the *sum* of Sajarah were killed, as was the patrician of Tatnben"⁰⁰ and the *sum of* Abargale, ' ^M The patrician 'Amdu was killed by a foot-soldier called Addamu. The number of patricians that were killed from Teare was eighty-six,³⁰² all of them Sums, marked as such.^{1b} "from among their most prominent leaders. Around ten-thousand of the distinguished people¹¹⁴ from Tegre were killed. One-hundred-and-fourteen other patricians were killed. Of all of them [there would be one] having one-thousand cavalrymcn under him: another one of them would have five-hundred horsemen under him, and another two- hundred, and yet another six-hundred. They were in this situation. The Muslims on this day hamstrung six-hundred of the horses of the infidels in the fighting.

[Muslim casualties]

Among the leaders of the Muslims who were killed was Hamzah al- Juft³⁰⁵ who died a martyr on this day. may God the Most High have mercy upon him. Also killed was Jadid Kurju; and the *muezzin* of Garad Abun, Kabir Ibrahim; and the Qur'anic teacher Muhammad the preacher from Sim; Dallu [of] Bali; Muhammad [of] Dawaro. Five-thousand Muslims from the tribes of the Somalis, Harla, Malasai and desert Arabs were killed. God put his seal of martyrdom upon them, introducing them to the Garden of delights, bestowed upon them the pleasures of the table, *houris* with black eyes, and lavished on them his all-pervasive Favour. Tn it [the garden of paradise] lasting blessing shall be theirs; abiding there for ever. Surely God carries a mighty reward with him'.^{1"1}

The Muslims collected booty of horses, swords, chain-mail and weapons of war so numerous as to be uncountable. They captured one of the most distinguished patricians, Takla Madhen, the brother-in-law[^] of the king whom they took with them to their own country, w'hence he was ransomed for five-hundred ounces of red gold. Then the imam turned round and returned to his city of Harar, happy, rejoicing, victorious, triumphant, wearing the victor's crow n, exultant, in the course of the month of Rajab'⁰ in that year.

[The fifth *jihad*]

The storyteller, may the Most High God have mercy upon him. says: After the infidels had taken to flight, and God had granted the victory to the Muslims, the imam Ahmad said this day to his companions, 'Now that God has given us the

victory over them, and has humiliated them, now let us march on to Badeqe the place where the king's residences are, to take him, and to demolish it. Let us occupy Abyssinia, conquering the country, and weakening them.'

They replied, 'O imam of the Muslims, you have already seen what has happened to us, how many of our soldiers have been killed, the injuries that we have sustained, the scarcity of our provisions. So now lead us back down to our own country, [f you mobilise afterwards, then we will mobilise our army; and then we will set off on a second expedition. Yet, if you tell us to stay here, we will stay here in order to fight alongside you.'

So, the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, went down with them to their own country, as we have already mentioned. He remained there through Sa'ban. Ramadan and half of Sawal

Then he embarked on an expedition, with his soldiers and army in the direction of Abyssinia, near Dawaro. He set out against them and took the best route via the Wabi. 'The Wabi is an extremely mighty river, notable for its

water, where crocodiles and wild animals breed profusely. It is the barrier between Dawaro and Bali, and empties itself into the salt sea in the vicinity of Mogadishu.¹¹¹

He came to the country of Dawaro, invading it by night. He split his army into two divisions: he put in command of one division the wazir Nur bin Ibrahim, and the second part was with the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him. They raided the people of Dawaro at the time of the morning prayer and encountered no resistance, taking captives and booty, may the Most High God have mercy upon him.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: five Muslim knights, among them al-Kusem Abu Bakr, had gone apart from the Muslim forces and entered one of the infidel valleys and met resistance from the infidels who had gathered there, preparing themselves for war and battle. They did not dawdle in attacking the Muslims, and a fierce battle commenced between them. The infidels were numerous, so the Muslims fled, apart from al-Kusem Abu Bakr who stood his ground, held firm and fought a fine fight, crying out, 'The *jihad* in the way of God'. It was his wont to pray, 'O God, bestow martyrdom upon me.' God granted him his wish, and bestowed on him what he asked for, as he died a martyr. May the Most High God have mercy upon him.

He had participated in the battle of Sembera Kore and in many forays. During

the battle of Sembera Kore he had a dream in which he saw' himself riding a mule, and the Qur'anic reciter was with him, but ahead of him. also riding a mule. He said, 'The angel of Death, peace be upon him, came to me and grasped the top of my head, and extracted my soul. I said to him, "Do not take my soul, but if it is inevitable that you do take my soul let this happen during a *jihad*: take it then". He replied "All right".'

He fought at Sembera Kore and was unharmed, returning to his city. He fought also in Dawaro as we have described above. His vision was proved

to be genuine, and the Most High God gave him what he desired.¹¹ The Muslims buried him, and spent the night [there].

The second day, the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, sent cavalry against the land of Dawaro, and they raided it, arriving at the land of Jawatir where they took captives and booty. They never passed by a village that they did not lay a curse upon, that it might pass into utter oblivion; and the women who were in it wept.

[The devastation of Adal Mabraq]

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says; When the Muslims reached the land of Jawatir, the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, followed them with the rest of the army.' "

They then set out from the land of Jawatir to the land of Dawaro, to a place called Adal Mabraq ¹² where they [again] took captives and booty. The patrician who was lord of Adal Mabraq, his name was Abel, defended his country against the Muslims, and held the narrow road. He fought the Muslims there, and he and his army fled before the Muslims, who took the patrician Abel prisoner.

His captor was Takia. He had him taken into the presence of the imam, and he ransomed himself. This Takia who had captured him had had his right hand and his left foot cut off by order of the imam, out of regard for the Most High God. He captured the patrician even though he had his hand and his foot cut off. He participated in the forays and battles, and fought in the front line, as will be mentioned later on. The Muslims devastated Adal Mabraq, and left it in ashes.

The storyteller, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: the principal patrician in Dawaro was called Ras Baniyat. "The king thought so highly of him that he made him a patrician and appointed him above all the other patricians. He was formidable and head-strong: a follower of Satan.

When he came to hear about the Muslims and how they had devastated the countries, he w^ras informed by his spies that the Muslims were trying to return to their own country. So he assembled a mighty army, and held a narrow defile against the Muslims, and pitchd his tent there. At that time there was no other route that the Muslims could take, and this presented a difficulty because there w^ras no way the horses could negotiate it.

The Muslims discussed among themselves what to do. Some of them said, 'We have already come too far along the road; now we cannot return.' Others again said, 'Entrust your affairs to God [f^r25] and go forward'.

The patrician Abel was at that time a captive in the hands of the Muslims, shackld in irons. The imam demanded to see him; and he was brought. The imam said to him, 'If these infidels obstruct our path, we will kill you. And after we have killed you, we will fight them. And if we die in the *jihad*, why, what a good thing to desire!¹

The patrician Abel replied, 'You stand to gain nothing by this plan; but

I have another idea.' The imam said to him, 'Let us hear your idea; and what you have in mind'."So, he continued, *I will send to these infidels and to their patrician Ras Baniyat, and order them to vacate the place in which they are at present. But we make this conditional on your not burning down these churches that we have here; for they are the churches of the king/ Then the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, said, 'If they do this, then we accept your condition.'

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him, says: Thereupon the patrician Abel sent a messenger to w here the patrician Ras Baniyat was. to say to him, 'I have come to an agreement with the Muslims whereby they agree not to bum down the churches of the king, on condition that you quit the road where you are now^r, and that you open up the way for them. I f you refuse this.

God will grant the victory to the Muslims against you and they will bum down the churches of the king; and the king will blame you for this. Now extend hospitality to the Muslims, and give a present for the imam Ahmad. I have already made a treaty of peace for you concerning this,'

So the messenger set out, and reached the patrician Ras Baniyat who agreed to the proposal. He, in his turn, sent a messenger to the imam Ahmad saying to him,

^kWe have agreed to what the patrician Abel has proposed between us and you; and we will extend hospitality to you and send the present, and if you go away and leave us. we will pay you the poll-tax.'

The imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, and the Muslims, agreed to this and made peace according to these terms: the patrician and his army turned back from the road, and the Muslims camped in the town of Ras Baniyat who extended hospitality to them and treated them graciously; and came with a present for the imam Ahmad. The Muslims made an exception for those who had entered into this peace with them.

Then they set out for two days until they reached a city called Mashib, part of the country of Waraqaal. Finding no army in it, they plundered it, taking its people captive, and then demolished it, leaving it in ashes. Then they set out for the land called Mai Falah in the region of Jan Amba ^U where they made an encampment and collected booty of which they took the fifth part [for God; and distributed the other] four portions. They also took ten horses.

[Ahmad and the renegade Muslim]

There was a man called Rajih who had left the country of the Muslims for the country of the infidels, apostatising and becoming a Christian. The king of Abyssinia gave him land for him to support himself. He raided the outermost boundaries of the Muslim country, ravaging it and causing untold damage. He kept on behaving in this way until the imam of the Muslims, Ahmad bin Ibrahim, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, came to power.

When he had set out on an expedition into Abyssinia and drew near to it, the imam Ahmad made camp in Zagba ¹ and sent a messenger to Rajih saying, 'You are a Muslim and the son of a Muslim, a *mujahid*' and the son of a *mujahid* from early times. God had fore-ordained what happened to you but now, why don't you repent and return to the religion of Islam and be our brother? Do not despair of the mercy of God, for "surely God forgives all sins".'³¹⁸

After the messenger reached him he sent him back to the imam to say, 'How many things have I perpetrated; I have killed, I have plundered the wealth of the Muslims! I am afraid that if I rejoin your ranks you will take it out on me for this.' The imam sent back a messenger to him who said, 'We have excused you. Return!' Thereupon he replied, 'Send me an emir with a vast army and I will advise them concerning the infidels and their wealth.'

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: This Rajih was familiar

with their country, had tramped all of its territory, and knew all its roads. The imam Ahmad sent him the wazir 'Addoli with his army. He met up with Rajih w'ho told him about the place in which the infidels were hidden. They remained there three days during which they killed, took captives and took booty: a vast quantity of cattle, slaves and pack animals.

Then the wazir 'Addoli and Rajih turned back, aiming to rejoin the imam who had set out from Zagba and pitched his camp in a place called Tarfar in the region of Da'in. The wazir 'Addoli caught up with the imam who was camped at Tarfar. The imam, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, welcomed Rajih, clad him in garments of honour, treated him graciously and repeated to him what God said in his renowned Book, 'Surely none despairs of God's mercy except the unbelieving people V

[Ahmad and five companions are victorious]

The storyteller, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: It was the custom of the imam Ahmad, when the army had made camp and had settled down there, to leave the encampment with five of his knights, and sometimes with ten, and sometimes with twenty. So while the Muslims were pitching their camp in Tarfar the imam went out, as was his custom, to reconnoitre the surrounding areas accompanied by ten knights and thirty foot- soldiers.

They arrived at a village near a mountain. There was an imposing house in the village. The imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him. said to them, 'Set fire to this house'. The imam was without equal. With him on this occasion was Farasaham 'All, lord of Angot, and Del Sagad, lord of Da'In, and Garad Saddiq, and Garad Sihab, lord of Jawatir after the conquest, the emir Husain bin Abu Bakr al-Gaturi, and Abu Bakr bin Sim.

As they gathered near the village they noticed that there were infidels in a valley there, who were prepared for battle. They had many horsemen and foot-soldiers with them, and the patrician Fanu'el from Dawaro was among their number.

When they spotted them, the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, said to his companions, 'There is no way now for us to return to our camp. Let us charge them. God will give us the victory.' His companions agreed, dismounted from their mules, harnessed their horses, donned their armour and took their weapons and mounted their horses. The emir 'All pulled his horse up close to the horse of the imam Ahmad, and they charged; and their companions charged with them. When the infidels saw them, shame and wretchedness

overcame them, and they fled without giving battle. Thanks to their steadiness, not one of the Muslims was killed.

[Ahmad's strategem]

The imam Ahmad and his companions turned back and returned to their camp, arriving there in time for the evening prayer and notifying them of what happened.

He said to his commanders, among whom was the wazir 'Addoli, the emir Nur and the leaders of the Muslims, 'The infidels wanted to take us by surprise; but it was God the Most High who took them by surprise'. Then he said, 'We had not calculated on the infidels assembling here. Now they will spend the night somewhere close by us. So now let us discuss among ourselves what we should do about them, and work out a ruse to entrap them.'¹

So they discussed what they should do.[f'26] The imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, said, 'We will not attack these infidels during the day. Let us rather send out a spy to bring us back news concerning them, and where they have made camp. When we know their location, we will attack them by night and surrounding them, catch them unawares/ The Muslim commanders approved of this plan. They sent out a spy to whom they gave his war pay/²"

The spy set out to discover the location of the infidels, and then turned back, returning to the imam. He reported, 'The infidels have gathered in a place called Buro³²' which is a mighty-, flowing river. During the day they ascend the mountain, but by night they camp by the river/

The storyteller, may God the Most High have mercy upon him, says: Thereupon the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, organised his forces. He was accompanied by two-hundred knights with whom they intended to surround the infidels. He also had five-hundred foot-soldiers skilled with sword and shield. Rajih went ahead of them. The imam ordered him to march ahead of the cavalry, and to advance until they came near where the infidels were, and to spend the night there, until he joined them.[Adventures of Ahmad and thirty knights]

So the foot-soldiers set off by night, but, as they mistook the route, they returned to the camp. Meanwhile, the imam Ahmad, may the mercy of the Most High God be upon him, had quit the camp where it lay, [leaving] in it the wazir 'Addoli and with him the booty and provisions.'²²

The imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, set out and with him were only thirty knights. The remainder of the knights had been overcome by drowsiness, and were sleeping in the camp. So the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, set out from the camp with only a

third of the night remaining, and with him were thirty knights, renowned for their courage.

Their guide was Del Sagad, knight of Sim. This was the country in which he had grown up, and so he knew its paths and its roads. The leaders of the cavalry included Ahmad Goita, and Zaharbui 'Utman, one of the few' knights who were courageous and valiant of heart, with the energy of Paradise. He had taken part in battles and expeditions. He used to fight as he chose: sometimes mounted and sometimes on foot. He died a martyr in the country of the Maya as we will describe later on.

So they marched until they approached the infidels, seeing their fires. Dawn was just breaking. The infidels were in a very narrow place. The guide Del Sagad stood up and said, 'O imam of the Muslims, these are the infidels, these are their fires and we are close by them/ But the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, was unaware that the foot-soldiers had returned [to the camp].

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: The imam and the foot-soldiers had made arrangements for a rendezvous: and when the imam reached it they were not there. So the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, asked his companions, 'What shall we do?' Garad Saddiq, lord of Sarkah, replied, 'Let us put all our trust in God and attack them: God will give us the victory/ The Muslims heard his counsel and agreed with his judgement. He [Ahmad] said to him, 'Your counsel is excellent". Then they harnessed their horses, mounted them, and donned their armour and breastplates.

[List of the knights]

Among the thirty knights that were with the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, were: Del Sagad; the emir 'All, nicknamed Ankarasah; Garad Saddiq; 'Abd an-Nasr; Ibn Dar Jusu; Ura'i Nur bin Dar 'All; Garad 'Utman bin Jauhar; the emir Husain bin Abu Bakr al- Gaturi; Ura'l Qat 'Umar; Qalasa Ura'i Nur; Ura'i Din; Garad Nasr bin Bali Garad ² who spoke beautiful Arabic, was strong-hearted and never separated himself from the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, and was impressive in giving counsel; AIT Waradai who converted to Islam on this day and became a fine Muslim. He was a religious person, and a faithful adviser to the Muslims and died a martyr at the Amba as we will recount later on.

There was also Dakal, and Takla, and Hukan Nur, lord of al-Karfin; Rajani Jutta Jaddali 'Abbas brother-in-law of Garad Mansur: he had been one of the slaves of

Garad Mansur who freed him and married him to his sister; the wazir Nur bin Ibrahim and Garad Ahtnusa.

When day finally broke, the Muslims cried out with one voice, 'God is the greatest,' and charged into the midst of the infidels. They fought for an hour and held firm against the infidels whose patrician was Fanu'cl, may God curse him. He charged the Muslims, and came near to the imam Ahmad. They fought for an hour and finally the patrician fled. When his companions saw him fleeing, they also turned tail.

The patrician Kefle was captured by Garad Ahmusa and the patrician Zin was also captured. The imam Ahmad so screamed out against him that he was thrown off guard. The imam said to him. 'Stay where you are'. He was disoriented on account of the scream of the imam Ahmad who then commanded one of his equerries, 'Capture him. and bring him back to me'.

The patrician and the equerry grappled with each other. The equerry tried to capture him, but the patrician took out a knife that he was carrying, and stabbed him.

'Abd an-Nasr had, at that time, captured one of the infidel foot- soldiers to whom he said, 'Go to your companion, the patrician, who has just stabbed one of our companions. Take him captive and return to me with him.' The infidel went, took his companion captive and presented him to the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him. They put him in fetters; and he paid a ransom for himself.

The patrician Kula was also captured by the emir Ahmusa; and around one-hundred of the infidels were slain. They took a vast number of horses and mules as booty without any of the Muslims being killed. The Muslims pursued them from Buro, so that they were forced to take refuge at Bus which was a big river below Auwawalada.

The imam Ahmad, may the most High God have mercy upon him, stopped to raise his banner, and planted its pole there so that the Muslims - that is, the thirty knights - could rally round it. They made their camp by the river, unsaddled their horses, watered them, gave them their fodder and shaded them under an olive tree. They were in a very narrow spot, with the mountains all around them: a kind of rock fault between the mountains. As we have already said, the infidels had fled, and the Muslims had pitched their camp, and had no news of the infidels.

[Ahmad repulses the forces of Ras Baniyat]

The imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, had risen to pray by the bank of the river, to recite the morning prayer. When the imam Ahmad had completed his prayer, he went back to his companions under the tree. While they were sitting there, they noticed a man riding a horse, a white horse: and he was galloping towards them. The emir Husain and Farasaham 'All said to the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, 'this rider is from among the horsemen whom we put to flight". The imam replied, 'No, this horseman who is coming now is not one of those who fled: otherwise he would be black from sweat and exhaustion'.

It turned out to be as the imam Ahmad said. When the horseman drew near to the Muslims they could see that he was being followed by his companions, six-hundred cavalymen equipped for war, and an army whose foot-soldiers [f'27] were incalculable. They were headed straight for the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, and his companions. Their patrician was Ras Baniyat, and with him were many of the patricians from Dawaro. The infidels drew closer to the Muslims, and held the mountain against them, throwing down stones at the Muslims who protected themselves from them by the tree.

The imam Ahmad and his companions were convinced that their Judgement and their Resurrection would occur in this place. The infidels cried out to the imam, 'What you have eaten and what you have done will not be sufficient for you. Today you have fallen into our power and there is no way out for you.' The Muslims entrusted their affairs to God, while the imam kept silent before their taunts, and gave them no answer.

The Muslims then discussed amongst themselves what to do. They asked the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him. 'What shall we do now?' At which the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, replied, 'Entrust your affairs to God; call upon God for help against them. There is no might, and "no power except in God" ¹⁻⁴ the Most High, the Most Powerful,"

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: Then the imam Ahmad approached his companions and said, 'You and I are in this situation together. Let us ask God to help us against his enemies. Fight for your religion and for your SharPa.'² Whoever from amongst us is killed, will go to Paradise. Whoever remains alive will live happily, "Be patient, excel in patience and remain steadfast. Be careful of your duty to God that you may be successful".'³²⁶

[*The storyteller*] says: When the infidels saw that their stones did not hit the Muslims, they came closer to them. Then one of the Muslim foot- soldiers, Takia

by name, said to the imam, 'O imam Ahmad, these infidels are now closer to us. What do you say: shall we kill them before they kill us?'

The Muslims had just one musket that 'Utman used to fire. He stood up, lighted it, and fired it at the leader of the foot-soldiers and killed him. Thereupon the Muslims called out with one voice, 'God is the Greatest'. The trees, the stones, the mountains and the earth answered them, and they charged as one man.

Takia charged. He it was who had had his hand and his foot cut off. He was riding a mule and he went into the middle of the infidels, brandishing his sword above his head. The fighting grew bloody and fierce and the patrician Ras Baniyat fled, as did his companions; and the Muslims gave them their just desserts with sword blows and spear thrusts.

The number of infidels who were killed was incalculable, while not one of the Muslims died or was wounded. The Muslims took twenty horses as booty, as well as a vast number of mules and breastplates, and pursued them; but not far. They in their turn descended the mountain, to the expansive lowlands which were suitable for cavalry manoeuvres.

[Ras Baniyat's counter-attack is repulsed]

Then the patrician, the enemy of God. Ras Baniyat, screamed out to his companions and to his army, 'Where are you fleeing to? What excuse will we give the king when he says, "Twenty of the Muslim cavalry put you to flight. And you are six-hundred horsemen, and your foot-soldiers are innumerable"?'

Thus he goaded his companions on, may God curse him, against the Muslims. They listened to his words, turned back and rejoined him. The patrician was at the front of them and he was swinging his sword over his

327

head. Under him was a pure-bred horse named *Mountain of Gold* " because of its beauty, and the yellowness of its colour,^{32*} The infidels reversed direction, may God curse them, against the Muslims.

^{77w} *storyteller*, may God have mercy upon him, says: The imam remained in the rear-guard, while in the van of the Muslims were Farasaham ⁴All, ⁴Ali Waradai, Besara the son of ³²Jusu, Garad Nasr bin Bali Garad, Dakal, and UraT Nur bin Dar ¹ Ali. The infidels and the Muslim vanguard met head on.

The first of the Muslims to charge was 'All Waradai, against the patrician of

Jawatir who was standing close to the patrician Ras Baniyat. He struck him such a blow that with it he severed his head from his body, and God thrust his soul into Hell, 'an evil place to settle in'.^{3j0}

The Muslims and the infidels fought for an hour that day and God put dismay into the hearts of the infidels, who turned tail and a great number of them was killed. The Muslims set off in pursuit of them as far as a country called Auwawalada, when darkness separated them. The patrician Ras Baniyat only got away after terrible physical exertion, for his horse was exhausted.

The Muslims praised God, rejoicing in their triumph and victory. They took a vast quantity of booty: horses, mules, breastplates, tents and equipment and weapons of war. Then the imam Ahmad sent a message to the wazir^L Addoli and to the army of the Muslims announcing the good news of their victory and triumph. The messenger bearing the good news set off for the wazir at the time of the dusk prayer. Travelling the entire night, he reached them just in time for the morning prayer. The Muslims were greatly heartened by the victory.

The imam camped in a town called Gafat Auwawalada, the village of the patrician Balaw. The Muslims entered the home of the patrician Balaw, and prayed there. They made the Call to Prayer there, and remembered the Most High God. Then the imam Ahmad sent to ask 'Addoli and his Muslim army to join him. They arrived after two days, and the imam Ahmad pitched his tent in the house of Balaw. The army made forays into the land of Auwawalada as far as the land of Dawaro.

They set out by night, and the infidels were taken completely unawares as the Muslims raided, killed and captured them. The Muslims remained in the home of Balaw for six days in the same condition. Then they relocated to a district called Zawahah where they stayed a few days, taking captives, killing and plundering.

[Ahmad resolves to conquer the whole country]

The storyteller., may God have mercy upon him, says: The imam Ahmad resolved to settle down in the land of Abyssinia and to conquer it. So he sent to the country of the Muslims urging them on to *a jihad* and to join him. The soldiers said to the imam, 'We will not live in the country of the Christians. We would rather return to the country of the Muslims.' Then the emirs said to the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, 'Our fathers and our ancestors never wanted to settle in the country of Abyssinia. Instead they would send raiding parties to the outermost borders of the country for booty, cattle and such like; and then they would return to the country of the Muslims. And we have no precedent

for making our home here.'

Thus they prevailed upon the imam Ahmad not to settle down. They sought to forestall him in his plan to settle down there; but God got the better of them. Thereupon the companions of the imam Ahmad, his friends, his advisers and those who shared his views, said, 'These soldiers are worn out: they will not agree to staying here. Let us return with them to our own country. And if we go on an expedition after this, and you want to settle down, we will settle down with you.' The imam acquiesced in this.

The Muslims took more booty than they had ever taken before; and many of the infidels embraced the religion of Islam and went down with the imam Ahmad towards the country of the Muslims. He sent off a raiding party

under the command of Zaharhui Muhammad, and sent it off in the direction of Abyssinia. It took booty [f'28] and then returned to the country of the Muslims,

It was when the imam had it in mind to settle down there that he sent a messenger to the land of the Muslims for support, as we have already said.

The emir Muhammad Zaharbu! had gone up with his Muslim army, to the land of Abyssinia, and [returning] joined forces with the imam on the road to the land of the Muslims. The imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, was coming down from Abyssinia; and they returned together. The imam and his army came to a place on the border of the land of the Muslims called Dir; it was a mighty river. Thereupon, the imam Ahmad pitched his camp by the river bank, and set aside the *fifth* of the booty, entrusting it to the care of a man who was frugal, obedient, devout and courageous - one of the most powerful and supportive people named Kablr Abun bin Ahmad al-Janasari.

[Ahmad rebukes the sultan and the emirs]

Then he set out from Dir and entered his city of Harar triumphant, victorious, wearing the victor's crown, exultant. He divided the /7/?/;part and the alms tax between the eight categories¹¹ whom God mentions in his famous book, and passed a sleepless night there.

Then the imam spoke to the emirs, and to the sultan whom he had appointed in place of his brother Abu Bakr, as we have mentioned above, and whose name was 'Umar Din, about the alms tax, because the sultan, the emirs and their other rulers who governed the land of Sa'd ad-Din took the alms tax from the Muslims and feathered their own nests, disposing of it for their own profit, instead of giving it to

the poor and the wretched and to those who really deserved it.

To these the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, said, 'Praised be God who has graced us with Islam, and made us strong, and enabled us to plunder booty from the wealth of the idol-worshippers. We

have collected booty unlike any taken by our fathers or our ancestors, or anyone ever before us. This is sufficient for us to live off, and to enable us to buy weapons of war for fighting. And as for the alms tax, let it be divided among the eight categories.'

Then the emirs and the sultan replied, motivated by fear of the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, 'We agree with what you have said to us about this matter, and we will not oppose you.' Thereupon the imam Ahmad sent one of his administrative officers to the [better off] people of the country, to the cattle owners and to the farmers, to collect the alms tax from them.

[The plot against Ahmad over the alms tax]

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: Thereupon the imam disbanded his soldiers, saying to them, 'Each of you return to your town, feed your horses well, keep your weapons in readiness until I come to you, and you set out [again] on a raid. For the moment I am going to a district called Zarba to pacify the country, to make peace between the citizens and the Somalis, and to mobilise an army: and then I will come back to you.' They agreed with what he had to say, broke up. and each person went back to his own town.

Those of the emirs who stayed behind in the country, stayed close by the sultan, while the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, went down to Zarba with thirty horsemen. The Sultan 'Umar Din, meanwhile, consulted with the emirs of the country concerning the matter of the alms-tax: among them were the wazir Nur, and Garad Ahmusa, Qatln Abu Bakr, Ura'I Abun bin 'Utman, Jasa 'Umar, Garad 'AH Husa brother of the sultan 'Umar Din, Garad Ahmad bin Lad 'Utman.

Amongst the theologians who condoned what they were doing, and corrupted them were the Qur'anic teacher Abu Bakr, the Islamic judge from Hubat. and the Qur'anic teacher Ahmad bin 'All, brother of the Qur'anic teacher Nur, Islamic judge of the Muslims in the land of Abyssinia.

All these colluded with the Sultan in the matter of the alms-tax. and were that day going around the place acting in a depraved way, saying amongst themselves,

‘This person wants to stop us handling the tax. This has been the custom of our fathers and our ancestors from the time of Sa’d ad-Din. He wishes to abolish it; but we will not do so. At this moment he has gone to Zarba, but he does not have his force with him. His horses, all of them, are here. Let us seize them and when he returns to us, we will fight him if he will not leave the country to us and go away, he and his wife Del Wanbara, the daughter of the emir Mahfuz, whither he chooses, either to the land of Arabia or to Mecca as long as he doesn’t come to us; for we do not want to have him in our country.’

The storyteller,; may God have mercy upon him, says: So they seized the horses that the imam Ahmad had left in the city in the care of his equerries and his soldiers. They attacked them by night, taking their horses, their swords, and their equipment.

[Abu Bakr sent to Ahmad with an ultimatum from the plotters]

Then the Qur’anic teacher Abu Bakr al-Arsuna said to the sultan, to the emirs and to those who were condoning their action: ‘What is this reprehensible thing that you have done?’ To which they replied, * We have done it’. And then they said to the Qur’anic teacher Abu Bakr, ‘You, go to where the imam is, and tell him to leave us the rest of the horses and the equipment and to go, he and his wife, to whatever country he chooses. But not to come back to us because we don’t want him. And if he does come back to us we will kill him, so that we may rid ourselves of him: “Surely God attains his purpose”’.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: So the Qur’anic teacher Abu Bakr reached the imam Ahmad who was in Zarba, sitting and giving commands to agricultural workers, ‘Do this and do that’. He knew nothing [of this matter] and had heard no news. Then the Qur’anic teacher Abu Bakr handed over their letter, and he read it and understood its contents. The imam then said to the Qur’anic teacher Abu Bakr. ‘Return to them and tell them that what they want is vile, but let them do what they desire. I shall leave the country to them/

[Support for Ahmed]

Thereupon the emir Husain bin Abu Bakr al-Gaturl arose and said to the imam Ahmad, ‘This will never happen. If they want war. then we will assemble our armies from the people of Sim and from the Somali tribes: the tribe of Girri, the tribe of Habr Maqdi, the tribe of Harla, for our armies have been dispersed. How can we do as they wish? We shall not surrender the country to them.’

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: When the emir Husain had said these words to the imam there arose from among those present the emir * AIT,

Ura'i Ahmad Din, Garad Zaharbui Muhammad, 'Abd an-Nasr, Ahmad Goita. Garad 'Abad, Ahmadus, Sabr ad-Din, Zaharbui 'Utman, Ura'i Mahwi, his companion Din, Farasaham Satut, Ura'I Nur bin Dar 'All, Tedros bin Adam, Warajar Abun,¹¹ the ruler of Zayla' - all of whom told the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, that they agreed with the opinion expressed by the emir Husain.

So the imam Ahmad, may the mercy of the Most High God be upon him, set out from Zarba. heading in their direction. They travelled for four days and came to a country called Ganasar close to the country of the Sultan. Then they travelled from Ganasar and came to a country called Wilqam which had an abundance of *qat*. and where all the Muslim [converts] who had gone down from Abyssinia and the land of Tegre had settled. The imam Ahmad encamped there.

[Ahmad and his enemies reconciled]

The first of the obedient emirs to join the imam was Garad Nasr bin Bali Garad whom the imam had appointed governor of a country called

Nagab ¹¹⁴ When the sultan heard [f'29] about the arrival of the imam Ahmad and his soldiers he sent to the sharifs, to the sheikhs and to the Qur'anic teachers and brazenly put it to them to make peace between him and the imam Ahmad. They did this, and the imam did not hold against them what they had wanted to do, but entered his city of Harar, happy, exultant and triumphant

The storyteller; may God have mercy upon him, says: Then Hirabu the chieftain of the Somali tribe of Marraihan, killed one of the equerries of the sultan 'Umar Din w'hen he was in Nagab. The imam heard about what Hirabu had done, and he said to the Sultan 'Umar Din, 'This Somali has acted treacherously towards you and killed your equerry,' So the imam, and the sultan with him, prepared himself for an expedition and set out and arrived at the country of the Somalis, as far as Kidad. Hirabu, meantime, had fled and was hiding in his own country.

The imam asked the sultan, 'What shall we do now? I am going to send for him to hand over the horses, and to pay the blood-money. If he does so, then all is well; if he does not, then I shall go against him, while you go back to your country.' So the imam sent to Hirabu to hand over the horses, and to pay the blood-money to some sharifs of the family of Ba 'Alawi, the Husainites, may God bless us through their means.

| [The sixth *jihad*]

The sharifs reached him in the region of the Hawiya³³⁶ where he was. He greeted them courteously, and sent back with them the horses and the

blood-money. They returned to Kidad and handed over the horses and the blood-money to the imam Ahmad and the sultan. The imam then said to the sultan, 'This Hirabu has done all that we asked of him.' The sultan and the chieftains replied, 'Let us return to our country/ To which the imam rejoined, "Rather, let us set off on a raid into the country of Bali/

The sultan said, 'the army is exhausted and none of us can go on such an expedition'. But you, if you want to, can march with all the chieftains and some soldiers to Bali; I, for my part, am going back/ The imam remained in Kidad with the soldiers while the sultan returned to his city of Harar.

Then the chiefs and the soldiers said to the imam, 'How^r can we mount an expedition? We have no provisions* and we would have to spend at least a month there. Our provisions are exhausted/ To which the imam replied, 'I will obtain supplies for you from the people of the country and from the leading sharifs to assist you with the *jihad* / And they were satisfied with this.

Thereupon the imam sought out the sharifs, 'Alawi bin 'All as-Satari, and Muhammad bin 'Umar as-Satari, and 'All bin 'Umar al-Husaini - may the Most High God have mercy upon them, and bless us with them. All of them presented themselves and the imam said to them, 'Help us with provisions for the *jihad* for the sake of God the Most High/

They responded most generously, and handed over to him the provisions; as did the people of the country, and as did Garad Nasr bin Bali Garad, for he was in his home country there; it had been a fiefdom⁷ of his since the time of the sultan Muhammad and the emir 'All, may the Most High God have mercy upon them. He gave them vast quantities of food.

So then the Muslims, provisioned from Kidad,³³⁸ set off in the direction of Bali until they came to one of the Muslim provinces in the land of Jalbi, called Dalfai: the market place of Jalbi. The people of the country made them welcome and the sharif Hasam bin 'Umar as-Satari, the sharif sheikh bin 'Abd Allah and Hasam bin az-Zafai met with them. This latter was a well-known mystic, God's servant, a holy man and famous. May the Most High God have mercy upon them all; may they shower down their blessings upon

us. They made the Muslims welcome, and these rested four days in Dalfai. Then

they organised themselves, and marched off towards Bali arriving at a place known as the Wabi, a mighty river that flowed through many countries. We mentioned it earlier on in the book.

Then the Muslims proceeded and suffered much hunger from the scarcity of provisions. Each person among them subsisted on a fist-full of food [per day]. They marched for six days and reached the road of Bali, coming to a place called Mlza where they camped. The imam split his forces into two sections, putting Ura‘T Abun in charge of one of them. He then set out taking the Sarjad road to Qaqmah. He said to Ura‘i AbOn, ‘We and you will rendezvous in a place called Adal Jallat.’ Then Ura‘I Abun set out taking the ‘Aqri road from Bali, while the imam marched along another, shorter, route.

[Ahmad and the Christian soldiers from Bali]

All of a sudden, there were some Christian foot-soldiers from Bali, coming down to the country of the Muslims to convert to Islam. The imam questioned them, ‘What country are you from?’ They said, ‘We are from the people of Bali. We were going to Jalbi to become Muslims and to embrace your religion.’

It had been customary from the first, among the people of Bali, that when they went down to Wabat, they would go into the land of Jalbi, and then on to the sultan.

The imam Ahmad asked them, ‘What have you heard about us?’ They replied, ‘Nothing. We have had no news at all about you. Nor have the people of the country heard about you.’ Then they interrogated them about the country, and which patricians were in it. They replied, ‘About the country, it is ruled by Azmac Degalhan, the brother-in-law of the king. He is with the king and has left, in his stead, in charge of the country, a patrician whose name is Sankur. He is in the country with the army.’ The imam asked, ‘Which city is

he in?’ They replied, ‘He is residing in Zallah: and Takla Haymanot^ is in Qaqmah.’

The storyteller; may God have mercy upon him, says: Now this Takla Haymanot had been a Muslim, an equerry of Garad Abun in the days when he was wazir. When Garad Abun was killed, he was in the service of the imam Ahmad.

He was a man of courage, who was entrusted with subjects to govern. His nature changed for the worst, and he wronged them. They complained about him to the imam, who dismissed him, So he left the country of the Muslims for his own

country. He reached the king of Abyssinia who put him in charge of this district of Qaqmah with the office of *garad*.

So afterwards the imam asked them, is he in the lower or the upper part of this district?' They replied, 'At first he was in the upper part, but now he has gone down to the lower part of Qaqmah.' The imam asked them, 'Would you be able to guide us to him?' They replied, 'Yes. very' willingly."

The imam asked them, if we leave now, when would we arrive where he is?" They replied, 'If we were to leave at this moment, we would arrive in the final third of the night, just as dawn is breaking/

When the imam heard what they had to say, he sent a messenger to Ura^kI Abun to say to him, 'Stay where you are; for I have another plan/ For he had sent him off to take booty, before he had heard what these infidels had to say.

[Abu Bakr sent to capture Takla Haymanot]

Then he summoned the men of courage amongst whom was Del Sagad, the knight from Sim, Zaharbui 'Ali, Farasaham Satut, Garad Ahmadus, Qatin Abu Bakr, and the Garad of Hubat, and besides them, thirty other knights. Then he fastened his standard to a spear and entrusted it to Qatin Abu Bakr to whom he also gave some knights.

He summoned the two men to guide them to the infidels, and tied their hands behind their backs to prevent their fleeing. The imam said to the two of them, 'See that this raiding party reaches the country of Takla Haymanot. If you do so, we will look kindly upon you [P'30] and will treat you in a way that will bring joy to you.' They said, 'Agreed'.

Then he said to the emir Qatin Abu Bakr, 'If you come back to us without having seized Takla Haymanot and put him in chains, we will no longer consider you one of the elite fighters, for there isn't any of you who has not experienced such and such at the hands of the infidels/ They all replied, 'Very well. Let God's will be done'.

After they had recited the *Fatiha* ¹⁴¹ the imam bade them farewell; it was the time of the afternoon prayer, and they set out on the march without further ado.

Then the imam sent a message to Ura'i Abun telling him to continue on his original course, and himself set out with the rest of the army and reached 'Aqrl by dawn. The people of 'Aqri were Muslims who were ruled by infidels, so the imam

bypassed it.

There was a mountain there which his Muslims climbed and descended into wide country that was part of the land of the Christians. The night was wintry, and they marched until morning broke. Then the Muslims mounted their horses so as to steal some cattle, to take prisoners and to plunder booty. They captured any infidels who crossed their path and finally reached the country of Adal Jallat in the land of Bali around noon-time, where they pitched their tents.

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him, says: Ura'i Abun and his companions, entered the land of Qaqmah from the heights, and plundered and devastated it.

[Takla Haymanot is oblivious of the danger]

Abu Bakr Qatin, meanwhile, marched by night, with the two guides with their hands tied leading them: he had appointed some men to stop them fleeing. They marched all that night, climbing down valleys and up mountains.

When the moment came for dawn to break, the two guides stopped. He said to them, 'What are you looking at?' They answered. "We can see his camp, and we can see his fires/

The emir Abu Bakr and his companions halted, and discussed what they should do. Some of them said, 'Let us attack them immediately, and catch them unawares.' But the emir Abu Bakr replied, "As for me, I promised the imam to bring the patrician Takla Haymanot back as a prisoner. But if we pounce on him at this time, I am afraid that he will slip through our fingers, so rather let us be patient until morning and then we will attack him.' To which they replied, 'All right; you are our emir; do what seems best to you'. So they dismounted from their mules and waited. The emir Abu Bakr Qatin said, 'Recite the sura *Yasin* ⁴¹ and call upon the Most High God in prayer.'

Meanwhile, Takla Haymanot knew nothing of them. He had been drinking wine throughout the evening, and as night ended he went out of his dwelling, because he had spent most of it in conversation as a result of the wine. He saw lights on the road where the imam was, for they had set fire to houses along their route. When he noticed this, Takla Haymanot asked his soldiers who were with him, 'What do you think about this fire that I can see?' They answered, 'That is nothing but the fire of people robbing hives; or perhaps some of the robbers have set fire to houses.*

Takla Haymanot retorted, 'As for me. I say that all the signs point to its being the fire of a raiding party; in any case, harness your horses until morning comes. And if it turns out to be a raiding party, then we will go against it, and fight.' Even though he had no information concerning the emir Abu Bakr and the fact that he was close by him, they harnessed their horses and stationed themselves in front of his house, and then returned to their wine- bibbing until morning broke.

The emir Abu Bakr then said to his two guides, 'One of you two will be set free, to accompany three of our foot-soldiers to see what Takla Haymanot is doing, whether he is lying down asleep, or sitting down with company; and then to return to us w'ith the news. Your companion will remain with us, bound, and if you betray us we will kill him. And may God give us the victory/

The guide set out w'ith the three foot-soldiers, and by stealth arrived at the dwelling of Takla Haymanot. They saw the harnessed horses in the middle of the courtyard of the house. The guide, along w ith his companions, returned to the emir Abu Bakr and informed him of this. The Muslims then recited the *Fatiha* and prayed for victory.

When day had dawned the emir Abu Bakr mounted his horse which was named *Mubarak*,⁴² put on his armour, and took his spear; and the thirty knights who were famous for their courage mounted their horses. They drew up their horses close to one another, and rode shoulder to shoulder as if they were a single, well-compacted building. As they drew near they pointed their spears heavenwards, and slackened their horses' reins, as the crier called out for the attack.

[The capture of Takla Haymanot and his wife]

Takla Haymanot emerged and mounted his horse; and his soldiers mounted theirs. They were stationed within the walled compound around the house. The Muslims drew^ closer to them and saw that they were within the walled compound around the house. This walled enclosure had just one gate which Takla Haymanot was occupying; and the wall held back the troops who were within.

Thereupon the emir Abu Bakr charged Takla Haymanot who stood his ground at the gate, so that the emir Abu Bakr could find no way for his horse to enter the walled enclosure. Takla Haymanot had a sword in his hand, while the emir Abu Bakr had a spear in his. The tvvo jabbed and hacked but none was able to get the better of the other. The Christian forces were at the entrance to the gate, while the Muslim forces stood behind the emir Abu Bakr.

One of the Muslims, by name Del Sagad, the knight from Sim, attacked. He had

gone around behind the wall without seeing anything, galloping his horse around. Then he loosed the reins and then made his horse leap the wall. His horse and he jumped the wall at its middle point as he screamed out 'I am a child of Sim'. When his companions saw him, they followed in his tracks, like raging lions. Army intermingled with army and they battled in the centre of the walled compound, while Takla Haymanot and the emir Abu Bakr still fought it out as before, without one of them managing to prevail over the other.

While the Muslims and the infidels battled it out behind the two of them, the forces of Takla Haymanot fled. The latter, when he saw his companions fleeing turned the head of his charger and yelled out to them, 'Where are you fleeing to?' As soon as the emir saw that Takla Haymanot had abandoned the gate, he rode through it, and then Takla Haymanot turned round in the direction of the emir Abu Bakr and the two of them duelled on.

One of the idolaters charged at the emir Abu Bakr, to assist Takla Haymanot, whereupon one of the Muslims named Zaharbui 'All charged the idolater who was attacking the emir Abu Bakr, and cut his javelin in two before he could stab the imam Abu Bakr; and struck him a further blow on his head, so that he tumbled off his horse and Zaharbui 'All took him captive.

The emir Abu Bakr, meanwhile, lunged at Takla Haymanot with a strong heart and a resolute spirit, like a lion after its prey, and plucked him out of his horse's saddle, and took him captive, leading him, cowering, by a halter. Immediately his companions saw that their lord had been captured, they turned tail and a great number of them was killed. As the horses could not find a way out of the walled compound, they captured all of them.

The wife of Takla Haymanot was also captured inside her house. They sent a messenger bearing the good news to the imam Ahmad. He found him in Adal Jallat and gave him the glad tidings of the victory and the triumph, and of the capture of Takla Haymanot and his wife. Then [f'31] the emir Abu Bakr went back to the imam, and handed Takla Haymanot over to him.

Upon returning [to Harar], the imam made a present of him to the governor of 'Aden, and took his wife as his concubine. She bore him a son, took part in the conquest of Abyssinia, and he called her Hajirah.

Then the imam and the Muslims spent the night [at Adal Jallat] and the next day the imam appointed Kuscm Garad Nur a commander, and gave him a division of the army and said to him, 'You bring up our rear, carrying the booty and the baggage,' while the imam and his force marched on ahead until he reached

Wanabat which is a great river like the Wabi.

He sent out the soldiers to the right and to the left in search of spoils. They took a vast booty, and pitched their tents by the river bank. The Muslims then fell back to their camp at sunset and they passed the night by the river. Al-Kusem spent the night behind them, with the booty and the baggage, and arrived the next morning.

The emir then attached a standard to a spear and entrusted it to Zaharbui Muhammad his cousin on his father's side, giving him one-hundred knights and a great number of foot-soldiers, ordering him to march to the land of Malu in the centre of the country of Bali. Thereupon, the emir Zaharbui set out for the land of Malu, plundered its wealth, ravaged and burnt it, and then reduced it to ashes. One of the Muslim knights called 'All Garrah from Zarba spied from a distance some infidels who were giving their horses free rein; so he gave his own horse, which happened to be a champion racehorse, its head. It bolted from under him like a violent gale so that he fell off. and a branch punctured his chest and he was killed. He died, may the Most High God have mercy upon him; for he left it to God to recompense him.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says, Zaharbui Muhammad passed the night in the land of Malu. The next day he returned, with immense booty of slaves, horses and pack animals. The imam was still in Adal Jallat.

[Sankur counter-attacks and is victorious]

Not far from him, in a place called Zallah, was the patrician of Bali whom the brother-in-law of the king, Azmai Degalhan, had set up to replace him. He was three days' journey from the imam when he heard of him and what he had done to Takla Haymanot and the havoc that he had wreaked in Bali. The patrician's name was Sankur. He mobilised his cavalry and his soldiers, and all of the people of Bali assembled, and they set out in the direction of the imam, armed and well prepared to wage war against him.

When they drew near to his position, they sent out sixty knights as scouts to bring back information about the Muslims to him. They approached close to the Muslim camp and saw how their hobbled horses were grazing serenely, so they gave their own horses free rein and took the road to the imam's camp killing many of the Muslims. These latter cried out amongst themselves, rounding up their horses, and saddling them. Then the imam Ahmad mounted his horse as did Farasaham 'All and Absama Nur. Altogether a third of them mounted when he did. They slackened their reins, and held their spears high and the imam and his companions set out in pursuit of them, without, however, meeting up with them.

By then all of the Muslims had mounted, and set off following the imam who stopped for them until they all caught up with him. Then they buried the Muslims whom the infidels had killed, inhuming those upon whom God had put seal of martyrdom. Then they turned back and returned to their camp, spending the night in it.

The sharifs and the Arabs who lived in Bali came to visit the imam who welcomed them, and clad them in garments of honour before leaving, when morning came, for 'Aqrl.

Abu Bakr, whom he sent in the direction of the Wabi where there were many head of cattle belonging to the infidels, set out and stole all of them, passing the night by the Wabi.

The imam was in Haibut, and set out the next morning, leaving Ura'i Ahmad Din in the Muslim vanguard with the booty and the baggage; he, meanwhile, was with the rearguard who were ready to do battle. They set out with Ura'i Ahmad Din but the imam fell back a little from Ura'i and then marched behind him, backing him up.

[Sankur and the Abyssinians attack again]

The companions of the patrician Sankur reached him and gave him news of what had happened. He thereupon split his forces into three sections, and set out in pursuit of the Muslims. Having drawn near to them he ordered one section to attack the vanguard of the Muslim army, another to attack the centre, and the third to attack the rearguard.

The first section set off against Ura'i Ahmad Din who when he saw them, attacked them; and they responded. A ferocious battle ensued, and the more numerous infidels forced the Muslims into the middle of the cattle.

Ura'i Ahmad Din stood his ground with the standard, and fought alone. The infidels pierced his body with five javelins, and his horse with two others. But he fought on, with the javelins penetrating his flesh, escaped and eventually recovered.

When the imam saw them engaged in battle, he screamed out to his army that was with him in the rearguard, to slacken their reins and raise their spears - amongst them was Garad Ahmusa, the emir 'All Ankarasah, Besara and others like them from among the knights - in order to reach Ura'i Ahmad Din.

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him, says: When the infidels saw that the Muslims were galloping in their direction, they fled. The imam, along with the rest of the army, followed them and reached them but not one of the infidels or of the Muslims was killed.

Then, when the infidels saw that the imam had taken the lead, two of the sections of Sankur's force attacked the rearguard, whereupon the imam and his force turned back to the rearguard, but when the infidels saw them on their way back, they fled.

Only two of the knights pursued the infidels, and none of the foot- soldiers accompanied them. Ura'i Ahmad Din and Garad Ahmusa took off after them for a short distance, but then returned to the imam, as their horses were exhausted.

There were some infidels on the mountain who, when they saw the two Muslims rejoining the imam, descended the mountain and pursued them, riding their horses. When they drew near they threw javelins at the Muslims, and some of them even reached where the imam was. The latter said to Ura'i Ahmad Din and to Garad Ahmusa, 'What is this I see? Didn't the two of you pursue the infidels?' They answered 'Yes.' Then he said, 'How by God have they now managed to chase you back to here? Dismount, and pitch our tents here; we will not leave.' So they pitched their tents.

When the infidels saw the tents pitched they had a discussion amongst themselves, with those who were for holding back saying to those who were returning from the fray, 'Why did you pursue the Muslims? Now they have pitched their tents and this is all your doing!' Then they fled and returned to their places.

The emir Abu Bakr meanwhile had plundered the cattle from the Wabi and came back the same day. They spent the night there and deliberated amongst themselves on the subject [f'32] of the infidels. The imam said to his companions regarding the people of Bali, 'We will never be safe from them. They are Satans. Who amongst those of you who are more senior in years know's their situation, and their manner of thinking?' They replied that Garad Kamal, the brother-in-law of the imam, who was married to his sister Munisah the daughter of the martyr Zaharbui Garad 'Utman, was knowledgeable in this matter.

[Garad Kamal explains the tactics of the people of Bali]

He said to the imam, 'I know some things about the people of Bali, and about their situation and their way of thinking.' The imam said, 'Tell us what you know.'

He said, 'The people of Bali never fight in battle lines, and only fight by subterfuge. If you and your soldiers march at the front of your force, they will attack the stragglers at the rear of the army, and if you move against them, they will run away, but not far away. If you march in the rearguard, they will attack the vanguard of the army, and if you move against them they will run away, but not very far/⁴' That is their ruse, and their way of acting. So you should understand how^r they behave/The imam Ahmad said,⁴ 'We will outwit them with a trick of our own.'

When it was morning, the imam Ahmad spoke to the emir Abu Bakr, to the emir Mujahid, to Absama Nur and to Jamal ad-Din bin Garad Wadaj, and entrusted to them sixty knights and said to them, 'March in the van of the army, and only pay attention to whoever attacks you: fight them as you march. Do not come to our aid, and we will not go to your aid.' Then he said to the rest of the army, 'You be with me in the rearguard'.

That same morning, the emir and his companions set out in the vanguard of the army. While the booty, the slaves, the pack animals and the baggage brought up the rear. The imam marched behind. The imam had no news of the infidels. They did not even know where they had spent the night, when suddenly they appeared like locusts, their forces split into four divisions.

Two of the patricians advanced with their two forces to where the emir Abu Bakr was, and fought for an hour. The Muslims treated them as they deserved, with sword blows and spear thrusts, with the emir and his companions counter-attacking with firm hearts. The infidels fled. Their patrician Salmun was killed by Ahmad Din, the brother of the emir Mujahid. Another patrician was killed by the emir Abu Bakr. Many of the infidels were killed. The others fled.

[Wanag Jan tricks the leaders of Bali]

The storyteller may God have mercy upon him, says: Regarding the imam and his force - they had no idea what happened to the emir Abu Bakr. Whilst they were marching, suddenly three infidel divisions went against them, with their soldiers and their infantry ready for battle and lined up. Their patrician's name was Simu the son of Wanag Jan, who was the brother of Wasan Sagad.⁴⁴

Wanag Jan had once gone down to the sultan Muhammad and had become a Muslim by a sincere conversion. The sultan had looked kindly upon him, and put him in charge of Ankarasah. He put him in command of a Muslim force to go into the land of Bali, which he plundered and ravaged. A Christian army mobilised against him, and they fought. The infidels got the better of the Muslims, and the

latter fled, and a great number of them was killed.

Wanag Jan was captured and they took him to the king of Abyssinia, Na'od, the father of king Wanag Sagad. They took him into the king's presence, in chains. His brother Wasan Sagad pleaded for him and the king released him into his custody. His esteem for him grew, and he became like a wazir to him. He had become a Christian reluctantly, for his heart was firmly with Islam. The king, as well, appointed him in charge of the land of Bali, where he settled down, and his power increased. He bought horses, and the number of his cavalry^{4>} increased: and the soldiers did his bidding.

One day he said to the patricians of Bali, 'Assemble today so that I can pass on to you some news that has come from the king'. So all the patricians from the land of Bali came together, sixty of them in all, and each patrician commanded a vast number of cavalry. They assembled in his presence mounted on horseback. So he said to them, 'Come into the house, and we will have a drink of wine'.³⁴⁶ So they went into the house and sat down and he

gave them some well-matured intoxicating wine, and they drank it.

When the patricians had become drunk, he sought advice concerning them from a friend of his called Del Ba-Iyasus who was a Christian then, but afterwards converted to Islam. He was to die a martyr in Bali with Ura'i Sabr ad-Din the cousin, on his father's side, of the sultan Muhammad.

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him, says: Wanag Jan said to his afore-mentioned friend, 'What shall we do with them, now that thanks be to God they have fallen into our hands?' Del Ba-Iyasus replied, 'Let us bind them, tying their hands behind their backs, and let us slit their throats like slaughtered sheep.' Since they were drunk, Wanag Jan ordered his equerries, saying to them, 'Go into the house where they are, tie them up, bind their hands behind their backs and slit the throats of all of them like slaughtered sheep, in the entrance of the house.'

They did this, and took their horses and their equipment and sent a messenger bearing the good news to the sultan Muhammad who was at that time in Dakkar in the land of Sa'd ad-Din. He was to say to him, 'I am your servant. I have done such and such to the infidels: I have dealt treacherously with them, and have wreaked vengeance upon them.' The messenger set out to say to the sultan, 'Come and join forces with me\

[Wanag Jan sends his son to the sultan]

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: Then Wanag Jan said to the people of Bali. 'Convert to Islam and eat the meat slaughtered by the Muslims; otherwise I will do to you what I did to your leaders,' So all of

them converted to Islam, great and small alike. The sultan Muhammad was slow in coming to him so he sent a second messenger to him. The sultan decided on going, but his emirs and the people of his country said, 'No one can travel at this time; it is autumn.' So when the sultan still delayed in coming to him, he sent to him a third messenger, his son, Simu the aforementioned, who was to press him and to say, 'Why do you not conic and join forces with me? The infidels have come to me. God obliges you, as docs Muhammad bin 'Abd Allah, may God bless him and grant him salvation, to come and join up with me.'

When Simu reached the sultan, the sultan Muhammad rose and wept and said, 'I cannot delay one hour longer. So he ignored the counsel of the emirs and set out that day for Bali.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: 'As for what happened to Wanag Jan: after he had sent his son off, a Christian army came against him. They were like ants, they were so numerous; sent from the king of Abyssinia. The patrician leading them was Gabra Endrcyas, and they and Wanag Jan fought for two or three days.

When the number of Christians fighting against him increased, and he realised that he could not prevail against them, he took his harem, and his forces, and they marched towards the country of the Muslims. They reached the Wabi where he stopped, only to have Death join him; and he died by the Wabi where his well-known tomb is famous and a source of blessings. May the Most High God have mercy upon him. His companions buried him. and they stayed on two days after his burial.

Then the sultan [f°33] Muhammad reached them and wept over him. Then he gathered together his cavalry and his [whole] army and set out for Bali. When the patrician Gabra Endrcyas heard that the sultan and his army were heading in his direction, he tied to the king, and the sultan stayed in the land of Bali for two months, and then went back down to his own country. He appointed emirs under his authority for the country, amongst whom were Garad 'All, the father of Garad Mujahid, Ura'i Sabr ad-Din, Goita Adarah, Wasu 'Utman, and others like them. Del Ba-Iyasus stayed with them. They lingered on there for two months after the sultan returned home.

The king of Abyssinia decided to go himself against the Muslims. But Wasan

Sagad said to him, 'You should not go. The king of the Muslims has gone back down to his own country: I will go against them'. So after that Wasan Sagad left with a mighty army, and a fierce battle ensued. None of the Muslims fled, and they all were killed on the backs of their horses, for God had sealed them with seal of martyrdom. The sharif Nur bin Ahmad was captured when the infidels stabbed him in the stomach, but he was cured after Wasan Sagad stitched up his stomach.³⁴

[Simu, son of Wanag Jan]

So, let us return to the story of Simu the son of Wanag Jan. He returned to his country with the sultan who dealt with him graciously, bestowed favours upon him, and gave him the title of *Garad* like his father, until he made a foray into Abyssinia with the sultan Muhammad, and the infidels captured him on the day of Del Mcda^{u*} and made a Christian of him, and a patrician in place of his father. This was the reason that he came with a mighty force to do battle with the imam.

When the imam saw them he said to his companions, 'Don't mount your horses until they get close to you'. So they went on their way, mounted on their mules, and only when the infidels drew close did they leap on their mounts like ferocious lions. When the infidels came close to them they hurled their javelins at the Muslims. The imam and his force counter-attacked and then some of the infidels headed in the direction of the booty and the livestock.

At this the companions of the imam screamed out, saying, 'The infidels have tricked us; they are after the livestock,' whereupon the imam split his forces into two divisions: one he entrusted to Garad Ahmusa, composed of the Somali spearmen of the Marraihan, the Gorgorah and the

Hawiya; around one-thousand of them from among the most famous spearmen. And from the soldiers bearing shields, the same number. And about forty knights, amongst whose leaders were al-Kusem Nor, Garad Nasr, Del Sagad the knight of Sim, Garad Ahmadus, son of the emir Mahfuz, Farasaham Satut, and about forty other knights like them.

The imam Ahmad set out with the other division to where the cattle were. Garad Ahmusa stood his ground in the rearguard, along with his companions, and a terrible battle followed.

Del Sagad, the knight of Sim, was the first of the Muslims to charge - against the patrician Asrat. They stabbed with their spears, and fought each other until Del Sagad struck the patrician Asrat with his spear, knocked him from his saddle, and threw him prostrate on the ground.^{4"1} At which, one of the Muslims named Nasr

bin Bali Garad smote him with his sword, severing his head from his body, and God thrust his soul into Hell “fire. Then Ahmusa charged, and the Muslims along with him. The infidels hung on for a time, but eventually fled, and were killed in great numbers.

The storyteller, may God the Most High have mercy on him, says: Regarding the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, when he reached the centre where the cattle were, the lines of the idol- worshippers and their cavalry moved forward. Then the imam ranged his troops in battle lines, organized his soldiers, and the two armies marched against each other and the two battle lines drew close to each other.

One of the Muslims named sheikh Adam bin Abu Bakr, the *qadi* TM of Dawaro after the conquest, stood up and harangued and goaded the Muslims to the *jihad* saying, ‘Help one another, and God will give you the victory, and support your steps. Know- that the garden of Paradise lies under the shadow of the swords.’

The first of the Muslims to charge was Farasaham Husain bin‘Abd Allah who hurled himself into the midst of the infidels, and killed one of the knights by felling him from his horse to the ground, dead. Then from behind him charged the emir Zaharbui, and with him charged all of the Muslims who were calling out ‘God is the Greatest’. They fought for an hour and stood the test. It was not very long before God granted the Muslims the backs of the idol-worshippers. and those who were fleeing were forced to retrace their steps, with the Muslims killing a great number of them.

That day the Muslims were victorious, all of them: those in the rearguard, those in the vanguard, and those in the centre.

Then they marched on. and regrouped in a place called Del Bad, where each of them warmly greeted the other and praised God. Each regaled his companion with what had happened to him. They laid out the booty, and passed the night there. When morning came they marched until they came to a place called Jaddah. Thence they marched towards their own country arriving at the Wabi after six days. Afterwards they marched into their own country by the Nagab road. The imam reached his city of Harar covered in glory, and triumphant. He divided the *fifth* among his companions, and then he and his soldiers stayed in Harar for around two months.

[The seventh *jihad*]

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: After the imam had

returned from the expedition to Bali and had rested there two months, his eagerness for an expedition to Abyssinia was rekindled, and he swore an oath that either he would not return from the country of the Christians, or he would die a martyr. It was to be a blessed expedition.

The storyteller, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: When the desire for a raiding party and a *jihad* had been rekindled in the imam Ahmad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, he went down, first of all, to a country called Zarba, in the region of Harla. Then he sent to Zayla' to have weapons of war, swords and the like, procured for him. He also ordered them to buy for him some cannon because he wanted to take them with him on the raid into Abyssinia. They bought him what he desired and brought back to him seven cannon.

Around seventy men came up from Mahra ^ attracted by the idea of a *jihad*. Their leaders were SaTd bin Sa"ban al-Mahrl, and Ahmad bin Suleiman al-Mahri, and their overall chief was my lord the esteemed and noble sharif Muhammad bin Ahmad,³ blessed by God ⁴ who died at Bab Sari in the land of Dawaro. He went on the raiding party with the imam and fought the *jihad*. After the conquest of Abyssinia the imam handed over to him Bab Sari, with the right to collect the land tax,

[The Somali tribes gather for the *jihad*]

It was after this³³³ that the Mahra party and the sharif Muhammad reached the imam who feted their coming on account of *the jihad* ; and then he sent to all the districts of the Somalis and to the tribes of Harla. Then all the tribes rose up.

The first tribe [f 34] to come up was the Habr Maqdi with their lord Garad Dawit, fifty knights and five-hundred foot-soldiers. After them the Marraihan came up, with their lord Ahmad bin Hirabu, with eighty knights and seven-hundred foot-soldiers. After them came up the Gorgorah with Garad ^kAbd their chieftain, and thirty knights and one-thousand foot-soldiers.

Then the tribe of Girri came up, with their chieftain Garad Mattan along with eighty knights and one-thousand foot-soldiers. In the same way the tribe of Zarba came up from Harla with their lord the sultan Muhammad with twenty knights and three-hundred foot-soldiers. The tribes assembled - all of them volunteers and on good terms with one another. The number of the horses in readiness was around five-hundred, and there were twelve-thousand

foot-soldiers, not to mention those who carried the provisions and other things

besides.

The imam pitched his tent on the outskirts of Harar. The people of Jur'ila, also known as Mamalih, assisted him with forty mules which they had plundered from the infidels living on the borders of their country. The imam gave these to the delegation from Mahra, and, in addition, gave them thirty mules which the Muslims had plundered.

The imam then set out on the road for Abyssinia, and took with him his concubine called Hajirah, whom he had captured in Bali, and who had been the wife of Takla Haymanot. The emir Zaharbui Muhammad also took his concubine, as did the emir Abu Bakr, governor of Hubat. Then the imam and his victorious army set out and arrived at the village of Zifah in the country of the Muslims. Its people welcomed the imam and his soldiers, and treated them hospitably and graciously, for such was their practice.

Then they set out from Zifah a day's journey, and encamped at Sih which was a mighty river. Leaving Sih they encamped at Ra'buda where they were joined by the sharif Muhammad Handul with three cannon to make lip the seven, and twenty foot-soldiers, with a knight as their leader. Four of the cannon preceded him, and the three others brought up the rear as they set out.

They stopped at Dir^{3 7} which was a great river in the country of the Muslims, and the soldiers and the tribes assembled and slaughtered what cattle they had. They then satisfied their hunger and recited the Qur'an and besought the Most High God. For this is what the *mujahidun* were accustomed to do at Dir.

Next, they set out and encamped at Baqal-zar which is between the country of the Muslims and that of the infidels.

[Ahmad commissions his commanders]

At this point the imam unfurled the standards. He attached a black standard to a javelin and gave it to the emir who after the conquest was known as the emir^k All. The green standard he entrusted to Zaharbui Muhammad" who was emir after the conquest, and previously had been *garad* in the country of Nagab. The white standard he entrusted to Ijra'T Abun. He entrusted another standard to Nur bin Ibrahim, wazir after the conquest; known in his own country as Kusem Garad. He entrusted other standards to Garad Ahmusa; to Garad Mattan Girri; and to 'Addoli, who was wazir⁹ after the conquest but before then had been the hegano³⁶⁰ of Sim. The imam's own standard was yellow.

Then he split his force into three divisions. The first consisted of the people of Sim, the tribe of Marraihan and Bar Tarri which are the Habr Maqdi, and the people of Jawatir: they were under the command of the wazir 'Addoli.

The second division comprised the people of Hargaya, and the people of Sawa, the companions of Kuscm whom he put under the command of Kusem NOR; the people of Hubat who were under Abu Bakr Qatin; and the people of Gedaya who were with their lord Ura'i Sihab ad-Din Gedaya Girri.

The last division was made up of men of strength and valour who were nicknamed 'The Sea,'^{3M} because of the number of their swords. Their commander was the imam Ahmad himself.

[]

'Addoli advises Ahmad to attack Dawaro first They then set off from Baqal-zar and camped, after two days, by the 'Awas, The imam addressed his soldiers, 'Muslim units, as you can see we have at last reached the country of the Abyssinian dog Wanag Sagad. Close by us is the road to Dawaro. And here is another road that will take us to the village of

the Christian dog Wanag Sagad.^{16'} So, which road shall we take? Let us have your opinion/

The emir Zaharbui Muhammad, and Garad Ahmusa rose and the two of them said, 'The only road that we should take is the one that leads to the Christian dog in Badeqe. So let us begin by destroying it, and then the other cities will fall into our hands.' And they sat down.

After them, the wazir 'Addoli stood up and said, 'O imam of the Muslims, in this matter the advice you have received is ill-considered.' So they '⁶¹ said, 'All right, tell us what your opinion is' He said, 'If we march towards Badeqe, then we have to leave the land of Dawaro at our back, and its people will descend on the land of the Muslims and destroy it; especially when there is hardly any distance between us and the army of that city. No, let us begin with Dawaro.'

When 'Addoli had finished speaking, the Muslims and the tribes rose and said to the imam. 'The best advice is that of the wazir 'Addoli.' Thereupon the imam sent off the wazir 'Addoli and his force *via* the heights of the 'Awas, against the infidels of Duba'ah, to forage for supplies. And while the wazir 'Addoli set out, the imam encamped near the 'Awas. 'Addoli arrived at the country of Duba*ah,'^J

seized some cattle and returned with them to the imam who divided them amongst the soldiers. Then the imam marched with his army towards Dawaro, reaching Argubba^{ft\}

[Wanag Sagad orders a trench to be dug in Del Meda]

Now, regarding events at Dawaro, the patrician there was called Bahr Sagad, the son of Wasan Sagad. Wasan Sagad had also been in Dawaro but before the arrival of the imam he went up to Damot, leaving his son Bahr Sagad there. When the king of Abyssinia had heard about the [raids of the] Muslims he ordered a trench to be dug at Del Meda, above Dawaro which was a region that was especially vulnerable, for the sultan Muhammad had previously raided it. and an incalculable number of Muslims was killed when fortune turned in favour of the infidels. This was the reason for the king's ordering the patrician Bahr Sagad to dig the trench there.

He did as the king ordered him. When they finished digging the trench Bahr Sagad assembled his forces and they patrolled the trench. After this, Bahr Sagad died, may the Most High God not have mercy upon him. Upon his death, his successor was a patrician named 'Adalih from the people of Bali. This 'Adalih assembled a vast concourse of the people of Dawaro and Bali and they patrolled the trench for some days.

[Ahmad by-passes the trench dug by Bahr Sagad]

When the imam learnt that the infidels had assembled above the trench, he asked some intldf prisoners whom he was holding: 'Arc you aware of any route other than the one that passes by the trench?' They replied, 'Yes, we are, and we will point it out to you. And when they [f35] realise that you have taken another route than the one by the trench, they will abandon their positions.'

So then the imam arranged his forces and set off. The commander of the vanguard^{3*6} was the sultan bin 'All Yahal who was accompanied by onc- hundred-and-fifty knights renowned for their courage, ahead of whom went the guides showing them the way. The imam, along with his companions who never left his side, held the centre of the army, while the wazir Nur was with the rearguard. Then they set out along a narrow track, finally emerging into a spacious area, with the trench behind them. They reached Del Mcda at the time of the afternoon prayer, and pitched camp there.

As soon as the infidels learned that the Muslims had by-passed the trench, they abandoned it and went off to Bab Sariin the land of Dawaro, where they assembled. The Muslims, meanwhile, set out from Del Meda on the road [to a

place] called Sadqah, where there were neither trees nor stones, and they spent the night there. Horsemen travelled around the countryside, to right and left, in search of provisions which they took by force and carried back to the Muslims. After this the imam sent spies out into the countryside to bring him news of the infidels. They returned reporting to the imam and to the Muslims that the infidels had gathered at Bab Sari with their cavalry and their troops. The imam asked them, 'What do you think: if we go against them, will they fight us, or not?' They replied, 'As far as fighting goes, they won't fight you. If you get close to them, they will flee to another place. However, if you send [only] a detachment against them, they will fight them. But if you proceed against them with your army in a straightforward manner, they will run away.' At this the imam assembled all his followers, and arranged his forces. Each emir stood with his standard, and his troops.

Then the imam addressed them: 'O Muslim soldiers, when you were at the 'Awasa you recommended proceeding to the land of Dawaro. This we have done, but we have met no one who will fight us. They are too weak to engage us in battle. At the outset we have killed them, and ravaged their country, enslaving their women and children, and they have been powerless, thanks to the blessing of Islam and of Muhammad - may God bless him and grant him salvation. Now, what do you say to our making a beeline for the king of Abyssinia, Wanag Sagad?'

They replied: 'Merely to hear is to obey God, his messenger and you.

O imam of the Muslims. All that we desire is the *jihad*, our sacred trust. Let us head for the king of Abyssinia, no matter where he may be.' The imam thanked them and said: 'May God bless you,' and they spent the night there.

When morning came they set out in his direction, after arranging the army in ranks, with the cannon in the vanguard, in the centre and in the rearguard. The imam Ahmad was in the centre of the army, the wazir 'Addoll

T*!

368

in the van. and the wazir Nur in the rearguard. Then they entered the land of Watmat. Upon their arrival there they heard that the Christians were assembled in Antokya. The Christians in Antokya heard that the imam was heading against them, so they assembled at the church to deny the Muslims access to it: to stop their burning it. They had with them an army that could not be counted. All of the people of Dawaro came together and they sent news to the king saying: 'the Muslims are marching against your church because they want to burn it to the ground.'

In command of all the patricians and the army was the patrician 'Adalih, the governor of Bali whom the king of Abyssinia had put in command after the death of the son of Wasan Sagad, until Wasan Sagad could come from Damot. News reached him [the king] of the Muslims' arrival in the land of Dawaro from the land of Del Meda, and of their going up to Damot intending to burn the church of Antokya. So he sent a patrician called Badlai Behtwaddad: this latter word, in their language, corresponds to 'wazir' in Arabic. Ranking above the patrician and the army was the brother-in-law of the king of Abyssinia,⁶¹ married to his sister named Walata Qalamsis. She had died, while married to him.⁷⁰ and then he remarried, to the king's second sister by his mother, whose name was Amata Watm.

So the patrician Azmac Degalhan and the patrician Behtwaddad set off for Antokya to prevent the Muslims from entering it. But God did not allow this. Upon reaching Antokya, they assembled there together with 'Adalih and the aforementioned army. The messenger read to them the king's brief appointing Degalhan in command of them and they responded: 'To hear the king is to obey him'. Then they remained there.

The storyteller.; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: The Muslims, for their part, marched from ' ¹ the land of Watmat, heading for the land of Ayfars.⁷² Separating Watmat and Ayfars was a mighty river called 'Arah. There were two routes for crossing the river, a lower one well known to all the people, and an upper one known to but a few.

When the Muslims sought to cross over to the land of Ayfars, they took the lower route but when they reached it. they encountered a detachment of the infidels who were holding it. It was the time of the afternoon prayer. The Muslims remained where they were, and the infidels likewise held their positions. One of the Muslims. Haidar by name, said to the imam: 'I will guide you by an upper route different from this one.'

The imam selected fifteen of the knights renowned for their courage, among them Garad Ahmusa bin Dar 'All, Absama Nur, Zaharbui Muhammad, the emir Mujahid, Balaw 'Abduh, 'Alus, Arsa^k Abu Bakr from the people of Sim, the wazir 'Addoll, and others of their ilk. So they set out, with the guide leading them until they reached the upper route. The imam asked the guide, 'What is this?' He answered, 'This is what I described to you. No one knows about it, and there are no Christians here to protect it.' At this the imam said to him, 'May God bless you'. Then he said, 'Now, let us cross over the river and pass the night on the other side.'

But the wazir 'Addoll said, 'Let us pass the night on this side of the river, and when morning comes we and our forces will cross over.' Then the imam told them, 'Your advice is not sound: for if we spend the night on this side of the river, the Christians will learn of it and will block the route against us. And we will be neither here nor there.'

Thereupon they crossed the river and remained on the heights above it. And they sent a message by night to the rest of the army: 'Come and join us'. So the army arrived, and crossed over the river by night. With the rearguard of the army were ' Abd an-Nasr, and Zaharbui 'Utman, who had the cannon with them. They reached the river at the time of the end of the evening prayer [1^36] and carried the cannon across on their shoulders, crossing the river with them. All those who crossed the river mounted their horses and remained with the imam, maintaining their battle lines and equipped for the fray, until the whole army had been accounted for. Then they camped above the river.

The storyteller; may God have mercy upon him, says: The idol- worshippers, when they heard that the Muslims had crossed over the river, abandoned their positions and headed for Antokya and gathered there with their army. The third day the Muslims set out from the river and entered Ayfars.

[Degalhan's ruse to escape the fighting]

Meanwhile, the patrician Degalhan stayed in Antokya five days during which he sent to his wife Amata Watin in secret saying to her, 'Your brother, the king of Abyssinia has appointed me commander of this army. But I have no energy for this fighting, nor the stomach^{1 1} for it. Should I be killed, you will be left a widow, and your children orphans. But now, use your good offices with the king to send me back to you but don't reveal to him that I have spoken to you about this.'

So his wife spoke about him to the king, without the patricians knowing, and said: 'You have sent your brother-in-law to fight the Muslims. If they kill him, I will be left a widow and my children orphans. Now, send to him to come to you and place another patrician other than him in charge of the army and let him come to you to fight by your side.'

The king listened to what his sister had to say, and sent a messenger to his brother-in-law Degalhan for him to come to him, and to say to the army, 'Instead,'⁷⁴ I am going to send you the patrician Eslamu, governor of Fatagar'. He was a courageous lighter, highly esteemed by the king.

The storyteller; may God have mercy upon him, says: When the messenger

reached Degalhan he set out by night from Antokya to rejoin the king. The day after the departure of Degalhan, Eslamu reached Antokya and with him a mighty army including the tribes of the Maya, skilled in the use of poisoned arrows. Anyone struck by these poisoned arrows loses all the hair on his head and dies instantly from the strength of the poison. They procure the poison from a tree that is well-known to them and to the Somalis. They collect its branches and roots, light a fire over them to cook them, and then gather the sap and coat the tips of their arrows with it. It is mud-coloured, like tar.

As for the army that was in Antokya, it went out to greet Eslamu on the road. When he and his troops saw them, Eslamu was overcome with amazement and exceeded the bounds of decency by his blasphemy, mockery and ranting. He pitched his tent in the midst of them, and the soldiers sensed victory. The patrician Eslamu had been present in battles with the Muslims before this: when he had been in Damot; and that is why they rejoiced in the anticipated victory. They stayed on in Antokya for two days, and on the third day the Muslims entered Antokya, passing the night below the church.

[The battle for Antokya]

When dawn broke, the imam sent some cavalry units against the people of Antokya, around fifty knights, amongst whom were Ura'T Abu Bakr, Azar Muhammad and others like them: bound for the church. But the infidels saw them approaching, and set a trap for them. The Muslims kept on coming, for they could see the church, but could not see the infidels who let them have their way until they came up quite close to them, hardly any distance, and then they attacked them. The Christians were from Bali, well-known for their cunning and double-dealing, and the Muslims were caught unawares when they charged them.

The Muslims held their positions for a short while as they hurled javelins at one another, but the infidels outnumbered them. Two of their knights were killed, and the Muslims fled. They had not gone far when they were met on the road by a unit of cavalry amongst whom were SaidT Muhammad, 'All Goita bin Goita 'Adruh, and Takia whose hand and foot had been cut off.

When they saw the Muslims in full flight they said to them, 'Where are you fleeing to? We have come as your reinforcements!* Their aforementioned companions harangued them until the Muslims who were fleeing turned about and returned with them, and they charged the idol-worshippers as one man, and the Abyssinians turned their backs in the direction of their companions, while the Muslims [for their part] returned to the imam and told him what had happened to them in the fighting.

[Ahmad attacks those lying in ambush]

The imam asked them, 'Where are the infidel lines? Below the church or above it?' They replied, 'The patrician Eslamu came from above the church, and arranged his soldiers and his cavalry in the midst of a forest. The patrician Abit and his companions had camped to the left of the church, and planned one of their ambushes there so that when we marched against Eslamu these came out from behind us. But God turned their scheming back upon themselves.'

Abit was a tyrant. He wrote to the imam when he was in the land of Ar'an a letter in which he said, 'Battle is a matter of give and take.'" God was guiding you at the battle of Sembera Korc, when you killed our men and scattered our heroes. Now leave us. Be content with what you have done to us, otherwise God will destroy you as he destroyed the village of Lot.'¹ " Do not give in to vanity.'

The imam scoffed at his words, and thereupon took counsel with the Muslims. He said to them. 'Look at this infidel Abit and his letter which he sent to me to frighten me, He and his companions have laid a trap for us: if we march against Eslamu they will attack our rear; and if we march against the infidel Abit, then Eslamu and his soldiers will fall upon us from above. So what do you think now?'

377

The wazir Nur stood up and said, 'Wars are a matter of trickery' . 1

have advice to give you, and if you like it, act upon it.' The imam replied. 'Let's hear your advice.' So [the wazir Nur] said, 'Let us send an army against these infidels who lie in ambush, to fight them and drive them back to their companions.' At which the imam and the Muslims exclaimed, 'What excellent advice you have given.'

Then the imam said to the wazir Nur, 'Now you and your soldiers march against them, while we march against Eslamu To which he responded, 'Willingly". Then he put him in command over one-hundred knights from among the heroes, amongst whom were Abu Bakr Qatin, the emir 'AIT, Garad Ahmad bin Lad 'Utman well-known for his courage, Ura'r s Sihab ad-Dln Jidayah Girri who was from among the courageous ones, and Ura'i 'Umar Din, and their ilk.

So the wazir set out against the ambush, while the imam and the rest of the army set out against Eslamu. The wazir Nur arrived at the ambush, reaching it from above and fought with them for a short [f'37] while in the morning until the idol-worshippers fled in the direction of their companions. Meanwhile, the imam

and his anny had marched against Eslamu. He arrayed his army in its battle lines. The Arabs were lined up in the vanguard of the army, banging their tambourines and their drums, with the cannon going in front of them. The Muslims mounted their horses, put on their armour and their breastplates, proclaiming the unicity' ⁴ and the mightiness of God, and praying for [Muhammad] the unique Herald.

In the same way the idol-worshippers arranged their forces, and their battle lines. Their cavalry' numbered six-thousand and their foot-soldiers around one-hundred-thousand, God alone knows. The Muslims had roughly five-hundred cavalry, and ten-thousand foot-soldiers. The two sides observed each other. The imam pitched his tent. Sometimes it was the Muslims who charged against the idol-worshippers, and other times it was the idol- worshippers who charged against the Muslims. And this went on tirelessly until the end of the time for the afternoon prayer.

On a number of occasions the people of Bali as one man charged the right wing of the Muslims - held by the companions of the wazir Nur. They fell upon them from above, and pushed them as far as where the imam was. He lost his temper with them and said to them, 'Don't engage them in battle. This place is not suitable for fighting. Hold your positions.'

The storyteller; may God have mrcy upon him, says: Mattan, and Husain bin 'Abd Allah Mahidah and others like them were fighting [the Abyssinians] from above the left of the Muslims. The imam bccame angry at Mattan and sent for him. They seized him and brought him into the presence of the imam who asked him, 'Who commanded you to fight? Can't you stay in your place?' So he stayed in his place.

Now the imam's *muezzin* called Kabir Nur had been fighting with Mattan on the left flank. He shot an arrow at one of the patricians of Bali, but as he was riding a fleet-footed horse the arrow missed the patrician but hit the horse which dropped down dead. The patrician fled on foot in the direction of his companions. The imam forbade his men to fight; so they held their positions. The Muslims dismounted from their horses and partook of some nourishment.

The Christians of Bali on the other hand were indefatigable in fighting. They harassed the Muslims, attacking them from right and left because the idol-worshippers held the heights of the mountain, and the Muslims were below them and could not attack the opposing side, or find a spacious enough place in which to fight.

So the imam called for the cannon, and then for ten courageous knights, who were the emir Zaharbui Muhammad, Ahmad Goita, the emir 'Ali, Garad Ahmad bin Lad 'Utman, the emir Abu Bakr Qatin, and Takia who had had his hand and foot cut off. Takia said to the imam in his own country, the country of the Muslims, 'God willing, I will strike an infidel knight with this whip which is in my hand, and knock him from his horse which I shall take.' God heard what he said, and on this day he struck an unbeliever with his whip, knocked him from his horse, and took his horse as booty.

Then the imam ordered these afore-mentioned to accompany him against the people of Bali, and ordered them to take one cannon with them. So they arrived near the battle line of the people of Bali whose foot-soldiers were fighting the Muslim foot-soldiers, who were Arabs from Mahra.

Accompanying these was a fighter from Morocco called al-Hajj Muhammad. He shot [an arrow] at one of the idol-worshippers shattering his foot, and he died. To God belongs the credit for [the prowess of] two of the

Muslim Arab archers who belonged to the people at Rif ³⁵⁰ The name of one

- 181

of them was 'Abd as-Salam, and the other was called Hash an-Nabi,' They never missed a target that they aimed at.

When the imam reached the battlefield of the people of Bali they were fighting the Arabs from Mahra and the foot-soldiers who were companions of the imam.¹⁸¹ Thereupon the latter called up the cannon and said to the Mahra commander, SaTd bin Sa'ban, 'Fire upon them, and when you have fired we will charge them as one man.' So they planted the cannon in the earth, and he took a while to point it, and then fired. It hit an olive tree that was standing in the middle of the infidel army and snapped it in two. Then each and every one of them began excitedly milling about, and the imam said to the knights who were his companions, 'Now! Charge!'

They charged, together with the foot-soldiers from Mahra. and the shield-bearers from Malasai, against the people of Bali who were in their thousands. The latter lied. They did not return to their companions, or to their patricians but took another route along the heights of the mountain of Antokya, pursued by the Muslims who killed twelve knights and took fourteen horses as booty. Then darkness fell upon them and the Muslims returned to their positions.

When the wazir 'Addoli and the wazir NGr and the other emirs who had

remained in their places, saw that the imam and his companions had charged the people of Bali, they, too, attacked from their positions.

The first of them to charge was the emir Husain, followed by Goita Allah Magan and Garad Mattan and Garad Sama'un and others like them, who attacked the idol-worshippers. Between the latter and the Muslims a river formed a barrier. There were paths across that horses could take, but on the banks there were foot-soldiers of the idol-worshippers whom they charged and pushed back towards their patrician Eslamu .

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: As for what happened to Husain al-Gaturi who was among those who charged [the Abyssinians]: when he did so they overwhelmed him, and surrounded him. Finding him in their midst, they pelted him with javelins, and threw three javelins at his horse which fell with him, and they hamstrung it. They struck him in the right thigh with a spear-head^{.x4} which emerged from the other side. The spear-head fell out. He returned safely to his companions, and recovered. Darkness separated the two groups and each returned to his own place. The imam went back to his tent, and [the Muslims] rejoiced at the victory.

[Eslamu strikes camp on a Thursday in the month of Rajab, 937 AH]

The infidels and their patrician Eslamu could not help being restless. They were frightened. They struck their tents by night, and moved to another place that was not far distant where their patrician pitched his tent and he and his soldiers passed the night there. The Muslims passed the night holding their positions, recalling God's attributes, and glorifying him. The idol-worshippers, on the other hand, remained in their bad faith and their depravity,

The battle of Antokya took place on a Friday of the month of Rajah" in the year nine-hundred-and-thirty-seven from the Hijra of the Prophet' upon whom be the most excellent of blessings and peace.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: When the morning shone brightly, and its light gleamed and sparkled, the Muslims said their prayers, mounted their mules, and leading their horses alongside them, set off for the church of Antokya.

The imam and the Muslims stood beside the church which had lofty and imposing pillars. The imam said to them, 'Burn it'. And so they burnt it. Then they marched below the church a short [r'38J distance.

They knew nothing of the whereabouts of Eslamu the patrician: there was no news, no trace of him. They had no idea that he had moved away by night. The Muslims halted in an open, spacious region and asked amongst themselves, 'Which road has that cursed Eslamu taken?' Then they came upon two roads, one on the right and one on the left; and both of them showed signs of horses* hoofs. At which the imam said to them: 'They have taken both roads: which road shall we take?' The wazir 'Addoli and 'Abd an-Nasr replied, 'Let us take the road on the right; this is the only one that Eslamu would have taken.' The imam said to them, 'You march along that one, with the cannon in the vanguard.' The imam took the rear.

They had gone only a short distance when one of those to the rear of them cried out saying: 'The infidels have overtaken us.' The imam quickly turned back and rejoined his soldiers, and saw the infidel vanguard and pursued them until they entered a forest thickly matted with trees in the midst of which stood the patrician Eslamu to whom they said, 'Prepare yourself and your soldiers: those Muslims are behind us'. At which the idol-worshippers got up, and saddled their horses. While they were engaged in doing this the imam and his force stormed them, crying out at the same time, 'There is no God but Allah and "Allah is the Greatest',

[Eslamu*s forces are routed]

The first of the Muslim knights to charge was Besara bin 'AIT, against one of the patricians whom he stabbed with his spear and brought him to the ground, dead. Then, after him, the emir Abu Bakr Qatin charged one of the knights of the idol-worshippers, striking him with his spear so that he, too, fell,³⁸⁸ Then Ura'i Abun charged one of the knights of the idol-worshippers, struck him with his spear, and he fell.

In the same way Ura'i 'Umar Din bin as-Sultan Muhammad charged one of the infidel knights, striking him with his spear and knocking him from his horse so that he struck the ground, dead. Then the soldiers behind them attacked and the idol-worshippers turned tail, with the Muslims in pursuit of them, killing them, capturing them and plundering booty. The idol-worshippers climbed a wooded mountain that was in their path. There was hardly a tree left standing from the number of them as they tied with the Muslims hot on their heels, in pursuit, killing and capturing them, and taking booty.

The carnage they endured was horrific; there had never been anything like it, except perhaps during the battle of Sembera Korc. Their patrician escaped and travelled to the land of Hadya^N) and even though the Muslims pursued him from

midday until dusk they never caught up with him.

The storyteller. may God have mercy upon him, says: then the imam went down into the land of Ayfars where he pitched his tent. They took a tent that day as booty, and an uncountable number of mules. Some of them even took as many as thirty mules, while others took around one-hundred horses. The numbers of dead and captives were so great and the Abyssinians were so overwhelmed by despair, that one Muslim took ten infidels captive. Some of

them spent the night chasing the idol-worshippers through every narrow pass, and as that night was extremely cold, a large number of Muslims died.

[‘Addoli wishes to jettison the cannon]

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: The wazir ‘Addoli and ‘Abd an-Nasr in the meantime had been marching in the vanguard of the army with the cannon and the baggage. They learnt, sometime after this, that the imam had turned back and joined his rearguard. They, for their part, had not progressed far because they were weighed down by the baggage. The wazir ‘Addoli said, ‘Let’s jettison the cannon and the baggage and meet up with the imam.’ ‘Abd an-Nasr replied, i’ll not jettison them; but if you wish to go back, then do so. I, however, will not disobey the words of the imam, nor will I jettison the cannon. On the contrary, I will march with them.’ When they understood that ‘Abd an-Nasr had no intention of abandoning the cannon they concurred with his view. They marched and passed the night on the road in the rear of the imam.

That night was exceedingly cold so they lighted a fire to keep themselves warm. The idol-worshippers whom the imam had routed, in the meantime, had entered the forest and hidden themselves. There was a vast number of them. Noticing the fire, and because they were suffering from the cold, they moved towards it thinking that it was a fire of their companions. But the Muslims grabbed them, killing them. Around five-hundred of them were killed that night: and none had any idea what had happened to the other.

When morning came, the wazir ‘Addoli and ‘Abd an-Nasr marched in the direction of the imam, reaching him at the time of the afternoon prayer. The Muslims met up and exchanged greetings with one another, praising God, and thanking Him for the victory and for having got the better of the enemies of God.

The storyteller; may God have mercy upon him, says: Then the imam summoned one of the Muslim infantrymen whose name was Farasaham Din, who was to be governor of Maya after the conquest. He presented himself, and the imam put him

in command of thirty knights and said to him: 'Pursue the Christians.' So he set off, following their tracks, but did not meet up with them, nor did he encounter any fighting. He arrived at a place below Ayfars called Majlah where he took a vast quantity of slaves, cattle and mules as booty. He remained there four days collecting booty, and on the fifth day he returned to the imam.

[Raiding party sent into Ganbah]

At this, the imam summoned the wazir 'Addoli and said to him: 'March with your force to the land of Ganbah above Sarkah. If you meet any armed band, fight them, take their possessions as booty, capture their women and kill their men. I shall bring up your rear, because you brought up our rear and saw- none of the fighting, and captured no booty.'

'Addoli and his force set out at once and came to the land of Ganbah. The knights raided the country to the right and to the left, plundering and killing. The wazir "Addoli made camp below Ganbah. When the wazir 'Addoli had pitched his camp there, most of the knights returned to him with booty and slaves; other Muslims however stayed back, plundering, and did not return.

Ten knights renowned for their courage, went on to the land of Sarkah:³⁹⁰ Del Sagad, Takla, Ura'i Nur bin Dar"Ali, Abjad bin Abun, Garad Dawit al-Bartirri, Jlnah Satut from the people of Sim, Yusscf, Said! Muhammad bin 'All al-Baqari whose father was an Arab - he had been the treasurer for the Imam, and was lord of Dawaro - and Abu Bakr bin Yamag Ahmad .

They entered the land of Sarkah without realizing that there were enemies there. The patrician Badlai Fit Behtwadad¹¹¹ whom we mentioned above, was in Sarkah. He had gone to Antokya with Azmac Degalhan, when the king sent for the latter to go to him, and Azma£ Eslamu took charge of

Antokya as we have described.¹⁾² All the patricians went along with the proposal except the patrician Badlal Behtwadad who would not agree to Eslamu 's being over him.

He left Antokya and went to the land of Sarkah, saying to Eslamu: 'The king has appointed you over me, so you fight in the king's [f'39] interest'. When the Muslims arrived at the land of Sarkah they knew nothing of him but he knew that they had entered the land of Sarkah. He mounted his horse and organized his army which was composed of fifty cavalry and five- hundred infantry. They had readied themselves for war, blocking the road of Sarkah against the Muslims.

So the ten knights who professed the unicity of God arrived, intending to invade the land of Sarkah. They saw the infidels, and how they were holding an elevated hill that the cavalry could find no means of reaching because of the narrowness of the place; and how the Christians had equipped themselves for battle.

The Muslims halted in their tracks, and deliberated amongst themselves. In their number were some who said : 'Let us return the way we came, to the wazir 'Addoli. We can give him news of them, and he will supply us with infantry'. Others said: 'We had only one desire, the *jihad* and now this has come to pass: isn't this really just one of two equally good options?'⁹ > They agreed with this latter judgement, and crying out with one voice 'God is the greatest,' attacked the idol-worshippers. They scaled the hill, and a fierce battle ensued, with hand to hand fighting. Each one was cut off from his companion.

One of the Muslims called Takla, son of al-Habasi, rushed at one of their patricians, knocked him from his saddle and took him prisoner, shackling him cringing and despicable. In the same way another one of the Muslims Abjad bin Abun attacked one of the knights, a chieftain of the infidels, one of the king's chamberlains who stood close to his throne, and throwing him from his saddle took him prisoner. Likewise, another, by name Yussef, hurled himself at their knight and leader, the patrician Badlal Fit

Behtwadad, like a lion on its prey, seeking to take him captive. But he swerved away from him, to the right and to the left, trying to escape. When he saw death staring him in the face, he threw himself from his horse onto the ground, and ran away, wading into the middle of the river that was nearby and saved himself. Yussef took his horse.

When they saw that their patrician had fled, and that his charger had been captured, the idol-worshippers were put to flight - with some of them being killed and others escaping. But not one of the Muslims was killed. They took twelve horses and booty and turned back, returning to the wazir 'Addoli whom they reached when he was at the border of the land of Ganbah. They made the two prisoners stand before him.

The Muslims took heart at the victory and the triumph and sent a messenger to the Imam, On the next day the wazir⁴ Addoli set out to rejoin the Imam and they assembled with him in the land of Ganbah, each one greeting the other. They presented the two prisoners to the Imam who asked them both about their circumstances. They replied: 'we shall ransom ourselves'. The king's chamberlain said: 'I shall ransom myself with two-hundred ounces of gold dust,' and the other said: 'And I shall ransom myself with one-hundred ounces of gold'. But the imam

said to them : ‘I have no need of your gold’, and ordered them to be put to death. The Muslims remained in the land of Ganbah six days.

[Capture of patricians’ wives and children]

The *storyteller* says: The first Muslims to die, on this occasion, in the land of Abyssinia were two men, of whom one, sheikh Zammaka, was from the land of Sawa, and the other was ‘Utman, a devout man - may God have mercy on them both. Both of them were buried in Ganbah, Then the imam commanded the wazir ‘Addoli to proceed to Sarkah with the wazir Nur. So they set out, reaching Sarkah, taking captive the wives and children of the patricians, plundering a vast quantity of fabrics and other things besides. They also took as booty a small³⁴⁴ quantity of gold which was the first gold to be

taken as booty from Abyssinia in this afore-mentioned blessed campaign in the course of which there were notable conquests.

Among the wives of the patricians was the wife of the patrician Azmac Arkia, and his children. When the latter learned that his wife and children had been captured, he went and embraced Islam Arkia was one³⁹³ of the nobles of Abyssinia to embrace Islam during this campaign. At this, the imam gave him back his wife and children.

[The fate of Wasan Sagad’s church in ¹ Andurah]

Then the wazir ‘Addoli and the wazir Nur assembled with the imam in ‘Andurah in the land of Dawaro where there was a church with imposing columns that was built for Wasan Sagad. It was a mighty building into whose construction great efforts had gone. It had taken eleven years to build. Its like was not to be seen in Dawaro because of the workmanship that went into its decoration and its construction.

The storyteller says: When the imam with his Muslim army arrived at the church, the custodians fled. There were custodians from Duba‘ah there, one-thousand foot soldiers, carrying poisoned spears called *jat*.

The Muslims entered and were astonished at the building and its embellishment. Inside it they discovered Byzantine carpets, furnishings and fabrics, silken wares and other things as well. The Muslims took what was inside the church, and then set fire to it. They made camp in ‘Andurah and stayed there around six days. The cavalry and the army made incursions into Dawaro, taking booty and captives.

The emir Zaharbui Muhammad, and Garad Ahmusah heard about a treasure house of Wasan Sagad in the land of Galur. So they set out for the land of Gatur seeking the treasure house. But when they reached the place described to them, they found in it only half the treasure, which they looted. The Christians had fled with the other half when they heard about the two of

them. What they did find consisted of fabrics and silks and many other things besides: but no gold was found. Then they returned to the imam at ^LAndurah.

[Wasan Sagad mobilises his forces]

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him, says: 'After the imam and his forces had arrived in ' Andurah the king of Abyssinia learned that the Muslims had reached Antokya; that the patrician Eslamu had been routed, and his army destroyed; and that the church of Wasan Sagad had been burnt. He was overcome with grief and immediately assembled his patricians, his Chamberlains and his leading citizens and said to them: 'You have heard what devastation the Muslims have caused in Daw aro: the routing of our army, and the killing of them'.

So he sent a message to the people of Tetre to come to him with their forces. The patricians and armies without number assembled, and the king appointed as commander of the forces the patrician Takla Iyasus, governor of Angot, whom he had put in charge of Tetre and the seaport of Dokono. The king loved him. He ordered him to march to the land of Dawaro, to seek out the Muslims and to engage them in battle.

[Eslamu subordinated by the king to Takla Iyasus]

As for what happened to the patrician Eslamu whom the imam had put to flight in Antokya; he was in hiding in the land of Zari.^{1<J} an inaccessible and roadless terrain. He sent a messenger to the king of Abyssinia to offer excuses, and to humble himself, saying: 'I had not lined up my forces against the Muslims' * [f'40] yet they acted treacherously towards me. They took me by surprise, before I had made any preparations; when I was defenceless. Still, the Muslims took from me only a few horses'. The king sent back to him the following intimidatory reply: 'Look -I gave you an army as numerous as a plague of locusts, and it was of no advantage to you. Now see I am sending you Azmac Takla Iyasus. Follow him. Whatever orders he gives you, follow them. Do not disobey him. Be a help for him against the Muslims'.

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him, says: Now, concerning the patrician Takla Iyasus. He set off for Dawaro, with a large number of patricians

under him. Among the leading patricians were Feqra Iyasus, son-in-law of king Eskender whose daughter he had married⁴⁰⁰ - a powerful and headstrong man; the patrician¹ Amr from Tegrc; the *sum* of Sire and the *sum* of Sarayc.⁴⁰¹ and others of their ilk from among the thirty patricians of Tcgre, each of whom had numerous soldiers under his command, and amongst wtiom were the people of Angot.

These journeyed until they reached the ‘A was which they passed, and rendezvoused with the patrician Eslamu who was in Zari. Then the king's letter, in which the king appointed Takla Iyasus their commander, was read out to them and to the patrician Eslamu. in which the king appointed Takla Iyasus their commander. Grudgingly, Eslamu said, 'To hear the king's letter is to obey it'.

[Takla Iyasus is betrayed]

Takla Iyasus received information about the Muslims. His spies informed him that the Muslims were in ‘Andurah near the church of Wasan Sagad. It was thought that the Muslims were going to return to their country. He addressed his forces: ‘We will maintain our position here. And when the Muslims march towards their country we will let them reach Del Meda and then pounce on them, taking them by surprise, and killing them’. They agreed with this view and said: ‘Your opinion is the correct one, we will follow you’.

The storyteller; may God have mercy upon him, says: There were two men [present] of whom the name of one was ‘Umar and the name of the other was Sakr. They were Muslims who had repudiated Islam and become Christians. They had joined the king who bestowed favours upon them, granting them property in Sarkah from which they derived income. They had married Christian girls, but when the Muslims arrived at Sarkah these captured their wives. With the arrival of Takla Iyasus these two men learnt what the infidels were planning to do, and they sought out the imam. They said: ‘We deeply regret before God what we have done; we repent of our actions’. Then they informed the imam about what Takla Iyasus had said.

The imam said to them: ‘Don’t be afraid’, and gave them back their wives. Then the imam asked them: ‘Do they know about you: that you have come back to us?’ And they replied: ‘No, they don’t know about us’. The imam then said to them, i have two small things to ask of you’. They asked, ‘What are they?’ And he said to them: ‘You, Sakr, shall remain with me. And your friend ‘Umar shall go back to the infidels and infiltrate them, and bring us back news of them: informing us which road we should take to reach them; which is the widest road. If you do this, then God will forgive your sin’. ‘Willingly’, he replied. Sakr lodged with the wazir ‘Addoli, and ‘Umar farwelled him. Then he set out, rejoined the idol-

worshippers and stayed two days.

The day after that he went back to 'Addoli, at the time of the afternoon prayer, and 'Addoli went with him to the imam who asked him for news. He said: 'I went to them, saw them and learnt their route'. At which the imam asked, 'What are they scheming concerning us?' He replied: 'They don't have any plan other than their original one'. Then the imam asked: 'How many of them are there?' He replied: 'Well, the people of Bali, Dawaro, Wanag

Arriba,⁴⁰² and Wanag Jadab all went back to their countries at the time of their defeat at Antokya. The only ones who remain are their chieftains'.

So the imam asked him: 'And these soldiers of theirs, tell us about them - who are they? How many of them are there?' He said: 'They are from the people of Tegre, of Angot and of Fatagar. The imam then asked him, 'How many horses have they?' He replied: 'Five-hundred horses from Rif with riders from Tegre - all of whom wear armour of iron and steel'.

At that the imam asked: 'Where they are - is it wide or narrow? Is there space for the cavalry' or not?' He replied: 'Going from here to close to where they are, the terrain is open; but as we get closer to them we hit a steep mountain path which we have to climb, and as we descend we come out into a river valley. The Christians hold the heights above the valley. They have made their camp on top of a hill there, but the hill is cut off because at the bottom of it there is a cliff caused by a landslide. So when we reach their position, if God gives us victory over them, there is no way they can escape from there. All those who do flee the hill will plunge into the void and be smashed to pieces'.

[Ahmad decides to attack]

The storyteller may God have mercy upon him, says: Thereupon the imam summoned the Muslim cavalry at the time of the afternoon prayer and passed on to them what news his spy had brought. Some of them said: 'Let us hold our positions until they come to us,' and others again said, 'Let us march against them'. Then the imam said to the first ones who had said 'Let us hold our positions,' 'I do not share your opinion. Rather, let us set out, but after the prayer at sunset'. To which they replied: 'We agree'.

So they marched out after the prayer at sunset, leaving the camp in place at 'Andurah, and leaving behind in it 'Abd an-Nasr, and with him forty cavalry, the baggage and the cannon. The imam said to him: 'You come after us, in the morning'.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: The imam marched from the time of the sunset prayer until early the next morning: and they marched like running water. The Qur'anic teacher Abu Bakr nicknamed Arsuna was in their midst, reading the Qur'an aloud and slowly reciting it, with the soldiers crowding around so that they could hear it; all this until the break of the day when they reached the steep mountain path. Then the guide halted. He said: 'Now that we are close to them let us rest here until morning comes'.

The Muslims made camp, descended from their mules and rested because they were exhausted. Then at dawn the imam sent for the guide who was brought into his presence and said to him: 'You and we must go immediately to check the route and gather some information'. But the guide said: 'Well, I'm exhausted, but you have the patrician Arkia here and he is a Muslim and he knows the way'. So the imam summoned him and he came and the imam said to him what he had said to the guide. He replied, 'With pleasure,' and set off with the imam by night, until the last third of the night. Garad Sama'un and Mattan accompanied the imam.

[Arkia deceives some Christian villagers]

The guide mistook the path and they followed a different one. They sat bolt upright [in their saddles], not knowing the path, arguing among themselves and becoming confused. Suddenly they heard barking, like the barking of dogs and the imam asked: 'Is this dogs' barking, or something else?' And they approached closer to the sound. Arkia said to them: 'You stay here: I shall go towards the [f'41] sound and get some news for you. There are no dogs in an army camp. I shall do my utmost to bring you news'.

So, Arkia set off in the direction of the noise and to his surprise it was one of the Christian villages where the dogs' barking was coming from. So then Arkia called out in a loud voice: 'Hello there in the village!' A reply came back asking, 'Who is this that calls out in the dark of the night?' Arkia answered them: 'I am a patrician from Dawaro. I have come from Dawaro'. They enquired: 'Who have you got behind you'. He said: 'With me is my army. Takla Iyasus sent for me to conic to him, and now I've come with my soldiers and want to help him tight the Muslims'. They said lo him: 'Go back the way you came to the steep mountain track, and go down into the valley that lies below it. then ascend the high hill beyond. That's where he is. Set out straightaway and you will find him there'.

The storyteller may the most high God have mercy upon him, says: Arkia noted the directions and returned to the imam and reported to him what the village people had told him. He said: 'The infidels have held their original position, just as the

first guide told you,' and they rejoiced exceedingly. So they turned around and went back to their camp, notifying their companions of the news.

They passed the night there and when it was morning they said their prayers and the wazir 'Addoli with the first guide leading him, set out with the vanguard of the army. They descended the mountain path down to the valley and the Muslims saw the infidels' tents. The idol-worshippers [also] saw the Muslims descending the steep pass. Immediately the infidels ranged all their forces, and set off towards the Muslims.

The imam was in the rear of the army, so the Muslims halted in the valley until the imam and his forces readied them. Some of the cavalry, however, had already crossed the river before the imam reached them. Amongst these were Sabr ad-Din, 'All Waradl, Abd Allah bin Nasr ad-Din al-Hamwi, Adis bin Mahl, and about twenty other infantry of their ilk: and from the infantry Fanj Sabbar, Haijen JTta, 'All Tal Ijir - around thirty infantrymen [like them].'

They and the Christians engaged one another in battle; and they hurled spears at one another.⁴¹ But the wazir 'Addoli waited in the valley for the imam to arrive. Upon his arrival the imam and the Muslims mounted their horses and set their forces in battle array.

[Takla Iyasus is killed]

Then the Muslim vanguard launched an attack against the Christians who were waiting on the hill. The first of them to charge was Sabr ad-Din, governor of Wasla on the border of Ganz after the conquest, who plunged into the midst of them, followed by 'All al-Waradl. In the same way 'Abd Allah bin Nasr ad-Din al-Hamwi charged, as did Adis bin Mahi who was backed up by 'All Goita bin Goita 'Adruh. These two attacked Takla Iyasus. Then Adis unsheathed his sword and struck the head of Takla Iyasus such a blow that it separated his head from his body and he fell down dead: and God thrust his soul down into Hell, and 'a sad place it is'.^{4,14}

Then the imam and the Muslims charged the Christians who were on the hill. A bloody battle followed, with the infidels in full flight, pursued by the Muslims who took captives, killed and plundered.

The patrician Eslamu was slain by Abu Bakr bin Garad Yumaj Ahmad . In the same way the patrician of Mergay whose name was Nasr was captured by Farasaham 'All who also captured the patrician Sotalai who became a Muslim by a sincere conversion. He took part in the *jihad* and killed, only to be himself killed as

a martyr as will be recalled later on. In the same way the governor of Mergay converted to Islam with a genuine conversion and he fought the *jihad* with the Muslims. Nagada Iyasus, governor of Jinah, was killed as well. His killer was Garad Ahmadus bin Mahfuz, may God the most High have mercy upon him.

The *sum* of Bur^{4,b} also was killed. His name was Zambil. His killer was the emir Abu Bakr Qatin, Also killed was the *sum* of Sire whose name was Sama'il. He was killed by one of the Muslim infantrymen. Ibrahim the *sum* of Salamt, the name of a city in the land of Agaw, was killed by Absama Nur. The *sum* of Hamasen was killed by Salih, an equerry of the emir Mujahid.⁴⁰⁶ The patrician Aser was captured by Tahar, an equerry of the imam.

The patrician Keflc, governor of Qeda, son of Takla Iyasus, was also captured, by an equerry of the imam named Hasan. The patrician Giyorgis, governor of Gojjam, was captured by an equerry of Farasaham 'All. Azmac Ycshaq, governor of Bagemder, was killed by 'All Mad Jir from the tribe of Mattan the Somali.

The number of high patricians killed was one-hundred-and-thirty - from the people of Tegre and the people of Amhara. Thousands of their cavalry and infantry, were killed. The Muslims captured five-hundred horses as booty - only twenty escaped. God took control of their tents, their belongings, their mules and their slaves, and handed them over to the Muslims^{4,7}.

Afterwards, the wazir 'Addoli and the soldiers who were with him, made their camp on the hill-top on the site of the infidel camp. The imam, on the other hand, along with around fifty knights, pursued the fleeing soldiers from the hill as far as the 'Awas and then returned to Del Meda where he passed the night.

The next day he went in the direction of 'Abd an-Nasr whom earlier on he had left behind in Andurah with the baggage, and the imam and 'Abd an-Nasr directed their steps towards a country called Jamit.

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him, says: Regarding what happened to the wazir "Addoli who remained in the infidel encampment - he set out after two days for Jamit, where the Muslims greeted one another, praising the most high God for the victory and the triumph, and stayed the night there.

[Dividing the booty]

When morning came, the imam summoned the captives, the horses and the weapons of war. They presented the horses to him, five-hundred of them with their protective armour draped with red broad-cloth and velvet, with silk, and gold

brocade of silk shimmering like fiery flames; with Davidic iron armour, helmets from Sabur, swords from Egypt, and shields made of

hide from Abyssinia that resembled white baskets. He gave glory to the most high God, and took the *fifth* part of these and of the mules, and then divided the remaining horses and the mules amongst the *mujahidun*.

The storyteller, may God have mercy on him, says: I who witnessed the events at Sembera Kore with the imam, as well as the rest of the incursions, never saw horses or mules as magnificent as the horses and mules of Zari. nor a number greater than them.

As for the captives, the patrician Aser. and likewise the patrician Sutorialai were beheaded. The patrician Keflc ransomed himself with thirty ounces of gold. Giyorgis was held captive for about two months, and then one night^{40K} severed his bonds and fled towards Gojjam, only to be killed by one of the infidels.

[Ahmad's letter to the king]

The imam acted kindly towards the patrician, the brother of Giyorgis, and sent him to Wanag Sagad, the king of Abyssinia, with a letter. He said to him: 'Go immediately with this [f⁴²] letter and come back to me with the answer'.

He wrote: 'In the name of God the merciful, the compassionate: glory to God alone: blessing and peace upon Muhammad the Prophet, after whom there can be no other prophet. From the imam Ahmad bin Ibrahim al-GazI^{4<1} to the king of Abyssinia,' after having wished peace upon whoever follows the true religion, and whoever obeys the celestial king, 'when this letter

reaches you, send back to me the two captives whom the patrician Fanu cl

captured: one of them is Abu Bakr bin Musallcm. and the other is Jalati After you have sent these back to me, I shall release to you the captive patricians.

'There are four of them: Giyorgis and Kefle, Nasr governor of Mergay, and Sutorialai. They are four, and my companions are two. But then Muslim takes care of Muslim and infidel takes care of infidel. You should not think of us as we were before, making an incursion and then going home. This time we shall not return until God has conquered the country for us - if it be God's will - or we have died: "Thus he will judge between us, and he is the best of Judges." ^{41o}

The imam then folded the letter and dispatched it with the patrician, the brother

of Giyorgis the captive, commanding him to bear the letter to the king of Abyssinia. So he set off with the letter and reached the king of Abyssinia, and gave it to him. Thereupon the latter saw it and understood what it contained concerning the matter of the prisoners, the head-tax to be paid by non-Muslims and concerning Islam. For the imam had given him a choice between the three, by implication, in the letter.

The king proved himself unfaithful, decadent, tyrannical and arrogant. His vexation could be seen in his face. He flung the crown from his head, called for the two captives and had them put to death - may God have mercy upon the two of them - and sent back no reply,

[The Somali tribes resolve to desert]

The storyteller may God have mercy upon him, says: The Muslims set out from Jamlit for Ganburah, above Suq Dawaro.⁴¹¹ The people of Suq Dawaro were Muslims whom the patrician of Dawaro ruled and from whom he exacted tribute. When the imam and the Muslims reached Ganburah, the people of Suq Dawaro welcomed them and showered them with honours. Then the imam wrote a letter to the country of the Muslims, to the sultan 'Umar Din and to his brother Muhammad bin Ibrahim whom he had left with the sultan, announcing the good news of his victory and triumph. The imam and the Muslims stayed on in Ganburah for around seven days.

In the meantime the Somali tribes, since they had taken booty and collected horses, mules, oxen, donkeys, slaves and fabrics, held a meeting by themselves. They said, 'We have taken vast booty, so now let us go to the imam and urge him to make the way clear for us to return to our country. If he agrees, there is no harm done. If he refuses, then we shall run away to our country, without his permission'. Some of the Malasal people agreed with this. The Somalis said: 'If we go back, the majority of the Malasal will follow our lead, and that will leave very few' with the imam'.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him says: Then a certain person went to the imam. He had been among those present at their meeting, and informed the imam what the Somalis had said, and what they intended to do. When the imam heard, he set spies upon them to observe them, and said to the spies: 'If they do something, see that I am told'.

While they were thus occupied, who should arrive but a senior patrician, Azmac Haib, governor of Gatur. After the king had removed him from Gatur, he commanded him to go to him. When he reached the king of Abyssinia, the latter

wrote a letter to Takla Iyasus, not knowing that Takla Iyasus was among those killed by the Muslims. Then he said to Haib, 'Go to him, and be with him, for you are familiar with the land of Gatur; and fight the Muslims with him'. So Haib left the king. But he went instead to the imam, converted to Islam, and his conversion was genuine. He fought and waged the *jihad* against the idol-worshippers,⁴¹² supported the Muslims, sought to appease the Lord of human beings, and performed deeds in Abyssinia the like of which his fellow countrymen had never performed.

[‘Amdu offers to conciliate to save Dawaro]

The Muslims in the land of Dawaro, meanwhile, took booty to the right and to the left, utterly devastating its territory. Amongst their number was a man whom they had taken prisoner during the battle of Antokya. When he saw how the Muslims were laying waste the land of Dawaro he said: ‘I have a plan. Take me to the imam.’ The one to whom he said this asked him: ‘What is your plan? What are you saying?’ But he said: ‘I won't say anything except to the imam’. So the Muslim went and told the imam what the prisoner said.

The imam summoned the prisoner and asked him: ‘What is your plan, and what are you talking about?’ The prisoner replied: ‘Give me a guarantee that if I speak with you, you will not kill me’. So he gave him the guarantee, and the prisoner said: ‘O your highness, devastate the whole country, but don't lay waste Dawaro. Yet you are laying waste the whole of Dawaro, and you are wiping out the people of the country by killing and enslaving them. Now I have something to suggest’.

The imam said, ‘So now explain the advantage of what you propose?’ He replied: ‘Send me back to my companions and to the patricians of Dawaro and I will tell them that if they pay you the head-tax you will leave them alone, and they will remain in their customary situation, in their country and their religion’.

When the imam heard this proposal of his, he said: ‘This suggestion of yours is nothing but a subterfuge so that you can escape the bonds of slavery. And, your companions, if you were to address them in this fashion they would not agree to what you suggest. But if you really know that they will accept your proposal, and you are genuine, then go to them; but if you are being treacherous then you are a dog and a son of a dog: you will do neither bad nor good: you will be neither more nor less. But if you are genuine, then we shall recognize where you stand’.

[‘Amdu explains his plan to the patricians]

So the prisoner set out and readied the patricians who had gathered in the land of Jan Zajra where the church of Wasan Sagad was. Among the leading patricians

was 'Adalih, lord of Bali, and Fanu'cl, and Giyorgis who was their superior, and the patrician Atfanil also called Dal Sabbar. When the captive 'Amdu arrived they approached him, welcomed him, congratulated him, and asked him: 'Where have you been up till now?' To which he replied: 'I have been a prisoner of the Muslims. The imam set me free so that I could come to you'.

The patrician 'Amdu was a close relative of Giyorgis, who was his cousin on his father's side, so 'Amdu said: 'Have these patricians move away from you to the side, for I have some important news to convey'. After they had drawn apart from him and Giyorgis he said, 'I have come to you with a proposal from the Muslims. From the outset they have been making incursions into our country and then returning to their own country. But this imam has invaded our country, ravaged it and killed its soldiers. He will not go back: he has in mind to settle in our country. You have seen what [f°43] he has done to you in war, and how the king tied at the battle of Sembera Kore, and how the army of Antokya fled, and how the king's army tied at Zari, and how all your patricians have been killed. Now, we have no force left with which to combat them. And if he does settle down in our country he will lay it waste and do even worse things. Now, our Lord Wasan Sagad is in the land of Damot'.

The patrician then said to the prisoner 'Amdu, 'Who can make peace between us, and deflect him from us?' 'Amdu replied: 'I have a plan'. The patrician said: 'Let's hear your opinion and your plan'. So he said: 'I will speak with the imam about peace between us and him. We will pay the head-tax to the imam and be hospitable and make a gift to the Muslims. We will give him three handsome mules, some sugar, some *qat* and some coffee-beans - for he will not demand extraordinary things from us'.

Thereupon the patrician Giyorgis assembled the other patricians and told them what 'Amdu had said about the gift and the offer of hospitality. They said: 'Hearing is obeying!' 'This is not asking too much,' he went on, 'and if the imam be satisfied with this, then neither the king nor our Lord Wasan Sagad will blame us for acting this way. Now, we want peace for our country, and we will offer him the gift and extend hospitality to him'. To which they replied, 'Hearing is obeying'.

['Amdu and Zin return to the Muslim camp]

They got together the gift and prepared the hospitality and the mules, and then the patricians summoned one who had been captured by the Muslims earlier on in the attack on Bus, had ransomed himself and settled amongst them. They said to him: 'You go to the imam with this man, for you understand his approach towards a gift, and offers of hospitality. Tell him: "If our patrician learns about our giving a

gift to you and our extending hospitality to you, he will not treat the matter lightly, and the king will kill us. So now, accept this insignificant thing from us.”

‘In the meantime, the imam has gone beyond the ‘Awas and proceeded in the direction of the king and is fighting him. In fact he is now at Gabarge. Were he to overcome him and conquer the country, we would agree to hand over to him all our horses and weapons: and to let whoever amongst us wanted to convert to Islam, do so; and whoever wanted to be a Christian, remain in his religion, and pay the head-tax. And we will further stipulate that were the king of Abyssinia to seek our assistance against the imam, we would not help him, nor would we join forces with him. Another provision: were the imam to withdraw from our country we would make no incursions into the land of the Muslims; we would cause harm to no one, but instead remain in our own homes’.

Then the patrician called Zin who had been with the Muslims, said to them: ‘Concerning this matter: if you act in this way, I will travel on your behalf to the imam, and will obtain a guarantee of immunity for you and for the people of this region. He will not move against you as long as you do as you promise. But if you break your word, and violate the agreement, then your double-dealing will hurt only you, for he loves justice, provided you are just’.

The [other] patricians committed themselves by oath, and gave their word, and said to him, ‘Go’. So the patrician Zin set off, along with the prisoner who had been with the imam. The two of them went to the imam, who was above Dawaro, and arrived where he was.

The patrician Zin went into the imam’s presence and presented him with the gift. The imam questioned him, saying: ‘How are you, Zin?’ To which he answered, ‘Well, my Lord, and in good health, thanks to your blessing. I am your servant. These people of Dawaro have asked me to intercede on their behalf with you.’ ‘To what end,’ asked the imam, ‘have they asked you to plead on their behalf?’ He replied, ‘They asked me to bring this gift to you’.

Then he addressed the imam, telling him all that had transpired, the conditions that they had laid down, and the undertakings that they had given to him. The imam asked him. ‘What is this present that you have brought with you: some leaves of *gat*; some coffee beans and some sugar? I’ll not accept it. God has already given us. and handed over to us your wealth, and the right to lay waste your lands. So, now, take your gift and go back whence you have come,’

The patrician took his gift and went to see ‘Addoli. Weeping, he sat down beside him and told him what the imam had said to him. Thereupon ‘Addoli and

those of the imam's circle went to see the imam who said to the wazir 'Addoli and to those with him, 'Don't you see how these people⁴¹ ' are playing games with us by sending us this gift? We will occupy their region, and lay it waste.'

The wazir 'Addoli and the chiefs replied. 'We gain no benefit by occupying this region. Our view is that we should accept their gift from them, clothe them both in garments of honour, and let them return to their companions. We, for our part, should cross over the river 'Awas, and attack the king. If God gives us the victory then this region will belong to us, and whenever we want it, it will be ours.'

This view met with the approval of the imam who said, 'What you propose is excellent,' and agreed to the gift.

Then he approached the patrician Zin and said to him: 'For now', we will accept your gift from you both. If we march against the king, don't you invade our country or go to the aid of the king of Abyssinia. You be faithful to all that you have promised us.' Zin replied: 'I agree gladly. Our companions have sworn an oath concerning this, and we swear to you that we shall act justly towards you⁵.

Then Zin and the captive 'Amdu gave their word, the imam clad them both in garments of honour, and they went and reported back to their companions.

The imam and the Muslims, drew up their battle lines and set off on the route for Ayfars.⁴¹⁴ The king of Abyssinia, meanwhile, had received news, that is to say, reports of the defeat of his army and of the killing of his patricians in the land of Zari, He was in a place called Geberge in the land of W'aj,⁴¹⁵ and was thereupon cast down by a terrible grief. He was under the impression, however, that the Muslims had gone back down to their own country, and commented: 'The Muslims have taken much booty: and have gone down to their own country.' He stayed in Geberge. The Muslims, meanwhile, had set out from the region of Ayfiirs for the region of the Maya.

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him, says: Upon the Muslims' entering the region of the Maya, the imam called his companions together and said: 'The Maya possess only [a few] cattle. The region's roads are impassable, and overgrown with trees. If you were to steal their cattle, they would harass the Muslims, for they are skilled with the javelin, and their arrows are poisoned. So touch none of their cattle.' They replied, 'Willingly'.

[Ahmad obliges his troops to abandon their booty]

The imam noted the vast quantity of booty that each person had With him:

around two-hundred mules, and slaves. He thereupon summoned the whole army and said to them: 'What are all these work horses, mules and slaves which you have gathered together? Where are you going with them?' They replied: "We kept them, thinking to return with them to our country, but now we'll take them wherever you tell us.' The imam said to them: 'Are we waging a *jihad*, or are we collecting work horses, mules, heavy baggage and slaves? If you have these things with you, how are you going to be able to fight the idol-worshippers, preoccupied as you are with this'⁹ 'What should we do?' they asked. He replied, 'I'll let you know what is to be done'.

Then they set out [f'44] until they reached a narrow defile between two mountains. The imam was at the head of the army. He halted on the narrow defile and waited for the army to catch up to him. He said to them, regarding this matter, 'Throw away your possessions. None of you may travel except with his mule, and with whatever slaves he had [before]. Let him ride upon that, and let that suffice. If any of you disobeys me, I will cut off his head.' So they jettisoned their booty in the region of the Maya, with much weeping and crying. The imam stood his ground on the road, from the time of the morning prayer, until the time of the afternoon prayer while they threw' everything to the side of the army. The valley and the roads were filled with slaves, and with the pack-animals that had carried the booty like donkeys.⁴¹⁶

After this they set out and reached Marzir, in the region of Maya, beneath Mount Zeqala where there was a mighty church but it. The wazir

¹ Adoli was in the van of the army. When they drew near to the church, they gave free rein to their horses around the district, killing, and plundering horses and furnishings. When the Muslims approached, the people of the district who looked after the church had taken its furnishings and cloth, and tried to take them up into the nearby mountain.

[Wanag Sagad summons Wasan Sagad]

The Muslim cavalry pursued them and killed them, seizing their furnishings and their silk cloth. After the imam and the army arrived with the rear guard, they pitched their camp beneath the church which they put to the torch during the night. The king of Abyssinia was two days' march away from the church. He had no idea that the Muslims had arrived at the church until he saw the fire at night and realised that they were moving in his direction. He sent a messenger to the patrician Wasan Sagad who was in the region of Da mot, to say to him: 'Catch up with me, for the Muslims are heading towards me.'

Likewise he sent to Ura'i 'Utman. governor of Itat. He became a Muslim after he had been baptised against his will when, taken prisoner, the king had had him baptised. Ura'T¹ Utman, who had a mighty army with him, met up with the king's messenger on the road and they marched in the direction of the king Wanag Sagad. Wasan Sagad was then a long way from the king, in the territory of Damot.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: with regard to the Muslims, they set out from Zeqala and readied the region of Lalibala¹ in the territory of Fatagar. and spent the night by the river Dukam. Their goal was Badeqe. They assumed that the king of Abyssinia would ward off their attack and prevent their entering Badeqe which was the king's village, just as he had resisted them during the campaign of Scmbcra Kore. The imam then said: ⁴ We shall enter Badeqe, and when the king comes against us, we shall give him battle.'

[The king orders the burning of his homes in Badeqe]

When the Muslims reached the river Dukam they noticed a fire blazing in the middle of Badeqe. The imam summoned the patrician Haib, who converted to Islam, and asked him, 'Where is this fire?' Haib replied, 'This fire is in the king's village of Badeqe.' The imam asked him, 'Do you know why they have lighted this fire?' 'No, I don't know,' he replied, 'but let us spend the night here, and when it is morning we shall have news.'

While they were cogitating over the matter of the fire, all of a sudden who should come to them but some Muslim merchants who dwelt in Badeqe. They had stolen some of the king's money, and came with it to the imam and gave it to him. He asked them the reason for burning the houses, and sought news of the whereabouts of the king. They replied, 'With regard to the king, he is in the region of Geberge. With regard to the setting of the fire, the king sent one of his patricians whom he had instructed: "Go to Badeqe and bum my house, and the houses of my brothers novv_T before the Muslims outmanoeuvre you, lest they put them to the torch, and say: *we burnt the house of the king*. I will forestall them, and burn them myself' And then he said, "But. do not bum the church as our holy books do not permit us to bum it." So the patrician whom he had sent, burnt the houses, as you have seen."

[Farasaham 'All bums down the church at Badeqe]

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him. says: The next morning the imam sent off a raiding party commanded by Farasaham 'All whose nickname was Ankarasah. Accompanying him was Mattan the Somali. He said to them: 'Bum the church'. They set out, arrived at Badeqe and burned the church down. Its acroterial ornaments^{41*} were of gold, and the cross above it was of red gold. They stripped it

of its gold and burnt it and plundered its furnishings, which the Christians of the village had left behind in three trenches. But as for gold, they found nothing there apart from what they took from the church.

The imam, meantime, marched with his army from Dukam and entered Andutna,⁴¹⁴ a village of the king Wanag Sagad. To return to Farasaham 'All and Mattan: the two of them joined the imam in the above-mentioned village. In Andutna was the house of the Abyssinian king, in which were paintings, images of lions, of human beings, of birds, depicted in red, yellow, green and white and other colours.^{JJ>} The Muslims entered the house, and were amazed at what was in it; and then burnt it.

At that moment the king of Abyssinia saw the fire that burnt his house down. Between him and his house there was only a day's journey. He felt angry and extremely grief-stricken, even more than before, when his home in Badeqc was burnt by his own order. He said to his patricians: These Muslims have entered my town and burnt down my house. After this I think that it would be better for me to die, than to have to see the things that the Muslims have done.' And then he wept.

[The 'Awas in flood separates Christians and Muslims]

He assembled his forces, mobilised his army, arranged his soldiers in battle formation, harnessed his horses, and loaded them with their equipment, and then set out against the Muslims. The river 'Awas separated them, and was a barrier between them. When the Abyssinian dog reached the 'Awas, it was so full of water that no one could cross it, neither the Muslims nor the infidels. The king then arrayed his army, and disposed his troops and stood, upstream of the 'Awas.

The Muslims, meantime, did not know that the 'Awas was flooded, until they sent scouts to discover news of the infidels for them. The scouts set out and reached the 'Awas, and discovered that it was flooded, and also saw in the distance the army that the king had drawn up in battle array. So the scouts returned to the wazir 'Addoli and informed him about the Christians. 'Addoli then went to the imam and told him what the scouts had reported [f'45] about the infidels.

Immediately the imam sent thirty Muslim cavalry to find out the truth about the Christians. Amongst them was 'Abd an-Nasr, governor of Ganz, Basarah, Sam'aun, 'All Waradi and Sabr ad-Dln, and their like. They arrived at the 'Awas where they saw the infidel army drawn up on the river bank, on the opposite side to them.

After exchanging insults the Muslims turned round and went to the imam and told him what they had seen, and what had happened to them, and that the river

‘Awas was in flood. The imam asked them, ‘Who is leading them - their commander?’ They replied, ‘The king himself is with them.’ So the Muslims took counsel amongst themselves, with the imam saying: ‘We

will spend the night here, and send out a party to gather provisions, and in the morning we'll set out against them, if God Almighty is willing. If we can find a way [across the river], well and good; if not, then we'll fire our cannon.’ They replied, ‘To hear is to obey’. Immediately he paraded the troops and sent off some of them to gather provisions.

Wanag Sagad, the king of Abyssinia, and his army, meantime, remained upstream of the ^kAwas until the sun was low in the west. Then they discussed among themselves saying, ‘We have no way of reaching the Muslims, nor have they a way of reaching us. Let us set out for the region of Warabba⁴⁻¹ and set up camp there.’ So they set out for that place.

The storyteller says: When the idol-worshippers set out from the river ‘Awas, consternation and dread overcame those who were in the rearguard, and they jettisoned by the wayside eight cannon that they had with them.

[Garad Jausah finds a hidden treasure]

Because it was raining the Muslims delayed their journey for two days. On the third day they set out and arrived at the river ‘Awas which they found to be in flood, and they rested there. Then the imam sent Garad Jausah to collect provisions.

He set out with a party and arrived above Bararah.⁴²² There was a church there that belonged to the former king whose name was Na’od bin Admas, and of which the Muslims had no knowledge. They had only gone there looking for cattle and provisions. When the Muslims reached the church they found it stacked with gold. There was gold plate in the church, gold and silver bowls, and silken furnishings.

They took vast booty, and turned round and returned to the imam who was then upstream from the river ‘Awas. He questioned them about the district and whether they had encountered any resistance. They replied: ‘The infidels are on the other bank, upstream from the ‘Awas. The whole countryside is brimming over with gold and silver, all its mountains and valleys: and its churches are filled with gold, silver and silk.¹

The imam said, ‘Now let us see if all that they have said is true, just as they have reported it.’ So he summoned a man called Mergay Nasr whom the Muslims

had captured at Zari, and who had converted to Islam with a sincere conversion. Mergay Nasr presented himself, and the imam, may the Almighty God have mercy upon him. asked him about the countryside and what it contained. Nasr said, 'Your companions have spoken the truth in what they said: the whole countryside is rich in gold and silver. All the wealth of the Christians is in this district because they had never heard of any Muslim arriving in this area, and for this reason they felt confident about leaving their wealth there/ The imam said to them, 'Whatever each one takes, is his.' Then the Muslims raided the district, killing the people and the monks.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: The idol- worshippers did nothing except by the advice of the monks, who urged them to act dishonourably, and egged them on to fight the Muslims.

Afterwards, these plundered a vast booty of gold, silver and silk: the Muslims split up around the region, plundering. As one came back with booty, another set out seeking plunder. This pattern of behaviour went on for quite some time.

After this the imam Ahmad, may Almighty God have mercy upon him, fell sick. The malady worsened during the month of Ramadan^{4'''} and he rested twenty days. The Muslims wept because the imam was ill, and besought Almighty God for him.

While the imam was sick, the Muslims accumulated vast booty. For the flood on the river 'Awas abated, and its water level fell. Then the Muslim cavalry crossed the river 'Awas, while the imam remained in his camp. The Muslims took the cannon that the idol-worshippers had thrown away, and

plundered an uncountable quantity of gold, silver and silk over twenty days of Ramadan. Small and great among the Muslims became wealthy, and there was no longer any poverty amongst them.

[The Muslims bum down the patriarchal church]

They burnt down a mighty church that belonged to the patriarch, the father of the idol-worshippers. For the Christians derive their religion only from a patriarch who comes from Egypt. They pay the ruler of Egypt one- thousand ounces of gold to purchase him, and this Christian then becomes their chief and they call him *abur*^{AIA} The king does nothing except at his word and the Christians, the priests and the monks, all pay him honour, and do nothing except at his command.

If he becomes angry at them he will say:¹ 'I take away your religion from you,' 'I

annul your marriage to your wife,' 'I forbid you to drink wine'. ' If he speaks thus to them they never cease to belittle themselves to him, and to ingratiate themselves with him by valuable gifts, and to fast, until he says to them: *I restore to you your religion, your wives, and your wine/ And in that case, they rejoice.

It happened that this patriarch died, ~ and when he died, they placed him in a sarcophagus in the middle of the church. When the Muslims arrived at the church they took the gold, silver and silk that was in it, and then burnt the church down, along with the sarcophagus with the patriarch in it. *The storyteller*; may God have mercy upon him. says: As for the Abyssinian king, when the Muslims crossed over the 'Awas and reached Geberge and burnt down its houses, he saw the blaze and his patricians said to him, Those Muslims have crossed the 'Awas and have set fire to your dwellings that were in Geberge. Instantly he became fearful and full of dread. He set off for Warabba, reaching the region of Na/arajah^ bordering Damot where he stayed.

[Wasan Sagad berates the patricians]

Afterwards, Wasan Sagad his patrician came to him from Damot. The king told him what the Muslims had done to him [the king]: the despoliation of his territory, the burning down of his churches, and their incursions into the region of Warabba. Wasan Sajag said to him: 'This is a beautiful country: a land of wheat and barley, grapes and fruit: there is no place like it in Abyssinia. It alone provides the support for the king and his army.'

Wasan Sagad grieved over Warabba, and grew extremely angry'. After prostrating himself before the king, [f46] he said to him and to the king's [other] patricians, chamberlains and nobles: 'How have the Muslims been able to perpetrate this terrible thing against you? No Muslim was ever able to inflict on your fathers and ancestors who have died before you, what this man

- I mean the imam - has inflicted on you. It can only have occurred because of your sins and oppression of your people.⁴²⁷

'They have been a scourge upon you. these Muslims who eat only locusts.^{42*} Despite you, they have laid waste Dawaro and Fatagar, and Badeqe, the village of the king, and the region of Berarah. They have burnt your father, the patriarch and head of your religion and of your church. Now^r they have entered Warabba which is your Abyssinian paradise. They have seen its beauty and its fruits, and they will never abandon it'.

The storyteller, may Almighty God have mercy on him, says: When the patricians heard what Wasan Sagad their leader had to say, they grieved and wept, and said: 'You are the one we have been waiting for. Now that you have come to us, we shall die with you: we shall fight the Muslims by your side.' For he was highly regarded by them, and they feared him more than they feared the king.' He was a just man. according to their justice and according to their holy book, They used to call him 'Father of the Poor' in their language. Thereupon he said to them: 'Now, what's done is done. Act like men from now on, fight for the king's possessions, for your religion and for your country.'

[Wasan Sagad's letter to Ahmad]

Then he wrote a letter to the imam. After stating at the beginning his unbelief and immorality and what he desired, he went on: 'Now then, you are Muslims and we are Christians. We have travelled to your country and have devastated it and burnt it. And now God has let it be your turn. But your triumph will not be long-lived. So be content with what you have done and return to your country. You may well say to yourself, and recount, "I put the king to flight at Sembera Kore," and you may say, "I did [the same] at Antokya, and I did [the same] at Zari; I defeated the king's army."

'But now, don't gorge yourself to the point of vomiting.⁴⁻⁹ For the king's army has grown to its previous size;⁴³⁰ and with the king now is an army greater than any you've ever seen, or heard of before this. It comprises

Guragc,^{4,1} Gafat⁴³² and Damot, people from Enarya and Zait⁴" and Jimma,^{4,*4} and others like them even more numerous than they, from among the king's vassals. So go back home with your booty and your gold.

"Should you refuse to do this, then I challenge you to meet me on Saturday. It was I who long ago killed your brother Garad AbOn. son of Garad Ibrahim,⁴³² who was older than you in years. I routed his army, and did so more than once. Don't imagine that I am like any of the patricians whom you've encountered up till now'. I am Wasan Sagad.¹

[The dilemma of the Muslims]

He sent the letter off with a messenger who reached the wazir, 'Addoli, The imam, at that moment, was ill. 'Addoli went to the imam and gave him the news. And then he asked, 'What shall we do? If the messenger comes and sees you in this condition he will notify his companions about you and their resolve will be

strengthened.'

One of those who was present said, 'Well then, let your cousin Zaharbui Muhammad stand in for you. And when the messenger comes and looks [for you], we will say to him: 'Here is the imam'. But another of them said, 'No, that won't work, because many of the idol-worshippers would know the imam by sight. And when the messenger returns to them and says, "I saw the imam face to face," and they ask, "What did he look like?" and he describes the appearance of his cousin, they will know that his appearance is different from that of the imam, and will say that the imam is dead, and that another, of this appearance, has been substituted for him.

'No, this is not wise counsel. Rather, let the imam be clad in his gown and his outer garments, and let him put up with his sickness, and take his seat; and let the messenger come in to him.'⁷ To which the imam said, 'Your advice is excellent'.

[The response of the Muslims to the letter]

When it was early morning, all the Muslims assembled, arranged themselves in lines, flaunted their decorations, their horses, and their shields in a warlike fashion. Then the messenger came and presented the letter to the imam who learnt of its contents, and then told the Muslims what was in the letter.

One of the Muslims whose name was Balaw 'Abdu.⁴³⁶ spoke up, saying to the messenger: 'Tell your master this: "With regard to what you have to say about the matter of the vassals - the people of Damot and Gurage

- we know their capabilities only too well: they are nothing more than cultivators of the soil, tree-cutters and carriers of fire-wood in our country. They know nothing of fighting; they have never seen it. So you can't frighten us with the vassals: they are well-known to us. And if you are as powerful as you claim, since you can see that we occupy your country and your land, then fight for your country and your land".'

After him the emir Husain stood up and addressed him: 'Say to your master, "In regard to what you have mentioned about fighting us on Saturday, our sheikhs have informed us that you will die on Saturday! Of this there can be no doubt, if Almighty God wills it" '.

Then the imam said to the messenger, 'Say to your master: "We shall pursue you wherever you are. We shall follow your lord wherever he may be. And as for what you said about forcing us to return, we do not share this opinion. For a battle

is to our liking. It is what we came for. But we haven't met up with anybody to fight. If you are worth your salt, fight us for the sake of the king's possessions, for we shall not only never abandon this territory that we have now seized, we shall seize the whole of Abyssinia, if Almighty God wills it, as our Prophet, may God bless him and grant him salvation, has promised us when he said: *The earth was contracted for me: and I saw its eastern and western parts. My people shall impose its rule over all those parts that contracted themselves for me*^A 'We are putting our trust in that saying, if Almighty God so wills it.' Now you go back to your master and tell him this.'

So the messenger returned to Wasan Sagad and told him what they had said to him. He immediately went to pieces, overwhelmed by fear. Then he sent a second messenger to the imam, to say to him; 'I only said what I said the first time, out of fear of the king and the patricians. The fact is, I am too weak to fight you. even though the king and the patricians say to me: "Fight the Muslims". That's why I spoke as I did. And now the monks have told me that I will fall into your hands, [if this happens, please be merciful to me.'

The messenger came and told the imam what he said. The imam scoffed, and said to him ^LTcl 1 him, "If you fall into our hands, we will be merciful towards you,"

[Ahmad sends four knights to defend the Muslims of Berarah]

The storyteller,; may God have mercy upon him, says: After this, the Muslim people of Berarah came to the imam and said to him: 'We are afraid: give us some soldiers to watch over us, to protect us.' So the imam gave them

one of the Muslim knights, Absama Nur, along with three other knights, to protect the people of Berarah. These set off with them to their country of Berarah and stayed with them there [f⁴⁷].

One day while they were there, it happened that the king of Abyssinia had sent out a reconnaissance party from among the infidels, to bring news of the Muslims back to him. With them was a mighty force led by Ura'i Utman, the turncoat, comprising sixty knights and around one-thousand foot-soldiers. They reached Berarah and asked, 'Are there any of the Muslims here? To which they replied, 'There are four knights, amongst them Absama Nur. to

i *>o

protect the Muslims from the army of the idol-worshippers.¹ ' When they heard this, they advanced nearer the city.

It was Ramadan at that time and they were resting during the day while their equerries were keeping watch. When these heard the infidels and saw' them, they rushed to the knights and awakened them with the words: 'The infidels have overtaken us!' Then Absama Nur and his companions woke up in a hurry and saddled their horses, donned their breast-plates and body-plates and mounted their horses. When they saw how great was the enemy force, they headed in the direction of the imam.

[Another legend concerning Absama Nur]

The Author, may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: I heard from the imam that someone related of Absama Nur the following saying: *At that moment I heard someone reading in the presence of the imam. He was reading from the *kitab al-Musarri'* ^{4W} concerning the grace of the *jihad*: that he who runs away when he encounters people, abandons his soul; while he who confronts them, defends it.'

He went on, 'This saying touched my heart on that occasion, and I went back to my companions and said concerning this saying, "I heard such and such in the book." One of my companions whose name was Salih said, "That's right," and Absama Nur turned back towards the infidels, accompanied by Salih and his other companions. Then Absama Nur charged them, and with him charged Salih, into their midst; and the other two did likewise, breaking up their cohesion and dispersing their throng.

The patrician of Ifat, Eslamu hurled himself at Absama Nur and they thrust at each other with spears. The patrician pierced Absama Nur in the breast, while the latter stuck him, and the patrician turned tail and fled. At that, Absama Nur struck him a second and a third time and then a fourth. Salih also charged and stabbed at three of the infidels. Absama Nur meanwhile charged into the heart of the fray, against the renegade patrician Ura'i 'Utman. Salih charged with him against UraM'Utman, who when he saw the two of them making a bee-line in his direction, fled accompanied by his companions, with Absama Nur and his companions in pursuit, from midday until nightfall, slaying and taking prisoners. After capturing two important patricians they turned back, and returned to where the imam was.

They sent a messenger to the imam and the Muslims to announce the good news of what they had done. They readied the imam two days after the messenger. The two patricians were made to stand in the presence of the imam. The messenger whom Wasan Sagad had sent was in the presence of the imam when the latter ordered the two of them to be put to death, and saw the two of them killed. Then

the imam praised Absama Nur and all of the Muslims called down God's blessing upon him. The infidel knights, on the other hand, feared Absama Nur and stood in awe of his valour, may Almighty God have mercy upon him.

[Ahmad sets off in pursuit of Wanag Sagad on Sunday May 1, 1531 AD]

The storyteller; may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: When twenty-three days of Ramadan had passed, in the year nine-hundred-and-

thirty-seven,⁴⁴⁰ the imam recovered from his sickness and determined to set out for the land of Damot in search of the place where the king of Abyssinia was. So the imam and the Muslims discussed among themselves the matter of the march.

The Muslims said, 'We have come this far,' and they offered arguments to the imam, saying to him: The land of Damot is far from here; and none of us knows the road to it, and we have no guide with us. The same can be said for the land of Warabba - it is all clay and swamp and paths beaten by the infidels.⁴⁴¹ Horses and mules cannot enter it without stumbling.⁴⁴² The imam replied, 'Stop making these excuses! You want to go

home to your country.'

Then he summoned a man who had converted to Islam and was with the emir Husain, and questioned him about the route. He said, 'I am familiar with the whole of Abyssinia, the road to Warabba, the road to Damot and the road to Gojjam. I will take you to Aksum,⁴⁴ and will guide you wherever you

want to go. I know it all.'

The imam blessed him, and clad him in garments of honour. They set out, and entered the land of Warabba, making camp in a town called Zararah. a large town where Christian merchants from Egypt and Christians from Syria lived; including some originally from these places who were born in Abyssinia. They dwelt there, and were attached to it because of its wholesome air.

Turning now to the king of Abyssinia, and W'asan Sagad the patrician ; the latter said to the king: 'At present the Muslims are behind us. If we all enter Damot, the countryside there is hemmed-in. and the Muslims will pursue us. and not give way before us. So. you must go deeper into Damot while I withdraw behind the Muslim lines, and march in the direction of their country. When they learn about me, that I am heading for their country, they will pursue me. I, for my part, will let them have their way until they reach Dawaro where they will split up

and go back down to their own country. Then I shall rejoin you.'

The king accepted his counsel, and set off for Damot while Wasan Sagad turned round and headed for Dawaro. He reached the land of Waj, and set up camp above the Maya, behind the Muslims.

The storyteller says: The Muslims, meanwhile, remained in Zararah for around fifteen days and then some of the spies of the imam, may God have mercy upon him, reached him, and informed him, 'The king has entered the land of Damot, while Wasan Sagad has turned back to your rear from the land of Waj, wanting to mislead you into thinking that he intends to continue on down into your country. His stratagem is to get you to chase him, and if you do chase him and arrive at Dawaro, your army will break up. This is nothing more than one of his tricks. Now you will know what it is you have to do.'

Thereupon the imam said to the Muslims: 'All right, we are going to go after the Christian dog, their king. We shall pursue him to the land of Damot and when Wasan Sagad learns that we have headed for Damot he may set out for the land of Damot to help out his master; or he may remain where he is, in which case we have no cause to be concerned on his account. And if he does go down to our country, well, let him go if he is able to do so. We for our part will make a bee-line for the king of Abyssinia wherever he may be.'

So the Muslims set out and entered Wiz⁴⁴⁶ which was an imposing city with a vast market-place unlike any other in Abyssinia. Only gold was used for trading there.

Then they set out from the village of Wiz and entered [^48] the land of Qob.³ Setting out from Qob, they entered Masar McCeg. In their language, Mccccg means 'narrow gate/ and Masar is the name of one of the regions of Damot. The Muslims halted above Masar Mcecg and the imam said to them, 'Widen this gate, tear down its stones and cut down its [surrounding] trees until you have opened up a wide pathway, and then pass through the gateway.' This they did, and they passed the night in Suq Wayzaro.⁴⁴⁶

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him, says: When news that the Muslims had taken the land of Damot reached the king of Abyssinia, he was in an inaccessible mountain, with only one road into it. This road was guarded by a gate called Gurage in the region of Damot.

He drew up his troops and his forces on top of the mountain and placed UraT

‘Utman bin Dar ‘AIT, governor of Fatagar, in charge of the gate. He was, at that time, an apostate. The king ordered him to hold the gate with his army, while he would remain on the side of the mountain in a place called Dakan Dur⁴⁴ which means ‘Elephant's Dwelling’.

The Muslims meanwhile departed from Suq Wayzaro and encamped beneath the Gurage gate and they and the idol-worshippers faced one another through the gate. The idol-worshippers drew up their troops above the gate, and the Muslims, when they saw the idol-worshippers, conferred amongst themselves. ‘Addoli, Balaw ‘Abd and their followers said, ‘These have blocked the road and the gate against us, and there is no other road we can take than this one. So let us pass the night here, and fire our cannon. And when morning comes let us fight them.’

[Ahmad decides not to spend the night before the Gurage Gate]

Thereupon the emir Zaharbui Muhammad, ‘Abd an-Nasr and Garad Ahmusa said: ‘Were we to pass the night in this place, the patrician Wasan Sagad could come up behind us and hold the gate of Masar Meceg against us, and we will end up between the two mountains from which we'll not be able to go back, or go up. So, instead, let us begin the battle immediately, and go up against them. And may God grant us the victory.’ The imam said, ‘Your advice is most sound,’ and setting aside the counsel of the first two, he drew up his army, making them battle-ready.

So they drew close to the gate that Ura‘i ‘Utman was holding, and they and the idol-worshippers confronted one another, while, at the same time, the imam and his army moved away from the gate and went in the direction of *Canopus* to Dakan Dur, in search of the king. He left the wazir ‘Addoli at the gate, and arrived at Dakan Dur with his army without the king’s knowing that they had arrived in this place. For it was very confined, and no one knew the way to it. This is what the king of Abyssinia believed about it, thinking that no one could reach Dakan Dur.

[The battle for Dakan Dur]

When the imam arrived there he found three gates, into which trees and briars had been squeezed until they were blocked up. He ordered some of his foot-soldiers, commanded by Samsu, to place their shields over the trees and thorns and to walk on top of the shields, thus passing through the gate, and entering the place they so dearly sought. After they had opened the gate, they moved aside all the trees that had been blocking it. and then the imam and all his army went through.

The king of Abyssinia said to the people of Tetre: ‘Stop the Muslims at the gate, before they pass through it.’ So the people of Tetre set out for the side of the gates, but found that the Muslims had got there before them. And they stood in a

narrow defile quite close to the Muslims.

When the latter saw them, some of the Muslim cavalry headed in their direction, among them the sheikh Mika'el son of the sheikh Dajnah, Mattan the Somali, Saidl Muhammed, 'Abd an-Nasr, Ura'i Abun, the emir Abu Bakr, Ura'i 'Utman bin 'AIT and Kabir Muhammad, and about forty other horsemen of their ilk.

They galloped through a valley there and met up with the Christians. The Muslims charged into the idol-worshippers and the ferocious battle that ensued was unprecedented.

The *sum* of Saraye in Tegre, whose name was Takla charged the sheikh Mika'el and struck him in the foot with his spear, breaking the bone. The spear came out, glistening, from the other side. He was laid up for two days, and then he died. May Almighty God have mercy upon him, with the mercy that he reserves for the godly.

[*Amda Mika'el son of Robel is killed]

Then a patrician of the idol-worshippers, called "Amda Milka'el bin Robel whose father was killed in the battle of Sembera Kore charged against the emir Abu Bakr Qatin. Both of them delivered blows with their spears - the patrician struck the emir Abu Bakr's horse - whose name was *Rakmah*⁴⁴⁴ - in the neck. The tip of the spear went through to the other side. He pulled the spear out and struck it a second blow, on its right leg.

After that the emir Abu Bakr struck the patrician "Amda in the breast, with the spear point emerging, glistening, from his back. Then he pulled it out. When the patrician felt the spear thrust, he and the emir Abu Bakr seized hold of each other, and fought each other. Thereupon a cousin of the patrician

charged to his cousin's aid, and struck the emir Abu Bakr in his back. At which 'Abd an-Nasr charged the one who had struck the emir Abu Bakr. and struck him a fatal blow with his spear so that he fell, dead, from his horse. May God cast his soul into Hell, 'And a sad place it is'.

Then 'Amdu, may Almighty God not have mercy upon him, fell dead from the spear-blow of the emir Abu Bakr. When their companions saw that the two of them were killed, they turned tail, pursued by the Muslims who were killing and taking captives.

They captured two patricians from Tegre - one of these w'as the *sum* of Sarayc,

Takla, who killed the sheikh Mika'el: Ura'i Abun was his captor; and the other was the *sum* of Sajara whose captor was the equerry of Garad Saddiq governor of Sarkah. Eight patricians from Tegre were killed, but only one Muslim died. The Muslims took around twenty of their horses as prizes of war; the remainder lied to the king.

[The king learns of the rout]

The leading patrician was Iyona'el. He it was who fled with the remnants of the army. When he reached the king he told him that the Muslims had breached the gate, and killed the patricians. Upon hearing that, the king became extremely agitated,^{4^} He announced: 'Amda Mika'el bin Robel has been killed.' for he was revered amongst the Christians. His son, who was courageous, then inherited his father's title. There were one-hundred-and-fifty Nubian slaves in his father's cavalry who would fight under the leadership of their lord. In this he was like his father.

The king then left his encampment, abandoning the land of Damot, and set out for the country of Waj. Urai 'Utman the apostate, in the meantime, set out from the Gurage gate, when he had heard that the king had taken flight, and rejoined him [f'49] As for the wazir 'Addoli whom the imam had left behind at the gate: he passed the night on the road, and met up with the imam who was above Dakan Dur. They then set out in pursuit of the king.

[The flight and the fate of the Christians in the depths of autumn]

Now, it was autumn. And it was the custom of the Abyssinians that when autumn arrived they stayed four months indoors, for rain poured from the heavens night and day.⁴ The Muslims, nevertheless, marched in the rain and the cold. The ground turned into clay from the excess of rain and the Muslims became exhausted. The camels were being crushed under the weight of the cannon so they jettisoned them. Seven of them were their own, and there were six [others] that they had captured from the idol-worshippers. All of them they threw away, along with their tents, because of the hardship of the journey, and the mud. The king, meanwhile, was fleeing before them. The Muslims pursued him until they drove him into a village called Wih Yahar - a place that was deadly cold.

The *storyteller*, may God have mercy on him, says: When the idol-worshippers reached this village, three-hundred of them died from the cold and the rain, but God saved the Muslims. The imam and his army halted when they saw that the idol-worshippers had perished from the cold; and then made camp. As for the king of Abyssinia, Wanag Sagad: he pitched no camp that night, but set out by night on a forced march until he reached the land of Gabarge.

[Wasan Sagad's exhortation to the king and the patricians]

The patrician Wasan Sagad was in Waj. But he set out from Waj and joined forces with his lord. The king recounted to him what the Muslims had done in the land of Damot. Then Wasan Sagad said to the patricians in the presence of the king: 'How' could you have done this? It is contemptible! How could you have fled? You have abandoned the land of Damot which is inaccessible, with forbidding mountains and narrow defiles. You were

holding the gate and the road against the Muslims, and still you were put to flight. Were you frightened of dying? Your fathers and your ancestors died for the sake of their religion. They never saw anything to compare with this shame. As for me, I shall die fighting for my religion. You do as you think fit, when I am dead/

The patricians then said to him: 'God preserve you. If you die, then our religion dies. So, do not say "I shall die," for you are our chief/ So he said to them, 'All right now, where did you leave the Muslims?' To which they replied, 'We did not leave them in a place that we recognised, for they were pursuing us.' Then he said. 'Where is the patrician of Waj, Eslam Dahar, son⁴⁷² of Korn Dahar, son-in-law of king Eskender, married to his daughter who was a cousin on her father's side of king Wanag Sagad bin Na'od?'

[Eslam Dahar's strategy]

The *storyteller*.; may God have mercy upon him, says: When the patrician of Waj had presented himself, Wasan Sagad said to him: 'Now, the king has arrived in your country, and you know best where he must go. Inform us about some place that is impenetrable and easily defensible where we can establish ourselves. And when the Muslims reach us, I shall fight them and do battle with them, along with you.' He replied, 'Very well! You are at present in Gabarge. Go down to the market-place of Wiz Gabaya in the land of Waj. When the Muslims arrive, I will take you to a place that no one can reach.' They replied, 'We agree,' and set out from Gabarge and reached the market-place of Wiz Gabaya⁴¹ ' and camped there.

In the meantime, the Muslims had remained two days in the cold place, and then set out and arrived at the land of Warabba on the border with Waj, close to Gabarge. Between them and the army of the Christians was a two-days' journey made with heavy baggage and tents.

They pitched their camp there, and sent some of the knights in the vanguard to bring them back news of the place where the king was. These

comprised 'Abd an-Nasr, and two-hundred knights who were under his command. [The imam] said to him, 'Head for Gabargc, which is the place of the king, and bring back news of it for us.' So he set out immediately and reached Gabarge. They saw^r the vanguard of the idoi-worshippers, who likewise saw them.

[The imam rejects Haib's counsel]

The idol-worshippers fled on their horses, leaving their mules which the Muslims took as booty. The idol-worshippers fled to their king and told him that the Muslims w^rere behind them because they thought that 'Abd an- Nasr was the imam with his army. The king said to the patrician Eslam Dahar: 'The Muslims have reached us. Where are you going to take us now?' Thereupon the patrician of the land of Waj set out with them and conducted them to a place that was easily defensible, and they made camp there. 'Abd an-Nasr, for his part, returned to the imam and told him what he had done. The king fled towards Waj, wtiile the Muslims halted at Tararaqat⁴⁴ in the land of Warabba and then took counsci amongst themselves.

Then a man who had converted to Islam, Haib by name, spoke to the imam, saying: 'At present the king is making for Waj. This is to our benefit, for afterwards he'll not be able to escape. If he flees in the direction of Guragc, his enemies are there; and if he flees to Dawaro we shall pursue him. There is no other road he can take. We can set out from our position and reach him in two days.'

The Muslims were of the following opinion: 'We should not pursue him now, but only when he moves away to another locality.' Others of them said: 'We should not inarch against the king, especially to Dawaro, for if we reach Dawaro the army will split up on us, and go back down to their own countries, because the majority of them would love to go back down to their own homes. Instead, let us march on the land ofSawa,⁴⁵³ for that is where the

king's treasure house and wealth is.' When the imam saw that the greater part of them supported this opinion, he said to Haib, "You be quiet; we shall follow' the opinion of these others. The king shall be in our power, God willing/

Then the Muslims returned, marching to the land of Sawa by way of the town of Wiz. The imam sent a raiding party under the command of'Abd an-Nasr to Andaqbatan^{4'''} in the land of Sawa, near which w as the spring from which flowed the river ⁴ Awas. There was a church there which belonged to the former kings, and in which there was wealth and treasure. The imam commanded him to bum down the church, to take possession of the valuables, and to kill the people. Then the party set out. He despatched another raiding party which he entrusted to the

command of the emir Husain, ordering him to set out for a place called Daradbam⁴⁷ in the land of Sawa. There was a church there that belonged to the king Wanag Sagad. He had given this imposing structure to his son, Fiqtar,⁴⁸ and he called it by the name of his son.⁴⁴ It contained treasure comprising vessels of gold and silver, and high quality silk.

[Rivalry between 'Abd an-Nasr and the emir Husain]

When 'Abd an-Nasr arrived at the church as the imam had ordered him, he found nothing in it, for its custodians had moved what was in it to the country of Gafat. So he burnt the church down. The emir Husain set out with his raiding party [f°50] and 'Abd an-Nasr followed him. He had a guide with him who said to him, 'I know a route that will enable us to arrive before the emir Husain.' When 'Abd an-Nasr heard this he said to him, 'Direct us'. So the guide set out by a different route and they reached the church a day before the emir Husain. He burnt it down, and took the treasure that was in it as booty.

When the emir Husain arrived at the church he found that 'Abd an-Nasr had burnt it down. A heated argument developed between the two of them. The emir Husain asked,^k 'Why did you act in so high-handed a fashion, coming to the place that the imam ordered me to come to?' 'Abd an-Nasr replied: 'This is the country of the idol-worshippers: any one of us can do whatever lies within his power.' Thus he placated him, gave him some of the valuables, and pacified him; and they all returned to the imam. Each of the companions of 'Abd an-Nasr took his portion of the booty and they gave the imam the rest: silver dishes, and images that resembled animals, including birds and wild-beasts, with each representative animal made of silver; ^ and a vast quantity of fabrics including two curtains the like of which no one - Arab or non-Arab - had ever seen: they were valued at one-hundred ounces of gold.

[A welcome from the king's tailors; and a wild storm]

The imam, at that time, was in the land of Aburat, above the spring of "Awas.⁴⁶¹ The people of Warabba and the people of Sawa voluntarily submitted to the payment of the poll-tax. and secured peace for their countries. Then the Muslims set out for Berarah, and during the course of their journey they seized gold, silver and silk as booty. They travelled for ten days on the road in this manner and when they drew near to Berarah the people of Berarah made overtures to the Muslims.

The people of this town were the king of Abyssinia's tailors.^{4h:} They also used to make the protective armour used for the horses, and wherever he went, they

used to go. But when the king fled to Waj. they returned to Berarah and extended to the Muslims a hospitable reception.

The storyteller.; may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: I experienced a fearsome night of wind and rain when we camped near Berarah. The sky darkened, and the darkness became pitch-black. The stars were swoltowed up by it. The wind and rain that pelted us was as if from an upturned water-skin. I saw^r the wind pick up a tent from the ground and make it fly above the tent that stood next to it. All the tents were plucked up. I saw the imam and his concubine Hajarah, and two men from among his companions struggling to hold the tents down, while they proclaimed the Uniqueness and the Greatness of God, as if they were absolutely convinced that they were going to die in that place. Then God removed the darkness, the wind and the rain, from them. The Muslims gathered around the imam and asked, 'How was it last night?' The people said, 'It was Noah's Flood'.

[Abu Bakr and ¹ Addoli are sent on forays]

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him, says: The Muslims remained around six days in Berarah. Then some people from the district spoke to the imam, saying to him, 'Close by you here there is a church building that is very imposing.' The imam asked, 'In which region is it?' To which they replied, 'In the region of Gcrarah ^{4f1>} And in that place there is a vast⁴⁶⁴ river called Auramah, along the banks of which there is a church called Dabra Libanos^{46"} which the Christians hold in high esteem, and to which all people of the Christian religion go in pilgrimage.^{4^} They make votive-offerings to it of drapes, golden and silver vessels, and wax candles as big as tree-trunks, This was the first church built in Abyssinia. ' No church can be compared with it, other than those of Aksum and Lalibala/ He asked them, 'How far away from it arc wc?' They replied, 'A six-day march'.

Thereupon the imam Ahmad, may Almighty God have mercy upon him. summoned the emir Abu Bakr Qatm and gave him command over three- hundred knights, amongst whom were the emir Mujahid, Absama Nur, and Del Sagad and others of their ilk. They set out with the guide during the rainy season. Before the Emir Abu Bakr and his army had returned, the people of Berarah went to the imam and said, 'We know the whereabouts of the king's treasures that used to be in Badcqc; and we will lead you to them.'

So the imam sent off the w^razir^rAddoli and his army to Badeqe. He took possession of the valuables, just as they had indicated that he would, and stayed six days there, plundering booty from the regions of Fatagar and Masin before returning to the imam who was [still] in Berarah. He took to the imam the treasures

- gold and silver plates, and silk of every hue - which the imam, in turn, gave to the people of Mahra^{46N} who were fighting alongside him.

These stayed permanently by the imam, and consequently were unable to take part in the forays into the surrounding regions like the rest of the army. This was why he gave them to them. 'Addoll also gave him news of the King, saying: 'the King is in the region of Waj, and between us and him lies a journey of two days. But at this moment the river 'Awas which separates us is in full flood.'

The storyteller. may God have mercy upon him, says: Regarding the king of Abyssinia: when he heard that the imam w'as in Berarah, he said, 'These Muslims have entered Berarah and have laid waste the region; and now they are going back down to their own country. But I will march against them now, cross over the 'Awas, take up a defensible position, and fight them."

[The Abyssinians cross the flooded 'Awas]

And then the king said to the foreigners⁴⁶⁹ who were with him, forty men in all, 'construct something from your country for me, so that we can cross the river 'Awas in it.¹ So they constructed some boats⁴ ^{1J} for him. Then he ordered his own people to make, according to the custom of their country, something by means of which they could cross the river: in their language it is called a /aka. They made 500 of them for him.

The patrician Wasan Sagad then arose, kissed the ground before him and said, 'We have done as you bade us. I am your servant. Let me march against them. I will hold the Gate of Amajah, and if they come I will fight them. If they kill me, do as you see fit. But as for you and your ilk, do not set out at this time. This is not the custom of kings. Let me spare you the trouble.'

The king thanked him for what he said, as did the patricians who said to him, 'You are our father. You know all our concerns, and you administer them like some one who treats well those whom he loves.'⁴⁷¹

Thereupon the King entrusted him with an immense force, made up of the people of Dawaro, the people of Fatagar and the people of Ifat with their chiefs, Ura'i 'Utman the apostate, and others besides. Then the King farewelled him, and they set out, boarding the boats and crossing the 'Awas. He entered Fatagar and halted at the gate called Qarqara.

The storyteller,; may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: When 'Addoli left Badeqe for Berarah he informed the imam about the King and what he, along

with Wasan Sagad, was doing: that the latter had crossed the 'Awas and had camped at the Qarqara gate. He said: T wanted to go against him, but I feared to do so without your leave.'

[The imam forestalls waverers amongst his troops]

The imam then consulted the Muslims about what should be done. 'We are now in autumn,' they all said, 'and in the rainy season. And if we set out at this time, we will be as worn out as we were in the first instance. We would rather stay here until the rainy season passes. Afterwards we can march against him and fight him.'

When the imam heard [f°51] what they had to say, he said to them, 'Very well, you've said only what is best. Go back to your camp.* So they departed from the imam, who remained by himself

Then he sought out Garad Ahmusa, a man of honourable intentions, and of good advice. The imam asked him, 'Did you hear what the Muslims had to say?' To which he replied, 'T was present with them, and heard what they said: they were unanimous about staying until the rainy season had passed.' Then the imam asked him, 'But you, let me have your opinion. 'They want the rainy season to end,' he said, 'and when it is over " they will say to you.⁴⁷ ' "Set off with us now, to fight." When you have set out and entered the land of Fatagar, if you encounter the enemy they will fight; otherwise they will go back to their country in the land of Sa'd al-Dm. And if you don't run

into the enemy, they will make out a case with you for their going back down. If you allow them to, they will go down. But if you don't permit them to go down, then each and every one of them will go down nevertheless, and you will be left by yourself."

So the imam asked him, 'If this is what you have to say, what should we do now?' Garad Ahmusa replied, 'I know what you should do. Let us remain [here] until the emir Abu Bakr Qatin reaches us. He has warriors with him. When he arrives he and his force will take our place in the camp, we will leave our women and our baggage with him, and set out immediately against him [the king]. If God gives us the victory then we will kill the king of Abyssinia, and all its people will convert to Islam. The river "Awas will [still] be in flood and there will be no way for the Muslims to go back down. In any case, they will be completely taken up with plundering. On the other hand, if the rainy season passes without any fighting it will be beyond our capability to hold them back. All the soldiers will leave because they want to go back down; and there is no emir, however great or small, who does not want to go down to his own country'. The imam listened to what he

had to say and then said to him, 'What you have advised is excellent. But now, keep your reasoning strictly to yourself; confide it to no one else and be patient until the emir Abu Bakr Qatin arrives.' So they remained where they were, looking out for him.

[Abu Bakr Qatin spares the church of Dabra Libanos]

The storyteller,; may God have mercy upon him, says: Abu Bakr Qatin, meanwhile, set out for the church that we spoke of, and reached it, making camp in its vicinity. The monks who lived there fled to an impregnable mountain. But afterwards some of them went back to their church, saying, 'If they burn our church, which is a place of pilgrimage for us,⁴ " they will have to burn us along with it/ So they entered it, and stayed inside it. waiting for it to be set on fire.

Others of them, on the other hand, sent to the emir Abu Bakr saying to him, 'Burning the church will be of no benefit to you. Give up the idea of burning it, and we will give you whatever gold, silver and silk you desire. And the people of this town and its surrounding districts will pay the poll- tax.' So the emir Abu Bakr assembled his companions and sought their advice concerning this matter. Some of the people amongst their number said, 'Let us take the treasure and leave the church alone.' While others of them said, 'We don't want the treasure. Let us burn the church, because it is of great importance to them.'

The emir Abu Bakr accepted the advice of those who were for taking the treasure, and said to the messenger: 'We will make peace with you in return for the treasure. Go back to your companions and tell them what we have said to you. Let them come to us and when they reach us, we will make known to them what it is that we want. And when they give it to us we will leave the church alone, and not burn it.'

Thereupon the messenger left and told his companions what the emir Abu Bakr had said. They rejoiced and were gladdened at the good news and came to the emir Abu Bakr, and gave him as a token, when he said, 'We will make peace with you,' two robes, covered with gold leaf weighing 150 ounces, and similarly of silver, with leaf of 150 ounces of pure silver. Each robe was identical. They said, 'This is a token gift for you since you acted graciously towards us and bestowed peace. And as for what you command us to do about the poll-tax, and the gold and silver, which is the condition for making peace, tell us.'

While they were immersed in these discussions, one of the Muslims got up. His name was Ura'ī Abu Bakr, from the Mahawara, of the tribe of Balaw. This is one of the Abyssinian tribes descended from the first Balaw who was their ancestor

who had gone down to the country of Sa'd al-Din from their own country, Tegre, in the time of Sa'd al-Din who then married him to one of his daughters. His name was Balaw 'Abd Allah. She bore him children of whom each boy was called Ura'i and each girl Ba'tiya.

He went stealthily to the church, took a live coal from the fire and set the church ablaze. In the meantime the monks and the emir Abu Bakr were engrossed in their discussion. Their attention w^ras suddenly drawn to the church which had burst into flames, with the fire reaching the clouds in the sky.⁴ ' When the monks and the emir saw the fire, their pcacc was sundered, and the monks plunged into the fire, as moths dive into the wick of a lamp; all but a few of them.

Then the emir Abu Bakr Qatin questioned Ura'i Abu Bakr who had set fire to the church. He asked him, 'Why did you bum down the church when we were negotiating a peace?' 'I set lire to it. Do what you like with me. I set fire to it. The imam did not command us to do anything but bum it down. He did not commission us to make peace for the sake of treasure.' So he released him, and they took what booty they could find, and returned to the imam. It took them a twelve days' march to go back, and they reached the imam in the country of Berarah on the day of 'Arafat .

[The imam defends the burning of the church]

The emir Abu Bakr notified the imam Ahmad, may Almighty God have mcrcy upon him, who it was that had burnt the church. The imam said, 'There was nothing wrong in huming it down. After all. wasn't *burning it down* what I ordered you to do, from the very outset - since it meant much

4-77

more to them than anything else?' Then the imam said. 'Return to your camp. Then conic back to me in the morning, for I have a certain matter that I want to discuss with you.' So they returned to their camp.

After him, the imam summoned the emir Husain because he had not been with him in Berarah. He had sent him to the far-flung areas of the country in search of plunder. The imam sat down in his presence, for he was a person of wise counsel and sound opinion. The imam began by telling him what Garad Ahmusa had said to him, quoting the entire conversation to him.

After which the emir Husain said to him, 'This advice is excellent. If you set out tomorrow against the patrician Wasan Sagad you will kill him, if it be the will of Almighty God. You will conquer Abyssinia. But if you postpone your departure tw o or three days, then the words of Garad Ahmusa will come true as he said. And

the disaffected soldiers⁴ will go back down to their country.'

[Disaffection amongst Ahmad's troops]

After the imam heard what the emir Husain had to say, he made up his mind to set out, and said to him, 'Come to me in the morning with your soldiers.' Then he sent a message to the emirs, saying, 'When tomorrow comes, saddle your horses, and all of you come to me with your cavalry and foot soldiers, for I have received some news.'

When it was morning the imam had the small kettle drums and the big bass drums sounded and the emirs and the chieftains came. The imam addressed them, saying, 'I want to set out against Wasan Sagad. What is your opinion?' They replied, 'Our opinion is that there should be no setting out until autumn⁴⁷⁹ has ended. Then we will fight him. [f°52] But now, what is this consultation all about?'

At this the imam said to them, 'Cease your prattle. You don't understand, but I do. Our only chance of meeting up with him is during the rainy season and in autumn.' They asked, 'But what will we do with our treasure and our baggage? Will we bring them along with us, or will we have to abandon them?' The imam replied: 'That is no concern of ours.'

Then he said to the emir Abu Bakr: 'This robe that you brought with you: it is yours. You are to remain in the camp to watch over our treasure and our concubines.'^{4MI} He entrusted to him, from among the warriors, around four-hundred knights, and said to him, 'Don't budge from here. If the king attacks you, fight him: and may God give you victory over him.' He replied, 'Hearing is obeying' and stayed in Berarah.

[The Muslims march on the feast of Arafat]

After reciting the *Fatiha* the imam set out. Riding with him were the emirs, with the guide out in front of them, while above them the heavens poured rain. The ground was a muddy morass, and this one tumbled off his horse, while that one tumbled off his mule. Sometimes they would dismount from their mules and march, while at other times they would remount. They continued for three days in this fashion. They spent the night not far from the infidels.

The patrician got to hear of this for the people of the region notified him, 'The imam and his army have been seen arriving at your position: they are close by you.' The patrician replied: 'This is a lie. From what I know, the Muslims will not march on *Arafat*, which is one of their feast-days; nor will they march in the season of

rain and clay.'

The *storyteller* says: The patrician Wasan Sagad spoke to Ura'i 'Utman the renegade, asking him: 'Tell me if the Muslims usually march during their feasts, or conduct expeditions in the rainy season when their mounts will be exhausted.'" He replied, 'Previously, when I was living in our country, they would not mount expeditions during rainy seasons like this, nor would they do so on their feasts, until they w'ere concluded. As for now I can't say what they w'ould do.'

The patrician called for two knights who were chieftains of the people of Dawaro, one of them, MTka'el and the second Robel, who presented themselves. He said to the two of them: 'Saddle your horses and bring me back news of the Muslims for the people of this area tell me that the imam and his army are in our vicinity.' So they mounted, and set off in the direction of the Muslims. At that very moment the imam had told his companions, 'Don't camp on the slopes of the hill because the infidels are unaware of our presence, and we want to take them by surprise if it be Almighty God's will.' So they pitched camp at the foot of the hill.

While they were engaged in making camp, one of the Muslims, along with four of his companions, wanted to gather some firewood. This one, whose name was Dalan, rode with his four companions up the hill until, all of a sudden, the two knights whom Wasan Sagad had sent appeared. Of the two, one stayed where he was, while the other drew near to the one called Dalan, who was on the slopes of the hill. The patrician Mika'el asked him, 'You there, do you know anything about the Muslims?' At which Dalan replied: 'Which Muslims do you mean?' He said, 'The soldiers'. Then Dalan said, 'They are quite close'. When he said 'close' the patrician turned and peered at Dalan, and realized that he was a Muslim. If the patrician had glanced at the foot of the hill that he was on, then he would have seen the Muslims in their encampment.

He tried to turn his horse's head.^{4si} but God gave the Muslim Dalan strength, He pounced on the patrician and clung to his hooded cloak, dragging him off his horse, and striking him a blow to his face that laid open his skull. He plucked him from his saddle, thrashing the ground with him, and then mounted his horse, dragging him by a rope, humiliated and an object of contempt, until he reached the imam. As for Mika'el's companion - he fled.

Dalan arrived with his prisoner and the imam and the Muslims rejoiced. The imam asked, 'What are you dragging behind you?' And he recounted to him all that had happened. The imam and his entourage thanked him, as did the Muslims; and the imam made him a present of the patrician's horse, and its finery. Then the

imam interrogated the captive patrician concerning the patrician Wasan Sagad. He replied, 'He is close to you. I and my companion came in search of new s of you when I fell into the clutches of this young man. My companion fled.' The imam straight away ordered him to be killed, and they spent the night there.

The knight who had fled reached Wasan Sagad and told him that the Muslims were close by, and that his friend had been killed. They were filled with a mighty dread, and spent the night in their places.

[The Abyssinians set out for Mount Busat]

When morning came, the Muslims set out in the direction of the idolaters. But when it was morning, Wasan Sagad assembled his army and took counsel with them. He said, 'The Muslims have spent the night round about you. Now that it is morning they are going to come against you. Prepare for battle.' Their unanimous response was, 'Don't order us to fight at a moment like this.' 'But,' he asked, 'what will you do if you don't fight?' To which they replied: 'You are our religious leader; if you are wiped out, our religion, that is the Christian religion, will be annihilated.'

He asked them, 'So what will we do?' They replied, 'Let us march to Mount Busat; and we will fight whoever comes to attack us, there. You, you march before us and we shall fight behind you. If we are killed, even the last one of us, the Christians will not decline because of us. But if you be killed, then our religion will be wiped out, and our countries will be pillaged.' They pleaded with him until he said, 'All right.' Then he set out in the direction of the mountain. He said to Ura'i 'Utman the apostate, 'You bring up the rear/ and entrusted him with half the army. Then he and the [other] half of the army set out.

[The Muslims decide to give chase]

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says, The Muslims⁴⁵¹ marched after sun-up in the direction of the idol-worshippers, and the imam and his army reached their encampment before noon. The patrician Wasan Sagad, meantime, had set out with the first part of the army before the imam^{4*1} arrived at the camp.

As for Ura'i 'Utman, the imam overtook him as he was moving his tents in preparation for the march. The Muslims arrived on the heels of the idol-worshippers who when they saw them fled without giving battle, abandoning the camp along with its tents.

The Muslims said, 'This abandoning the camp to us is a trick of Wasan Sagad.

He has prepared an ambush for us and will attack us when we have entered the camp, and busied ourselves with sacking it/ Others of them said, 'This is not one of his tricks. He has simply fled before us; and has left behind him another army/ Then Garad Sama'un said to the Muslims: If you run into Wasan Sagad in the camp, you can put me to death, for he has fled in the direction of the 'Awas/ The imam accepted what he said and did not follow the counsel of the others. Then they mounted their horses, and set out in pursuit of him.

[Wasan Sagad stands and fights]

The Muslims then split into four bands: one of them overtook UraT 'Utman, and did battle with him for an hour^{4M} before he fled; another pursued Wasan Sagad; and the imam went with a third band along a different route. As for Wasan Sagad,^{41vS} when the Muslims drew near to him, he dismounted from his mule and said, [f'53] 'Set up a platform for me/⁴⁸⁰ They made one for him out of iron which he sat upon while spurring his companions on, and having his drums sounded. The Muslims, who by then had caught up with him, attacked. They were few in number and fought for an hour.

Of the Muslim knights 'Abd Allah al-Tigrawi^{4N} was killed, may Almighty God have mercy upon him. He was a man who was valiant and a hero. It was the son of the Nagas of Gojjam^{48*} who killed him. When the Muslims saw that he was killed they ran away, but not far. Some Muslim cavalry met them and asked them. 'Where are you fleeing to? Go back and fight your enemy. We'll be with you.' So they fought for a little while, and then fled a second, or third time.

While they were running away and turning back, some Muslim knights famous for their valour reached them - amongst whom was Garad Sama'un, 'All al-Waradi who was a martyr at the battle for the Amba, UraT "Umar Din son of the Sultan Muhammad, and Garad 'Abad and others like them.

These said to those who were fleeing, 'Who put you to flight?' They replied: 'It was this patrician who drew up his battle line. The first time that we charged they killed 'Abd Allah Tigrawi who was with us; and put us to flight. We returned to the attack and were routed in the same fashion four or five times.'

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him. says: Then Garad Sama'un and Ura'i 'Umar Din and their companions said to those who were fleeing; 'Well, now we have reached you. Don't imagine that we are like those who met up with you before us. We will lead you in the charge: so you follow behind us.'

Then Garad Sama'un and Ura'i charged, and breached their battle- lines; he and

his companions with him, but he was out in front. The patrician Wasan Sagad was in the midst of the idol-worshippers when Garad SamaTm charged them, and burst through their battle lines along with his companions. He met up with the brother of the patrician Wasan Sagad whose name was Garima, who raised the tip of his spear against Garad Sama'un, trying to stab at him. Sama'un meanwhile hit him with his sword, cutting his spear in two and chopping off his hand, so that he toppled from his horse.

In the same way Ura'i 'Umar Din, the sultan Muhammad's son, charged the patrician who was alongside Wasan Sagad and transfixed him with a spear blow that threw him from his horse, on to the ground, where he died: may Almighty God not have mercy upon him. Likewise 'AH al-Waradi

charged another patrician and struck him such a blow that it severed his head from his body. May God thrust his soul down into Hell 'and what a sad place

it is'⁴⁸⁹

[Wasan Sagad is wounded and unhorsed]

Wasan Sagad's companions immediately fell back, but not far. Wasan Sagad chased after them, shouting out to them saying, "Where are you fleeing to?" While he was berating his companions, Garad 'Abad bin Rajah mounted a charge against them. His father had been Garad of Hargaya in the time of the sultan Muhammad bin Sa'd al-Din. When 'Abad drew near to him Wasan Sagad turned the head of his charger back in Garad 'Abad's direction, heaping abuse on him and the two of them met in that place.

In the patrician Wasan Sagad's hand was a spear, while Garad 'Abad held a sword in his. The patrician got under his guard and struck Garad 'Abad a blow that pierced his left hand. He was wearing protective armour and the tip of the spear went through the armour and the hand, and came out the other side. The patrician tried to pull his spear out, but it broke off in the hand of the Muslim. He then tried to pull his sword out of its scabbard. Garad 'Abad struck him a blow[^] on his head while he was struggling to pull out his sword. Garad 'Abad struck him a second time, a little above the top of his neck, and he fell off his horse. He said: 'Don't kill me; I am Wasan Sagad.'

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: When the idolators saw that he had been unhorsed, and when he told Garad 'Abad that he was Wasan Sagad, Garad 'Abad called out to his companions so that the idolators would know that their chief had fallen. Then the Muslims started yelling out that Wasan Sagad

was dead. The patrician who was lying on the ground, injured, called out *alak bala. alak bala*, which means, 'I'm alive' ^{4vn} 'Keep on fighting.' When the idolaters heard that their leader had been killed

they fled in a blind panic, pursued by the Muslims who were capturing prisoners and killing. ^{4,31}

[The imam refuses to follow 'Addoli's advice]

The imam, meanwhile, had gone in another direction as we have already mentioned, along the road to Zeqala. While he was on the road, the wazir 'Addoli reached him. He had captured the patrician of Adal Anbaj whose name was Jan Nahad. When the imam met the Wazir 'Addoli along the route, he had the prisoner stand before him and said to the Wazir 'Addoli: 'Keep him with you. Take the standard and gather the Muslims to you. We will set out in pursuit of the idolaters'.

Then the imam dismounted from his mule in order to mount his horse. The Wazir 'Addoli restrained him, speaking out of his affection for the imam, 'Don't you go. Rather you take your standard, and stay close by it. Let someone other than you go and pursue the infidels/ The imam scorned his words and mounted his horse. Along with him were the emir Husain, Garad Ahmusa and 'Alus bin Besara.

They set out, left the army behind, and outstripped the Christians on the road. They met up with a herdsman whom they asked, 'Do you know^r the whereabouts of the patrician Wasan Sagad?' He replied, 'He set out this morning with the vanguard of the army'. They thought that he was ahead of them, when in fact he was behind them, captured by Garad 'Abad as we have mentioned.

[The imam prepares an ambush]

So, after the imam followed an open road without seeing any trace of the horses along it, they said: 'If this is the route they took, there isn't a hoof

mark on it. The infidels must, without doubt, be behind us.' So, craftily, they hid themselves. They were four knights, including the imam.

Then ten infidels came riding by, mounted on their mules. The imam and his companions charged them when he said, 'This is their vanguard', and they fell upon them. They in turn took to flight, leaving their mules behind. The imam then returned to his place, and they hid themselves in the same fashion.

Then a troop of infidels approached. As they drew near to them they saw that they were carrying the baggage of the infidels, along with their women, and boxes

belonging to the patrician, filled with silks and other baubles besides. When they saw them they kept out of the way of the road, so as not to tangle with them, for they were looking out for the warriors, their knights.

After the baggage porters had passed by, an army appeared: made up of all those who had been with Wasan Sagad and had taken to flight. When they saw them, they realized that they were running away, and the Muslims said to the imam Ahmad, 'This is the infidel army: now let us attack them face on, because they are in flight/ The imam replied: 'This will not do. We now are but four and this is a mighty army. Were we to attack them they would see that there are only four of us knights, while they have shieldsmen with them. We will wait until they have gone on ahead, and then we will attack them from their rear so that they will think that we who follow them are part of those who put them to flight.' They replied, 'This is excellent advice.'

Now the Christians had forty knights, with horses clad in armour [f'54] of iron. They were the protectors of the troop from the vanguard of the army that had fled. After [those passed by] the Muslims said: 'There are no more Christians after these', and they attacked. They were four knights against the forty knights of the Christians, and they fought a fierce battle.

The *author*, may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: I heard the imam Ahmad, may Almighty God have mercy upon him, relate, 'We struck them until our forearms were exhausted from the effort of fighting them'.

When one of the four Muslims struck an infidel, all of them struck out at whomever their companion had hit. The imam attacked the leader of the army, striking him on his head, Garad Ahmusa, the emir Husain and 'Alus then struck him as one man, and he tumbled from his horse.

In the same way Garad Ahmusa hurled himself at the patrician and hit him a blow that was of no avail on account of the vast amount of harness and ironware that he wore. Then 'Alus threw himself at him, and struck him a savage blow in the eye with his spear. He forced him upwards with his spear, and he fell down dead.

[The fate of Takla Hawayat]

A patrician called Takla Hawayat,⁴⁹² the Nagas of Gojjam, highly thought of by the king and by Wasan Sagad, charged like a tower of iron. The emir Husain confronted him, and he and the patrician grappled with each other, with the emir Husain unseating him and throwing him to the ground. The patrician's horse took off, and grasping his spear, the emir Husain set off after the horse, and caught it.

He then returned to where the patrician was. But, lo and behold! he was among some trees, while the rest of the idol- worshippers fled.

The imam came to where the emir Husain was and said to him: 'The patrician went in to the middle of the brush while you were chasing his horse.' He looked into the middle of the trees and found w^here he was standing. Then the emir Husain struck at him, but his blow^t did him no harm, as he was in among the trees. The imam struck at him, but succccded only in hitting the trees. The emir Husain said: 'I'll go down after him on foot, and go into the trees'. 'Refrain from doing that,' the imam said.

Just then two men approached, one of whom was AbO Bakr. The imam said to him: 'Dismount and strike that man a blow with your spear.' He thereupon dismounted, and approaching the patrician struck him two blows on his chest with his spear, but these had no effect. The patrician was holding a whip in his hand, by means of which he reached the Muslim, and struck him, forcing him backwards.

So the imam said to the other one whose name was Sahr al-Din. 'You dismount and kill that man,¹ for this one was a swordsman, famous for his skill as a fighter and at overcoming difficulties. He dismounted from his mule, and struck the patrician's hand, cutting it off, and the patrician fell onto the ground. Sabr al-Din pulled him out from the trees, killed him and took his weapons and armour.

Then the Muslim army caught up with the imam who said to them, 'Here, close by you, is the baggage of the infidels, along with their horses, mules and riches. Now, let us set out.' They answered, 'Willingly' and the imam and his companions, around sixty knights, set out. They forced their march until they met up with them, and then the imam attacked, as did Farasaham 'Ali, Garad Sama'un, Garad Ahmusa, Farasaham Din and their ilk. Their swords prevailed against the idol-worshippers, whom they killed.

Only ten had escaped - these were they whom the imam had encountered on the road with the baggage, before the arrival of the forty knights who were the protectors of the infidels. Because of this⁴¹¹ they pursued the latter and took as booty what they had been carrying. Then they returned to their army that was with the Wazir^L Addoli, which had been anxious about the whereabouts of the imam.

[Interrogation and fate of the patricians]

The imam reached them after the last evening prayer. They offered thanks to God, and the imam informed them what had happened. Then the imam asked 'Abad, 'Why did you kill Wasan Sagad before I had seen him?' He replied: 'Why

would you want to see the dog? I had said to him after I made him my prisoner, "I intend to take you to my lord." But he stretched out by a tree^{4 54} that was there and refused to get up. He said: "Kill me here where I am" and roundly abused me. So I ordered him to be killed.'

The storyteller of the *Futuh al-Hahasa*, may God have mercy upon him, says: The imam thereupon had the prisoners brought, and they were presented to him. Amongst them was the patrician Ian Nahad whom the wazir 'Addoli had captured: and the patrician Qasiin. lord of Jan Amora.⁴⁴ He was an apostate whom the king had put in charge of Jan Amora, which is between Tegre and Angot. He fought fierce battles, and he brought back to the fray all the idol-worshippers who had fled, and protected them. His actions caused the Muslims a great deal of anguish. It was one of the Somalis from the tribe of Mattan who captured him; and the patrician Hanna, lord of Laliba1a.^{4%} The patricians whom the imam ordered to be put to death were thirty-three in number.

As well there was a patrician called Gabra Endreyas who was killed when Wasan Sagad was defeated. He had said: 'There is no part of the land of Abyssinia that I have not governed, from the time of King Admas,⁴⁴ of Eskender and Na'od, up to the time of King Wanag Sagad, and I have governed all the provinces'. He was killed at the age of ninety years. May God not have mercy upon him.

After Wasan Sagad was killed, the country was conquered, the infidel armies were humiliated, and the greater part of them embraced Islam, as we will mention later on,

They remained in the land of 'Awass Tabbi⁴ for three days and then they went up to Jan Zalaq where they pitched camp. The imam sent a messenger to Berarah. to the emir Abu Bakr Qatin, to inform him of the killing of Wasan Sagad, and of the flight of the idol-worshippers, garbing the messenger in garments of honour.

The storyteller,; may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: When the imam arrived at Jan Zalaq its inhabitants fled to the district of Sajara. So the imam sent for Nasr, the governor of Mergay, who had been captured during the battle of Zari and asked him: 'Do you know the district of Sajara?' He answered, 'Yes, I am familiar with it: my children and my wealth are there. I shall go and make peace with the country, and all of them will become Muslims when you arrive/ So the imam sent Farasaham Din with him - along with some soldiers.

He set out for Sajara and its environs. They were met by the inhabitants of the region upon their arrival. These came to them⁴ ' from the villages round about and

embraced Islam.

In the same way he sent the Wazir Addoli to Zeqala and to Lalibala. He set out with his army, but the emir Mujahid had got there before him. For when he heard of Wasan Sagad's death he had set out for Zeqala and had taken an immense booty and afterwards returned to his camp at Berarah. He was with the emir Abu Bakr QatTn in Berarah when 'Addoli [f°55] arrived [in Zeqalah] to find that the inhabitants were Muslims. They had become Muslims the day the emir Mujahid plundered them.

The Wazir 'Addoli set out for 'Awas Tabbu, and its inhabitants became Muslims. The imam, for his part, went from Jan Zalaq to the district of Antit where there was an imposing church, dating from the time of King Eskender, filled with gold. The Muslims pitched their camp alongside it.

The inhabitants of Jan Zalaq had not become Muslims and had hidden in the deserts and in the mountains. So he had sent Kaled al-Waradl, accompanied by a troop of knights, to fight them. Kaled al-Waradl was familiar with their country and said to them, *I am Kaled al-Waradi. You know me, and I know your country and all its by-ways. So now, become Muslims before fighting breaks out between us and you.'

When his messenger reached them, the inhabitants of Jan Zalaq came together and said amongst themselves. 'If we don't go along with Kaled al-Waradi he will send a message to the imam, his master, who in turn will despatch an army against us, from this direction and from that. Most of Abyssinia has embraced Islam, and the Muslims are dispersed throughout it. If they hear of us that we have stood firm against them, not one of us will live to tell the tale. Our lord Wasan Sagad has been killed. So let us now become Muslims.'

Then they sent a messenger to Kaled al-Waradi who said: 'Grant us an assurance of protection and we will become Muslims. We shall go to the imam and he will give us a guarantee of protection. We shall all go, and the people of Qawar¹¹¹ along with us.' Thereupon Kaled al-Waradi gave them the guarantee of safety, and rejoined the imam who was in Antita where the church was.

Kaled al-Waradi asked the imam, 'Why have you come up to Antit and left the area of Jan Zalaq whose people asked me to obtain from you an assurance of safety for them? I have myself given them this assurance/ The imam replied, 'It was my plan to go to Berarah where we are camped, and send out cavalry into the countryside/ To which Kaled al-Waradi replied, 'But if you set out for Berarah the

people of Jan Zalaq will not become Muslims, nor the people of Qawat. So now let us return to Jan Zalaq and remain there for then all of the idol-worshippers will come to you - they and their patricians, and will accept Islam/⁵⁰¹

The imam accepted his counsel, and then told the emir Muhammad Zaharbui [may God have mercy upon him] and Garad Ahmusa, what he had counselled. He informed the two of them what Kaled al-Waradi had said to him, and they both said: 'This is unquestionably good advice/

So the imam sent a messenger to the emir Abu Bakr who said to him, 'We are returning to Jan Zalaq, while you are to remain within Berarah as far as Badege; don't leave it for Fatagar until our messenger reaches you.' He then took all of the gold that was in the church which was in Antit; and they burnt it.

The imam set out for Jan Zalaq, and sent a message to Kaled al-Waradi and Garad 'Utman bin Juhar, saying to the two of them, 'March to Qawat and prepare them for Islam.' So they set out and reached the district and the inhabitants of Jan Zalaq and of Qawat all came to them. Then they returned to the imam who was in Jan Zalaq where the people had accepted Islam.

[Aibis Lahati defies the imam]

One of the patricians who became a Muslim was called Haizu; another, Dalu and another Daballa. These three became Muslims and their submission was genuine, for they gave witness at the memorable events that were to follow. As for two other patricians; one of these was called Aibis Lahati - a kinsman on his mother's side of the king. He was an abominable demon who loathed Islam and the Muslims. No one was as deeply entrenched in unbelief as he. He said to himself, 'Only if there is no way of escaping will I follow those three'.

When they stood before the imam along with the people of Qawat - one-hundred cavalry and four-thousand infantry - and the imam urged them to become Muslims, all of them did so, except for this patrician Aibis Lahati. In fact he said on the occasion: 'I will not become a Muslim. I did not come to do that. I will not separate myself from my religion, in which my fathers and my forefathers died.' The imam said to him, 'You are more admirable than those who embraced Islam: you are stronger in your faith than they.' He replied, 'As for those, they are ignorant people who know nothing of their own religion, or of yours. If they become Muslims there is no dishonour in that for them; but if I were to become a Muslim I would be dishonoured before the King and the monks who would say, "Aibis Lahati has converted to

Islam.” and this would bring immense shame upon me. I will not separate myself from the religion of Maryam.’ ” The imam said to him: ‘Then don't do it. You are a great Christian. And between us and you there is a relationship of marriage.’

The storyteller.; may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: As it happened, one of the concubines of the imam, Hajirah, was a relative of his, his cousin on his father's side.

The imam said to him, ‘You can be a help to us on behalf of Islam.’ But he refused, and said to the imam, ‘I am related to you, and I will help you. But I will keep my religion. And if conflicts arise between you and the Muslims, or the Christians, then I will fight alongside you.’

But the imam said to him, ‘Be silent. I do not wish to be helped by idol-worshippers. You can neither help us nor harm us. Surrender your horse and lay down your arms. Pay the poll-tax and keep your religion.*

Thereupon his companions, the patricians who had become Muslims, said to him: ‘It is only the imam who has given you a guarantee of safety. You will receive no such guarantee from the rest of the army. We are going to cut you down to size. We will kill you unless you become a Muslim. So you [think you] are more admirable than we are!’

He straightaway became afraid, and embraced Islam. He remained with the imam for around three months and when the latter set out on an expedition to Bet Amhara he ran away, reverted to Christianity and joined up with the king. The other patrician fled a few days after him.

The imam appointed ‘Utman bin Juhar in charge of the people of Jan Zalaq and Kaled al-Waradi in charge of the people of Qawat. He went with them to their country and made Muslims of their wives and children; and their conversion was sincere.

[Ahmad plans fresh forays]

Kaled al-Waradi took from Qawat the treasures of the idol-worshippers, and their belongings made of gold, and other things as well: horses, mules, swords and weaponry. He sent all these goods along with the horses, to the imam, who wanted to remain in the Fatagar region until the waters of the river ‘Awas subsided and he could pass over to Dawaro to make its inhabitants Muslims. But the local people told the imam: ‘It will take the waters of the ‘Awas two months from now to go down.’

When he heard this the imam said: 'Why should we wait two months to no purpose? Instead, let us set out for Sajara and for the region of Dabra Berhan.¹ So he said to the emir 'All, lord of Angot: 'You go to the region of Dabra Berhan by the Sarmat⁵⁰³ and Darja roads.' [f¹'56] Then he entrusted him with one-hundred knights, among them Bcsara, and sultan 'Ali, 'All al- Waradi, Garad 'Abad the slayer of Wasan Sagad. Ura'i 'Umar Din, Ura'1 Qat 'Amr and Garad 'Utman along with the people of Jan Zalaq.

He said to them, 'March along the upper road, and I will march along the lower road and, Almighty God willing, you and we shall meet near the church of Dabra Berhan. So they set out the same day, while the imam took the road to Sajara.

Upon the imam's reaching Sajara, Garad Nasr met him and said, 'Our regions, our children and our families have all embraced Islam by the blessing of Almighty God, and by yours as well.' So the imam said to him: 'I put you in charge of all those in your region who have become Muslims. You must march against those who have not accepted Islam, take them prisoner and bring them to me.'

The imam included with him a man called Fanj Sabbar, along with some infantry . They set out by night, catching the Christians unawares, killing them there, and capturing two patricians. Thereupon they returned to the imam, and brought the two of them into his presence. He said to them, 'How about the two of you? Why on earth didn't you become Muslims when all the country converted?' To which they both replied. "It never occurred to us that we would be in this situation'. He said, 'Our judgement concerning you, is that your heads should be cut off'. Their reply was, 'So be it'. The imam was astonished at what the two of them said. But he ordered them to be killed, and they put the two of them to death.

[Samsu burns down the church al I tat]

He said to the commander of the army of Bahr whose name was Samsu, 'Proceed to I fat and conquer it for I have already appointed you its ruler.' So Samsu set out for I fat. He arrived there - a country virtually impassable, with no bridle-path for horses - and its people who were on foot, put up a resistance. Eventually he defeated them, and conquered it by force. Its people became Muslims after he besieged them in the mountains.

There was a church there that had belonged to the previous king, Eskender; with much gold within it. The king had donated a number of vessels of gold and silver to it, as votive offerings. It possessed a massive book, with leaves and binding of gold, upon which they had written their Gospel. Only exceptionally

sturdy men were able to carry it.³⁰⁴

Samsu went inside the church, set fire to it and took everything of value that it contained, including a chasuble that belonged to king Eskender. In its hem there were fifty ounces of gold. Then the imam rejoined Samsu, meeting up with him at Abunah on the border of Ifat. Samsu handed over to the imam all the valuables. The imam and the Muslims marvelled at the Golden Book and at its illustrations.

The emir 'Ali, having taken the high road, entered the land of Darja which he conquered and upon which he imposed the poll-tax. Then he set out for Dabra Bcrhan. After he and his army reached the place he remained there, biding his time until the imam arrived. The latter, meanwhile, had settled down at Abunah. He sent Garad Ahmusa on to Ifat, saying to him: 'Do battle with its people until you have conquered it: I will be at your rear.' So Garad Ahmusa set out. Garad Mattan went with him while the imam stayed behind, with five knights. Ifat was quite close by.

The Muslims said to the imam, 'You've kept on sending your troops away, so now the point has been reached where you have only five knights left. From now on, don't do anything/

The following day he caught up with Garad Ahmusa. The number of emirs whom the imam had despatched in various directions, was fifty.

[Ura'i 'Utman sets out to betray the king]

The story'teller, may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: The apostate Ura'i 'Utman was in Ifat when Wasan Sagad was killed. He had gone to his home region of Ifat and remained there. He summoned his forces, and the armies of Gafat and Wanag Jarra. When the imam had entered the land of Abunah, Ura'i 'Utman said to his forces, 'I am going to light the Muslims. They will not enter my territory.*

He then sent a message to the imam, unbeknown to his companions: From the outset I was a Muslim, the son of a Muslim. The idol-worshippers captured me and made a Christian of me, but my heart has remained always at peace with the faith. So now I throw myself upon God's mercy, the Prophet's mercy, and yours. If you accept my contrition, and don't hold what I've done against me, then I will turn to God in repentance. I will outsmart this army of the king that I have with me, so that they come over to your side, and convert to Islam.'

He sent the imam the letter that he wrote, by means of some Muslim people of [fat whom he cautioned: 'Don't let any of the Christians know about this matter'.

The letter reached the imam on the very day that Garad Ahmusa had set out. He read it, and understood all its contents and then sent a message to Garad Ahmusa to return *for I have news*. He returned to the imam, who informed him of what Ura'ki 'Utman had written. They remained on in Abunah, all of whose people, meanwhile, along with their patrician Eslamu, became Muslims. After the imam had set out for Bet Amhara, their leader Eslamu apostatised and joined forces with the king. His army remained faithful to Islam and they fought with Samsu throughout the whole conquest of Abyssinia.

[Ahmad's reply to Ura'I 'Utman]

After the imam had seen what was in the letter that Ura'i 'Utman had sent to him, he despatched his reply which ran thus: Tf you act in this way. Almighty God has said, "Say to those who disbelieve that provided they desist, they will be forgiven whatever they have done in the past".⁵ ^ Don't be afraid, don't be grief-stricken. We will rendezvous, we and you, in the land of Tobya.¹ I am setting off for it, and we will meet up there, we and you.' The imam sent him his rosary as a pledge of his protection and good faith towards him. The letter and the rosary were sent to him secretly.

UraT 'Utman unsealed the letter, studied its contents thoroughly and from that moment on was overcome by anxiety. He said: I'm but one person: this army is numerous and all of them are Christians. What can I do about them? Were I to go empty-handed to the imam, after having done what I have done to the Muslims, I would be very fearful of them. And were I to say to these idoi-worshippers that they become Muslims with me, either they will kill me or put me in prison.⁷

[Ura'I 'Utman seeks allies]

Now with him were two men who had been Muslims, and servants of the imam. One of the two was called Sakr; the other's name was Ya'qim. Sakr had killed a man who was the imam's friend. One night he had taken him by surprise and killed him. The imam had him seized and thrown into irons until he could be punished according to Almighty God's Law. He burst his bonds and vanished into his own country. He went to the king of Abyssinia and became a Christian. The king bestowed a village of Ifat upon him, and settled him with [f°57] Ura'T 'Utman, the patrician of Ifat. Ya'qTm for his part had incurred a debt in the territory of the Muslims, and his creditors sought him out, claiming what w'as rightfully theirs. As he had no way of discharging the debt he fled, without the imam's knowledge, to the king of Abyssinia and apostatised. The king of Abyssinia endowed him with land in Ifat.

UraT 'Utman sought out these two men and took them aside, to be alone with

them discreetly. He asked, 'Has either of you any advice, for this imam is close by us and will reach us either tomorrow, or the day after tomorrow. He will arrive in our territory, and will lay waste to it. What do you think? Shall we flee now to the king with our armies, or shall we fight on our own ground, and die for the sake of it? Give me your advice.' They replied, 'We are your servants; we don't know about advice: if you order us to flee, then we will flee. If you order us to fight, then we will fight. If you order us to become Muslims, we will become Muslims.'

He said to them, 'What you said about becoming Muslims is better than the other options that I mentioned to you of fleeing, or fighting. Let us go to the imam, and repent of what we did in our unbelief. For I have written a letter and said to him what you both have just said. He sent me a letter, and his rosary, as a pledge and a guarantee for me and for you. So now, what shall we do about this vast army? How can we get it to follow us, since it is entirely made up of Christians?

[The advice of Sakr and Ya'qim]

They said to him, 'Since you have given us this assurance we will recompense you: now, summon your servant 'Ananiya.' 'Ananiya was the commander of the army directly under Ura'i 'Utman; and he was a Christian. Ura'i replied, 'If we confide in 'Ananiya, will he follow us in this matter that we are resolved upon?' They said to him, 'Yes, he will follow you. If you enter the tire, he will enter it with you.' So he said to them. 'You both seek him out and bring him to me.'

They set out to where 'Ananiya was, and brought him back to Ura'i 'Utman who said to him: "You are my son, and a senior officer of mine. What is your opinion about what is happening to us? What shall we do?" 'Ananiya replied, 'I am your follower; wherever you go, I shall go before you. If you say, "I'm going to fight." then so be it; if you say, "Let's flee to the king," then so be it. I am your servant. Whatever important task you command me to carry out, I shall do it.' Ura'i 'Utman said to him, 'Swear this in my presence'. So he swore him an oath that he would never disobey any command that he might give him.

Thereupon he told him that he had become a Muslim. 'Ananiya replied, 'I have wanted to become a Muslim before this. When I was in the land of Mergay, at the time that you made me governor there. I sent a message to the imam *via* some travellers.** And I have only stayed here until now for your sake.' When he heard what he had to say. Ura'i 'Utman rejoiced exceedingly. He said to 'Ananiya, 'How⁷ shall we address the army? What language shall we use when we speak to them?' 'Ananiya replied, 'I will be able to handle this matter for you. I shall speak to your elite force, your supporters, and to the rest of the army. If they obey us, well and good. If they oppose us, then we will fight them. But they won't be able to fight

against us once I have spoken to our friends and our troops.'

'Ananiya then addressed the elite force of UraM 'Utman, comprising fifty knights and two-thousand infantry armed with shields. They said to him, 'If our lord enters the fire, we will enter with him. Our business is to follow his orders.' So 'Ananiya reported back to his lord UraT 'Utman that the elite force had said that they would obey him. He was very happy at this.

[UraT 'Utman makes his move]

After brooding over it for two nights he said to his companions, 'We are on a mountain that is not very favourable for fighting. Let us now go to more spacious ground, more suitable for cavalry manoeuvres.' Then he said of the rest of the army, 'If they obey us, then God Almighty has prepared the way for us; if they resist us, then we shall fight them.' They replied, 'The counsel that you have given is wise'.

Then he ordered that they leave the mountain. They descended the mountain - his companions, his elite force and the patricians of Ifat, following him - the eight patricians of Ifat with their forces, and also the army of Gafat.

[The army of Wanag Jarra remains loyal to the king]

The army of Wanag Jarra - a thousand foot-soldiers armed with white shields made of hide, like a cloud-covered hill-top because of their dazzling whiteness; there was nothing like them in the army of Bahr Amba - held back. When they had heard that Ura'i 'Utman planned to become a Muslim they hung back on the mountain.

After he had descended the mountain to more spacious ground, and had drawn up his troops in battle array, Ura'i 'Utman said, 'How is it that I don't see the army of Wanag Jarra. What has befallen them?' His companions replied that they hadn't come down. And when they looked closely at the mountain, there they were, ready for battle on the mountain top.

That same day Ura'i 'Utman sent to them, asking them, 'What has happened to you? What is it that has come to you concerning me?' They replied, 'We know of your plan, and of your betrayal of the king. We for our part are his elite troops, and his servants. We may die in his presence, but we will not join forces with you. But now, if you want to do battle with us, come up to us.' They dismissed his messenger, held their shields over their heads, and set out for Bet Amhara. Ura'i 'Utman set out for Tobya that was adjacent to Ifat - he and all the Muslims of Ifat who set out for Tobya with him - and settled down there, waiting for the imam Ahmad.

[Ura‘I ‘Utman joins forces with Ahmad 1

The storyteller, may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: The imam for his part had been in his camp in Abunah. He set out for Tobya for the rendezvous between himself and Ura‘i ‘Utman. He reached Tobya and saw the tents of Ura‘i ‘Utman. He pitched his own camp nearby.

On that same day Ura‘T ‘Utman left his place, drew up his cavalry and his soldiers and advanced close to where the imam was. Ahead of him went the sheikhs and the doctors of the Law. to use their good offices on his behalf. He reached the imam, and with him were the two men mentioned beforehand who had been equerries of the imam and had become Christians, the lord of Ifat who was Ura‘i ‘Utman’s maternal uncle, and Garad Adam. He went into the imam’s presence, kissed his hand, and the imam greeted him most warmly and said to him, ‘Don’t be afraid.’ Then he said to the troops, ‘Become Muslims,’ and all of them did so. from midday until sunset - around 20,000 of them, including their wives and their children. The imam gave thanks to God and spoke appreciatively of Ura‘I ‘Utman and thanked him. They remained at Tobya.

He then wrote to the wazir ‘Addoli who was in the land of Zeqala. Between him and the imam there was a solid twelve days’ march. He gave him the news about Ura‘i ‘Utman who along with all the people of his region, had become Muslims, and said, ‘You must gather to yourself all the emirs who are scattered around about, and their armies. It is I who have put you in command over them. Send to the emir AbCi Bakr at Berarah, and to all the Muslims, summoning them to you. Do not split them up. Remain in Fatagar. As God is to be feared, our families and our children will remain with you.’

The storyteller, may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: The only reason that the imam put him in command over all the emirs, was because they all wanted to go back down to their own countries. This was the reason that he made ‘Addoli their chief. ff⁰58] He had been a slave of the imam Ahmad’s father, and had brought up the imam and his brothers. The imam would do nothing without taking his advice.

The letter reached him while he was in the land of Zeqalah. He left it and set out for Masin which was close to Fatagar. He then sent a message to all the emirs scattered near and far to come to where he was. All of them came. Amongst those who joined him was the emir Abu Bakr who came from Berarah with the family and the concubine of the imam. They all assembled.

He read them the imam's letter by which he made him the senior emir. They said. 'Hearing is obeying'.

[Farasaham 'All is sent on a mission]

Farasaham 'All was based in Dabra Berhan. He sent a message to the imam, saying, 'I am awaiting a letter, or a messenger, from you. All that you gave me to do I have done. Will I go to you; or will you come to me?' When the messenger reached the imam and informed him about what Farasaham 'All had said.

The imam sent his reply to him in a letter in which he said, 'I have entered the land of Ifat. Your brother-in-law Ura'i 'Utman has become a Muslim, along with the people of Ifat, I am remaining in Ifat', Farasaham 'All had married the sister of Ura'i 'Utman in the land of the Muslims; that is why he said to him: Your brother-in-law Ura'i 'Utman has become a Muslim. [The imam went on] Don't stay in Dabra Berhan to no purpose. March on the land of TagulaC^w on Wagda'¹⁰ and Mugar.¹¹ Enter this territory, and do battle with them until they become Muslims or pay the poll-tax/ As soon as the letter reached him, he set out for the places exactly as the imam had commanded him.

[The Advice of Ura'i 'Utman and Azma£ Haib]

The storyteller.; may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: the imam in the meantime remained in his camp in Ifat around ten days. Then he sought the advice of his companions. He said to them, 'We are going to go up to Dabra Berhan. We will join up with our companions who are with Farasaham 'Ali and then we'll return to Fatagar. We are going to do battle there where we hear talk of war.' At that moment two men spoke up to the imam - one of them was Ura'i 'Utman who had become a Muslim. The other was Azma£ Haib who had become a Muslim beforehand. The two of them said, 'Don't go up to Dabra Berhan.' He asked, 'How would the two of you advise me?' They said, it is inadvisable for you to back-track. That province has already become Muslim. Rather let us march against provinces that are ahead of us. as far as Gedem and the provinces round about it.' Straightaway the imam summoned a man called Garad Abjad bin Abun and put him in charge of the army of Ura'i 'Utman. With him were Ya'qim, Goita Nur and Shahr. Then he marched on Gedem, ' ^L all of whose inhabitants became Muslims.

[Wanag Sagad sets out for Bet Amhara]

The storyteller.; may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: The king of Abyssinia, Wanag Sagad. in the meantime, had been in the land of Waj, He stopped there until the rainy season passed. When news had reached him of the death of Wasan Sagad and of the defeat of his army, he was saddened exceedingly

and called together his patricians, his chamberlain and his more distinguished companions. He said to them, 'So now, what shall we do; how do you advise me in this matter? Which region will make us welcome?' They deliberated amongst themselves, and then the king said to them, 'I prefer that we march to the house¹³ of our fathers and of our ancestors, the birthplace of our royal authority, and that we make a stand there. We shall hold the gates and do battle with the Muslims. We shall leave them in possession of the territory that they have conquered. We shall die in Bet Amhara.' All the patricians responded, 'What you have said is good, O king. And we shall die in your presence.' So they set out from the land of Waj for Bet Amhara.

They marched continuously through the rainy season, and after a month arrived at Bet Amhara which is a spacious land, with vast resources, and mountains all around it. In fact it is situated in the midst of mountains. There are paths and gateways through the mountains to it.

[The king appoints guardians for the Gates]

It is the residence of their king and there is no road into it that is not protected by gateways and guards. From the land of Abbay^{MJ} to the land of Angot and to the lake of Hayq,^{M>} mountains surround it for a distance of twenty days' march. It has five entrances, one gate on the Walaqa¹⁶ road, another on the Aki Paj¹ road, another on the Manz^{M*} road, a fourth on the Miyat road from the land of Oedem, and the fifth from the direction of Wasal.[^] So he made his encampment there.

The patrician Degalhan, brother-in-law of the king, held the gate at Miyat. The king said to him, 'Guard your gate; may it never fall because of you.' Degalhan dug a trench on the mountain as an obstruction between his position and the road that led to the gate and assembled there the army of Gedem and half of the army of Tegra. Over the gate of Manz was the patrician Ras Baniyat, who was joined by some soldiers. He had a trench dug on the top of the mountain. The gate of Aki Faj, however, required no army to guard it: six men were enough to hold the gate and to stop anyone from approaching it, because of the extreme difficulty of access to it. As for the gate of Walaqa, he stationed there the patrician Dahragot with his army. Each gate had some armed forces in it, to do battle with the Muslims.

[Description of the royal church at Bet Amhara]

The storyteller; may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: There was a church in Bet Amhara that had no peer in Abyssinia. King Na'od, the father of king Wanag Sagad had built it. He exhausted himself in its construction, in its planning and in every detail of the work. He adorned it with gold, and spent thirteen years in

its construction. He never saw the work completed, because he died after thirteen years.⁵²¹¹ His son Wanag Sagad became heavily involved in it and took over its construction, after him. He took more pains over it than his father. He spent twenty-five¹ years until he had completed it,²²It was entirely plated in gold leaf;⁵² it blazed like a fire. He made for it vessels of gold and silver.⁵²⁴ Its breadth was one-hundredcubits/²⁵ its length was one-hundred cubits and its topmost height was one- hundred-and-flfty cubits: wholly covered in gold, inlaid with gems, pearls and corals.

The king named it in their infidel tongue, Makana Sellase. ^ The meaning of their expression is 'House of the three gods*.' May Almighty

5^8

God be honoured, glorified, 'and exalted in the highest possible way'" May he be praised, 'for he is One,' unique, 'he begets not. nor is he begotten; there is none like him'.³²⁹

The sepulchre^{v''}of King Na'od bin Admas bin Zar'a Ya'qob is inside the church. Bet Amhara has other churches in it that belonged to earlier kings, but a construction like this church was not to be found.

[His troops reassure Wanag Sagad]

After the king had divided his forces to defend the gateways, he entered the church of his father and gazed around it, to the right and to the

left, [f59] and said. Those Muslims^{5'2} want to hum down this church which is the Royal See, and the dwelling place of earlier kings'.

The storyteller. may Almighty God have mrcy upon him, says: Every king who ruled Abyssinia built churches in Ret Amhara and when he died, he was carried there, and they buried him inside the church in a tomb.

After the king had spoken as we have related, those who were with him said to him, 'O king, don't grieve and don't distress yourself. The Muslims will never come as you have described. We would rather give our lives in fighting to save it.' He answered them, ^LIn the light of what you have said, each of you must hold his respective Gate.'They replied, "Hearing is obeying,' and then set out, each in his assigned area. The king, meanwhile, marched towards the gate of Wasal, and remained there.

[Goita Nur sacks and burns the church at Kcsayah]

The imam, may Almighty God have mercy upon him, after Abjad had marched out. set out behind him. He commanded Goita Nur to march to Kcsayah^{>¹} in the region of Gcdem, and he duly set out. A mighty church that belonged to earlier kings was to be found there, in which there were one- thousand monks. He arrived there and burnt it down, seizing the gold and much more besides, that was in it. The imam set out after him for the region of Kcsayah, with a much depleted force. Arriving there he pitched camp there and sent a messenger to the land of Gan. calling upon them to become Muslims. When he reached them, some people amongst them converted to Islam/ ⁴

As for Abjad. he met up with the imam in the region of Kcsayah, as did Wanag Jan from among the Christians, who had with him five-hundred foot-soldiers armed with white shields. They became Muslims by means of him. The people of Abyssinia took more pride in their white shields made of hide, than they did in their horses.

One of the Muslims, a man from the province of Arsuna, had been in the service of the king, who esteemed him. When the imam reached Kesayah, the above-mentioned man sent a message to the theologian^{1"} Abu Bakr al- Arsuna asking him: 'Could you get a promise of immunity for me from the (mam? I am afraid that he will punish me because I, who am a Muslim, have served the king. So the theologian went to the imam and obtained the promise of immunity for him. The imam sent his *muezzin*, Kabir Nur, to the man whose name w-as Safa'u,^{? ^} from the people of Arsuna, the province of the theologian al-Arsuna. The *muezzin* went to him, and this man accompanied him back to the imam with rare gifts and with sweet-natured mules from the king's herd.

The imam questioned him about the king: 'WTtat region is he in?' He replied, 'In Bet Amhara. He has split up his forces to guard the entrances. His brother-in-law Degalhan is quite close to you, at the Miyat gate. The king himself is at the Wasal gate. The patrician Dagalhan had sent for me to join him. But when I heard about you, that you had reached the region of Kesayah, I deserted him and I came to you.' The imam asked him, 'How great a distance is there between us and the king?'To which he replied,'Six days' march; and to Degalhan. four days. And between you and Ras Baniyat. there > only this daunting mountain: one day's march.'

[The messengers sent to Farasaham 'AH are killed]

When the imam heard this news he sent a messenger to the emir 'Ali -aying to him, 'Leave the region where you are and come to me as quickly as you can, for I

have need of you.' The messenger set off, but was killed before e could reach the emir 'All. The imam was unaware of his having been killed.

In the same way he wrote to the wazir 'Addoli on the day that he made him chief emir over the emirs. He said to him, 'Send me Absama Nur with an armed force.' So he sent him with sixty knights and a great force of infantry. He reached the imam in Kcsayah carrying with him a letter from the wazir 'Addoli in which he said, 'We have done what you commanded us to do. We arc based in Lalibala in the region of Fatagar.

When Absama Nur arrived, the imam - may Almighty God have mrcrcy upon him - welcomed him, and questioned him about the emir 'All, 'What province is he in? I have sent him a messenger, asking him to come here; but no reply has come from him.' The imam had no knowledge of what had happened to the messenger. So the imam sent him a second messenger, and a third: but each was killed on the road. Then the imam asked Absama Nur, 'What shall we do? Wc have no idea where he is. But let us send a messenger to the wazir 'Addoli because the army that is with him is as numerous as dust particles. Part of the army can be sent to us, and the rest can remain with him.'

[The imam writes to the wazir 'Addoli]

Thereupon the imam wrote a letter to the wazir 'Addoli in which he said: 'In the name of Allah the All-merciful, the Compassionate. Praised by God, the Lord of the worlds. May God bless and grant salvation to our lord Muhammad and his family. From the imam of the Muslims, Ahmad bin Ibrahim, the holy-warrior, to the wazir 'Addoli: I render homage to God- there is no other God but Him - and I bless his Prophet Muhammad - May God bless him and grant him salvation. Know, O 'Addoli, that wc have reached the land of Gcdem and that we have stationed ourselves at Kesayah; and that the king Wanag Sagad has entered Bet Amhara, and scattered his army along all the routes and they arc holding the gates against us. I sent off a letter to the emir, 'Ali, in which I commanded him to come to me. But no news or reply has reached me. I have no idea where he has gone. The only army I have with me is a much depleted force. Could you send me a section of the army with the emir Abu Bakr, and as well the emir Mujahid with two- hundred cavalry, and some of the infantry of the army of Bahr? Peace be upon you and upon all the Muslims who are with you."

The messenger set out straightaway, making the journey by night and day, and rcached the wazir 'Addoli, who was in Zeqala, after ten days. He gave him the letter, and he assembled the Muslims and read it to them. He counted off two-hundred cavalry, and five-hundred infantry armed with shields from the Muslims

in the army of Bahr,"¹ and a considerable number besides. He said to them, 'Take your weaponry and set out to join the imam as he commanded you.' He put the emir Abu Bakr Qatin, the emir Mujahid, and others like them, in charge.

[The scattered emirs rejoin the imam]

The imam, meantime, remained at Kesayah for one month and ten days waiting for them, calling together the various dispersed troops that were nearby to him. The first to come in to join him was Samsu with his troops; with him was Kablr Muhammad, the imam's *muezzin*, who had fifteen cavalry and one-thousand foot-soldiers.

Up till that time [f°60] the emir Farasaham 'AM had not arrived, for he had been in the region of Tagulat, Wagda³³⁹ and Mugar⁴ for around two months. He returned to Dabra Berhan and remained there. He sent some people to Ifat seeking news of the imam for him. They arrived at Ifat and entered Tobya where the deputy of Garad Ahmusa was. They went to him and gave him news of Farasaham 'All. He asked them, 'Mn which province is he? The imam has sent messengers to him three times'. The unbelievers killed them along the route. The imam knew nothing of their fate.

They replied, 'Farasahan 'All was in a far distant region. Now he has gone to Dabra Berhan and awaits our reply.' He said to them, 'Go now' to him and say to him that 'The imam has sent messengers three times to you' - they had been killed along the route - 'The imam has waited for you to come to him. Now, don't sit down, don't sleep. You must commence your journey immediately upon the arrival of your messenger. The imam is in the land of Kesayah.'

[Farasaham 'All fears the imam's wrath]

The messenger set off and reached Farasaham 'All and gave him the news. After they gave him the news, Farasaham 'All was stricken with fear of the imam. He said, 'We have not done well. We have left the imam with a depleted force.' He straightaway set out from Dabra Berhan to join the imam who had formed an ill opinion of Farasaham 'All, and had changed in his regard.

He reached the imam in Kesayah after six days, and the latter said to him: 'You took my army, and you did what you have done. What region have you conquered?' In reply he said, 'I have sinned, O my lord,' and gave no reply save this one.

Garad Besara, Garad Ahmadus and Garad 'Abad then said, 'We did not do well;

we left you without any army. We went where you sent us. We have no excuse.’ The imam said to them and to the soldiers, ‘Return to your places,’ and the Muslims met up with one another again, and praised Almighty God.

Two days afterwards, the emir Abu Bakr arrived. When they were near to the imam’s camp, they mounted their horses and drew up the troops of Bahr in front of their horses and went into the presence of the imam armed for battle. The latter gave thanks for all that they had done, and afterwards he ordered them to dismount from their horses. They dismounted, and spoke openly. The imam asked them, ‘Where was the wazir ‘Addoll when you left him?’ They replied, ‘We left him in Zeqala.’ He asked them, ‘How far from us is he now?’ They replied, ‘It took us twelve days to reach you. Each day we mounted our mules early in the morning, and we did not dismount until close on sunset, so that we could reach you as soon as possible.’ The imam called down God’s blessing upon them, then bestowed honours upon them and treated them hospitably, and related to them news of the king.

[The suggestion of Ahmad’s *muezzin*]

After this the imam called together his closest companions and said to them, ‘Our soldiers and our cavalry have been assembled; now pool your advice concerning Bet Amhara for I am committed to this line of action: we will proceed straightaway against the king of Abyssinia/

Immediately, Kabir Muhammad, the *muezzin* of the imam, stood up and addressed the Muslims, ‘You have put your best effort into marching against Bet Amhara. But the people of this region of Sajara that we have left behind us have already become Muslims. There is no need for all of us to march away, leaving Sajara without anybody. We came to you. I and Samsu, without leaving anybody remaining in the region. At least one of us should now return to it, for if it is left in a vacuum, its people will apostatise.’

The imam said to him, ‘What you said is right. Return with those of your soldiers whose experience of Islam is recent, but don’t let any of the soldiers follow you who came up originally from the country of Islam; you be wary of them.’⁵⁴¹ Then he said to him, ‘Leave with the blessing of Almighty God; may God help you’.

So Kabir Muhammad returned to the land of Sajara. He entered the region of Warraba ⁴and stayed only one day there. Some soldiers who came from the locality said to him, ‘Close by the church that Samsu burned down is a golden treasure that king Eskender gave as a votive offering to the church. Those who arc

with you,' and they pointed to a troop of his soldiers, 'know the way to the treasure. They will get it out.'^o

When he heard what they had to say, he had the soldiers tied up, and after treating them harshly, they produced twelve golden patens for him. Then he asked those who had informed on them. 'Is there anything else remaining of the treasure?' They replied, 'Yes, a very large paten weighing seven- hundred ounces. It has two handles, which weigh one-hundred ounces.' Immediately he flew into a rage with them and said to them, 'Bring the paten which remains.' 'Willingly,' they replied, and then they took counsel amongst themselves. They said, 'If we give him this paten which is a votive offering to the church, given as an offering to it by the king Eskndcr, and regardless of whether the Muslims return to their own country, or perish here, the king will ask us, "Why did you give away the treasure?" and will punish us for having done so. Let us devise some stratagem to kill this man, and let us send a message to our companions to help us against him.'

[The soldiers plan to kill Kabir Muhammad]

One of them said, i know some Christians who arc hiding in the forest. Send to them and say to them, "C'ome down to us as soon as day breaks and when you reach us we will turn - we and you - against him. For there is no one with him apart from our companions and he has no soldiers with him apart from us".'

So they immediately sent to them in secret and notified them about their plan. These left at night and reached the town, and Kabir Muhammad was oblivious of their intentions. When they observed them coming down the mountain he asked his soldiers, 'Who are these?' and they replied, 'They are idol-worshippers who are coming to do battle with you.'

Straightaway he saddled his horse, put on his body armour, and mounted. Then he said to his soldiers, 'Prepare to do battle.' They replied, 'Willingly'. And they positioned themselves in front of him.

When the idol-worshippers drew near to them they straightaway hurled slingshots, as if they were engaging them in battle. The others then left Kabir Muhammad by himself, and joined forces with their companions.

He charged amongst them and made a breach in their ranks, but because of the narrowness of the road there was no room for his horse to manoeuvre. All of the idol-worshippers, on the other hand, were on foot. He offered them very stiff resistance, but they so weakened him by the buffeting from the

stones, that he suddenly fell, dead, off his horse. May Almighty God have mercy upon him.

Recollection of their march against the king of Abyssinia, to Mount Wasal The storyteller says: The imam marched from Kcsayah and after two days entered the hand of Ganburah and pitched camp there. Kaled al- Waradi joined him, along with the soldiers of Ycjijif⁴¹ from the people of Qawat. Then he left Ganburah and entered Miyat after two days, and arrived at the gate where Degalhan was.

[Degalhan attacks the Muslims]

When Degalhan saw the Muslims, he clad his horses in armour, drew up his army in battle array on the top of the mountain and had the drums beaten, and despatched the archers with their poisoned arrows. He said, 'Go down to the Muslims and fight them.' So they went down from [t°61] the top of the mountain as they had been commanded.

The imam, when he saw them, marched against them until he was close up to the mountain. Then he stopped under a tree which was there. He marvelled at the mountain which had only one narrow track up it, that no one could climb except on foot. The top of the mountain was cultivated, with green crops, and rivulets that cascaded down through the ploughed furrows.

Instantly, a troop of the Muslim foot-soldiers went up to the mountain, without the imam's knowledge. Some of them were Arab archers, amongst whom were ^LAbd as-Salam ar-Rifi³⁴⁶ and his brother Hasb an-Nabi. They reached the Christian archers who were coming down to the foot of the mountain and then engaged them in battle there. They shot off their arrows. The idol-worshippers loosed one flight of arrows against the Muslims, and these fell there like rain. They fought a bloody battle there.

What excellent archers the Arabs are! For they fought a battle to the death. Hasb an-Nabi hit one of the idol-worshippers, and killed him. And his brother also hit one of them, and killed him. The Muslims and the idol-worshippers milled and thronged. One of the Muslims, the one called 'Abd as-Salam ar-Rifi, charged at one of the idol-worshippers who struck his foot and sliced it off. At this, his friend al-Hajj 'All came to his assistance and killed the Christian.

[The keeper of Ahmad's horse is killed]

One of the Muslims also was killed. His name was Abun. He was the keeper of the imam's horse. The idol-worshippers on the mountain top who were hurling

down stones, hit him on the head with a boulder. It fell on top of his skull and he was brained. He said, 'Now my dream has come true'. He became a martyr, may Almighty God have mercy upon him. For this man had a vision during the course of the march with the reinforcement which came to the imam with the emir Abu Bakr. He said, 'I saw something like a green flying thing which fell on top of my head and extracted my spirit, and I fell down dead.' He narrated his vision to his companions who said to him, 'What you saw is good,' to which he replied, 'I say that I will be a martyr during this expedition.' And his dream, as he described it, was proven to be right.

When the imam looked towards the mountain, what should he see but Muslims who had engaged the idol-worshippers in battle at the foot of the mountain. He became very angry and asked, 'Who ordered them to fight?'. He sent people to them to bring them back. They carried down Abun the martyr, and buried him.

[The counsel of Aibis Lahati]

The imam and all the Muslims then pitched camp. He assembled the Muslims, and sought out Ura'i 'Utman and the guides who were going to show them the way, that is, 'Ananiya, Haib, and Aibis Lahati who had apostatised, and they presented themselves.

Aibis Lahati spoke up, saying 'Now you see the mountain and the difficult path, which offers no foothold for horses. And if you say, 'We will go up without the cavalry,' what good will it do you? Even if you do engage this patrician in battle and God gives you the victory over him, you still have no way of reaching the king, or Bet Amhara. Ditches have been dug at the foot of the mountain, and there are gorges and narrow defiles this side of Bet Amhara, where they will do battle with you over it. As for my opinion, it is this: You should forget about this patrician, and about fighting him; proceed immediately against the king who is at the Wasal gate; do your fighting there. If God gives you the victory there, no one can prevent your access to Bet Amhara. This patrician is of no consequence. He will not remain in his position if the king is routed. The right and proper course to follow is what I have proposed to you.'

'Ananiya then rose and said, 'What Aibis Lahati has said is correct. He is acting in good faith in giving this advice. I am familiar with the whole of this territory. This mountain that we are on offers no foothold for cavalry. But the cavalry can move along the road that the king is guarding, the Wasal road, until they reach the king.'

The imam passed this information on to the emirs and his table companions:

Garad Ahmusa, the emir Zaharbui Muhammad, and the emir Abu Bakr Qatin. He recounted to them the advice that Aibis Lahati and 'Ananiya had given him. They said to him, 'This advice is sound; it is right and proper. We will not attack three of the four gates. We will press our attack against only the one gate.' They were unanimous in this opinion, and they passed the night at the foot of the mountain.

[Surprise attack on Ahmad's camp]

The storyteller, may Almighty God have mercy upon him, says: When a quarter of the night had passed, there was a surprise attack on the perimeter of the camp by the idol-worshippers who had fought the Muslims on the terrace of the mountain. They shot their arrows into the area where Mattan the Somali was. He mounted his horse and put them to flight in the dark until he drove them back up the mountain. Then he returned to his camp. None of their arrows hit a single Muslim. When morning broke, their arrows were embedded firmly in the ground and in the tents.

As for Degalhan, as soon as his companions, the archers, had returned to him in the night, he wrote a letter to the king on the spot. In it he said, 'The imam reached me with his army, but I held the entrance against them and I fought them. I killed around one-hundred-and-fifty of the imam's infantry; I captured thirty horses and killed their riders. The Muslims have fallen back and pitched camp in a spacious place. When evening fell, I sent against them archers from the people of Tegre who mounted a surprise attack. Their accomplishments were impressive, and they killed many of them. They no longer have any stomach for fighting. They are seeking to flee towards Fatagar.'

[The king is deceived by Degalhan's letter]

He sent the letter with two men who set out that night and arrived where the king was and gave him the letter. When he had understood its contents his joy was unbounded. He blasphemed, he indulged himself, he placed the crown on his head, and seated himself on the throne. Then he assembled his people and gave them the news. They immediately beat their drums and said, 'The Cross and Maryam have saved you from your enemies.' They then passed two days in rejoicing and happiness. The king said, 'My brother-in-law has satisfied all that I hoped for'. But all this was a tic.

[Ahmad sets out against the king]

After spending the night with his soldiers, the imam uttered a cry on the next day, and split his army into two halves. He put the wazir Nur in command of one half, and allocated to him the cavalry, including the emir Zaharbui Muhammad, the son of the uncle of the imam, Farasaham " Ali and Ura'i Sahab [f'62] al-Din Gedaya Jiri, son of the uncle"⁴ of the Sultan

‘Umar Din, and Ur^Lai ‘Umar Din, son of the Sultan Muhammad, Garad Ahmusa and their ilk - two-hundred knights.

He said to them, ‘Hold the rear; if Degalhan attacks you, right him. I’m going to march at the head of the army, and we will attack the king of Abyssinia.’ They replied. "Hearing is obeying’. Then the imam set out at the head of the army along the narrow track. ‘Ananiya went before them, pointing out the way. UraT ‘Utman, all the while, was with the imam; he scarcely ever left his side. So they set out, taking extreme care. The patrician Degalhan in the meantime, when the Muslims set out on the road to Gujmah in quest of the king, was setting out himself from the mountain, heading for where the king was, zig-zagging along a very hazardous path. As for the army that was bringing up the rear - the imam had entrusted them with the rear-guard and they were on full alert, ready for battle. So they set off.

[Degalhan’s brother is defeated by ‘Ananiya]

While the imam was travelling at the head of the column, along w ith ‘Ananiya his guide, Degalhan’s brother, called Hantas, accompanied by cavalry and soldiers, was seeking his brother the patrician Degalhan. He had heard nothing of the Muslims’ having left the mountain. He and the guide ‘Ananiya encountered each other. The latter, who had cavalry and infantry with him, immediately encircled him, and took his soldiers, along with their horses and mules, in one fell swoop. The patrician Hantas, meanwhile, had taken cover in some trees, after dismounting from his horse, so the Muslims seized it^{>48} and ‘Ananiya returned to the imam who gave everything to UraT ‘Utman because the guide ‘Ananiya was his servant. UraT ‘Utman, who rejoiced exceedingly, gave everything, in his turn, to ‘Ananiya.

After this, the imam pitched camp in a place called Absalu Zaraf in the region of Gujmah, and they spent the night there. The rear-guard reached the camp after dusk. The imam had the guide ‘Ananiya summoned, and when he

presented himself, commented to him, ‘The road that we travelled today was very narrow,’ to which ‘Ananiya replied, ‘And the road that we take tomorrow will be even narrower than the road we have travelled.’

[‘Ananiya advises the imam]

The imam asked him, 'So, what shall we do now?' He replied, ‘Divide the army into three divisions: one division with you, one in the van and the other at the rear. You travel at the head of the army, with a division in the middle.

When the imam heard this counsel, he said to Garad Ahmusa. ‘You shall take

the centre of the army.' He assigned men to him, among whom were Besara, ' Ali al-Waradi, Garad ' Abid and others of their ilk: fifty knights. Then the imam ordered them to move out. with him in the van of the army, and their guide, 'Ananiya, at their head.

From dawn until midday they trudged, made heavy going of the march along the hazardous road, walking in single file because of the difficulty of the path and because of the trees. Then the mountains of Wasal loomed up before them. The imam asked the guide, 'What mountains are these that we can see? What region are they in?' 'Ananiya replied, 'This is the region of Wasal. It is alleged that the king is on top of this mountain range.' The imam asked, 'And is the king residing there now?' The guide replied, 'About this, I know only what we have heard while with you. But I will mount and set off and bring you back news.' So he mounted his horse, and four knights accompanied him.

['Ananiya captures some shepherds]

They had not gone far with him when they met some of the idolaters' shepherds who asked the guide, 'Who are you from?' 'From the army of the companions of Degalan. He has sent us to the king; we have with us a letter for him. Do you have any knowledge of the king's whereabouts? What town is he in?' The shepherds replied, 'Yes, the king is on top of these mountains, in the region of Haga/ Immediately they made them captive, but they did not let them know that they were Muslims. They said to them, 'You will act as guides for us on the way to the king,' and arrived with them at where the imam was.

'Ananiya said to the imam. "These are shepherds belonging to the idol-worshippers. We seized them, and they have informed us about the whereabouts of the king. He is on top of the mountain/ The imam said, 'Kill them now, in case they carry news to the idol-worshippers.' 'Ananiya replied, 'These know nothing about us; nor do the people of the region know anything about us. If we kill them, then the people of the region will know that we are Muslims and they will carry news concerning us to the king. If we let them go, then they will not be any the wiser about us,' The imam said, 'You are right. Set them free.'

[The Muslims see the king's pavilion for the first time]

Then the imam and the Muslims set out on their way. ⁴⁴ The imam instructed his soldiers, 'If you meet up with one of the Christians, speak to him only in their language.⁵⁰ Don't tell anyone that you are Muslims. If you encounter anyone, say, "We belong to Degalan's army and we are travelling to the king".'

So they set out in earnest on the journey. They had gone only a short distance when, from afar, they saw something white on the mountain top. What had caught their attention from afar was the king's pavilion, pitched on the mountain top. They were able to pick it out from two days' journey away because of its great size. It was sixty cubits long, and fifty cubits high at its topmost point. This kind of structure was commonly erected by the Abyssinian kings. When the Muslims realised that what they had seen was the king's pavilion,¹ and that it was impossible for them to proceed as before.

they marched slowly so that those coming after them could catch up with them. They had put on, had dressed themselves in Christian apparel. The imam said to them, 'By God, do not speak except in the Yejju'^2 language/

While they were proceeding along the way, there were Christians in their vicinity. All of the idol-worshippers were at their work. They never suspected that the Muslims were not Christians.

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him, says: While they were on their way, a Christian woman came, crying out to the imam, thinking him to be the patrician Degalhan, She drew near to the imam, and he sought to speak to her in the Yejju language. But he spoke in the language of the Muslims,*""saying 'give back her possessions.' She understood his language, fell back towards the rear and sat down, saying, 'These are Muslims,' but no one paid any attention to her.

The Muslims continued on their way, while the Christians went about their business: some of them were tilling the soil; others were washing their garments; others were transporting the King's flour to the mountain where he was; others were ascending the mountain to seek the king's judgement. They were so ignorant of the presence of the Muslims that the latter arrived at the town of Wasal, which they bypassed on their right, and went on until they reached the mountain on whose [f°63] summit the king of Abyssinia was. They rested below the mountain.

The Christians had no inkling of them. They were rejoicing and happy because of the message that Degalhan had sent, in which he said, 'I was victorious over them; they have gone down to Fatagar.'

The guide 'Ananiya went looking for the imam and said to him, 'This is the place; we have reached it.' The imam asked him, 'Let us have your opinion: what do you think?' He replied, 'This is what I think: let us remain here until your force is at full strength. Let us spend the night here and when morning comes we will line up the cannon that we have with us. By then the rear guard will have caught up

with us. The foot-soldiery will proceed ahead of the cavalry, and then we will ascend the mountain. Then may God grant us the victory.'

[The imam decides to attack the king immediately]

The imam asked, 'Have these Christians worked out that we are Muslims; do they or do they not think that we are Degalhan's army?' The guide replied, 'The idol-worshippers are not at all aware that you are Muslims. They have no idea that you are anything but Degalhan's army.'

Then the imam replied, 'If they know nothing about us, what are we waiting for? Let us ascend the mountain now.' 'But,' the guide asked, 'Where is the army of cavalry and foot-soldiers that was bringing up our rear? Shouldn't we wait for them?' The imam replied, 'We may be only thirty knights and fifty foot-soldiers, but the latter will proceed ahead of the horses, and we will begin the climb putting our trust in God. The rear-guard will catch up with us as we are making the ascent. And as for passing the night here, the idol-worshippers would get to know about us, take their battle positions, and block the way against us. It would take only one man to dislodge a boulder on top of us to cause more devastation than our cannons of which you speak. No, let us make the ascent now.'

When the guide saw that the imam was determined upon going up, he said, 'As for me, I have no opinion aside from this. It is for you to command'. Then the emir Abu Bakr, and Balaw 'Abduh, rose and said, 'O our Lord, the guide spoke the truth in what he said.' The imam gave no reply, but said to Absama Nur, 'Didn't you say to me, "Let us go up by the path held by Degalhan"? Now I say to you that I know a point of entry easier of access than the one guarded by Degalhan. This is that point of entry.' At which

Absama Nur said, 'You are right; it was as you say. So now let us die, or "let us make the ascent.'

[The battle of Wasal begins!]

The imam mounted his horse and said to his companions, 'Make your preparations for battle; and may God bless you.¹ So his companions put on their armour, among them Absama Nur, the emir Mujahid, the emir Abu Bakr Qatin, Ahmad Goita, Admus, Ura'i Abu Bakr, 'AIT Goita. Balaw 'Abduh, 'All Tai Ijir, (Jra'i 'Utman bin Dar 'All. Ya'qim, AzmaC Haibi, Farasaham Sultan and the night-watchman of the imam, by name 'Aisa, who was a Sufi.

The imam mounted his horse called *Sakb*.⁷ and then summoned Samsu, the commander of the infantry and said, 'Divide into two sections: go up by the side of

the mountain and make your way among the trees. We will proceed by the road. If any one of the Christians obstructs us, then you will be above them. Attack them.'

To the other division under the command of Fanj Sabbar he said, 'You march before our horses.' Instantly they unsheathed their swords, held their shields on their heads, and set off.

After they had gone, the imam addressed Absama Nur, one of the Muslim knights, and said to him, 'Go on ahead and march with the infantry, along with the emir Mujahid, with Admus, and Ahmad Goita.' The imam was with the emir Abu Bakr, Farasaham Sultan " Ali Goita, ' Ali Tai Ijir, and Balaw^r 'Abduh. These followed them, along with the remainder of his companions in the cavalry who were behind them. Thus they ascended the mountain, and the idol-worshippers had no knowledge and heard no news of the Muslims.

The imam and his companions had travelled half the distance when one of the Muslim foot-soldiers, who was heavily addicted to *qat* and to dried

green dates⁵⁶ and was below the mountain, set fire to a big church that was there. The idol-worshippers could see the conflagration from the mountain top, and excitement spread from one to another. ^{>7} The Muslims wheeled around in the direction of the fire and when the imam saw it he said, 'May God not bless whoever did this/ and then said to his companions, 'Give your horses the whip and ascend, for the idol-worshippers have noticed the conflagration/

Some of the idol-worshippers meantime saddled their horses, while others took hold of their shields. While all this was happening, the Muslim cavalry that had gone ahead with Absama Nur broke through their midst crying, 'God is great/ and slackened their reins.

The first one of them to attack was Admus. He struck one of the soldiers of the idol-worshippers, and made him tumble down off his horse, dead. Absama Nur was in their midst calling out, 'There is no God but Allah, and Muhammad is the Prophet of God/ and the idol-worshippers fled to the pavilion of the king, and took refuge there. Some of them deserted in full view of them,

[The king supervises the defence]

Then the king emerged from his pavilion and mounted his horse along with his chamberlains who numbered around four-hundred knights. The king was in their midst as they formed a protective perimeter around him. The rest of the army that was carrying shields assembled in a throng.

When the idol-worshippers closed ranks around the pavilion of the king, the Muslims stood their ground until the imam reached them. The latter was reviewing the infidel forces that had gathered at the king's pavilion when they were joined by fifteen Muslim knights who were like raging lions. Among them was 'Abd an-Nasr, Sabr ad-Din, the knight of the Muslims and of all of them the most courageous, with Garad Mattan, 'Abjad and others of their ilk.

[JGsii changes sides]

The Muslims were holding their ground, and the idol-worshippers were doing the same, when a knight rode out at full pelt from the midst of the infidel army in the direction of the Muslims. Sabr ad-Din moved out to

engage him, and raised his spear to stab at him when the knight uttered the

cry, 'There is no God but Allah, and Muhammad is the Prophet of God.' so he held back from striking him for he was astonished at what he said. The imam had heard his cry, and asked him, 'Who are you?' He answered, "I am Jusu . I believe in God and in the Prophet. My son Besara is with you; I am his

father.' The imam replied. 'God is the greatest. Leave him be. He is a

Muslim.' Thereupon Ura'i Abu Bakr exclaimed to the imam, 'What are we waiting for now?' God is with us,' and the imam Ahmad replied, 'Charge, and I will be at your head'.

The stoiyteHer, may God Almighty have mrcy upon him, says: While they were concerned about making the charge, their primary concern was with pleasing the Most Holy, as the Most High says. 'Of the believers there arc men who remain true to the covenant that they have entered into with God.'^{55*}

They charged as one man, jostling one another so that they could get the better of the idol-worshippers, and broke through their midst, scattering their massed ranks, and engaged them in battle.

[The Abyssinian forces are routed]

An hour had scarcely elapsed before God cast fear into the heart of the infidel army and they turned tail with the Muslims in pursuit of them, killing them until

they arrived at a mountain which was there, a lofty mountain named Haguh. When the idol-worshippers reached the mountain the Muslims advanced, and moved against them, [f 64] to do battle with them.

One of the Muslims whose name was Au⁹ Abu Bakr Faqir ⁶ as-Saik al-Barkalli - God bestowed a benefit upon us through him Amen - charged one of the infidels who was one of the king's nobles. He plucked him from his saddle, and demanded of him 'Arc you the king of Abyssinia?'. 'No/ he replied, I am not the king of Abyssinia. Don't kill me. This is the king of Abyssinia,' and he pointed to where the king was, with his finger.

Abu Bakr replied, "You are trying to dcceive me/ While they were speaking, some soldiers noticed that their lord had been captured by the above-mentioned person. So they charged. Some of them seized his horse, while others struck him. The imam, who arrived after the idol-worshippers had captured that *faqir*, saw him in their hands, and then charged, rescuing him from them.

[The imam is recognized]

The king of Abyssinia looked at the imam, and at the sword in his left hand - for he was left-handed¹ - and recognized him from the trappings of his horse, and from the sword in his left hand. He cried out to his companions, 'Satan has come to you in person,' and his soldiers yelled at the imam, saying 'You have betwitched us; you have bewitched us/by which they meant in their language that he was a sorcerer who knew the trees, and cut pieces off them to use them in sorcery'. But they were lying.

The imam broke through their midst, and split their ranks, doing battle with them with no false show of bravery. They fled to the mountain, but could find no track in it so they dismounted from their horses, held their reins in their hands, and went about looking for a path by which they could climb the

mountain. Then the imam cried out at them saying, 'Leave our horses and save yourselves because we arc arc catching up with you.'

[Desperate attempts to escape the carnage]

When the idol-worshippers heard their cries and their words, they became frightened. In the grip of terror they abandoned their horses, and climbed the mountain on their knees. One of them grabbed hold of a tree to pull himself up, but the branch of the tree broke and he fell to the ground below, and the Muslims

killed him. Another of them scaled the mountain but only after strenuous effort on his part.

The imam sent to the place where the horses that had been abandoned by their riders were to be found. There were around seventy of them, with their saddle clothes made of crimson broadcloth.

The remainder of the Muslims, meanwhile, were all at some distance, similarly killing and taking prisoners.

In the imam's force was Absama Nur, Ya'qim, Admus, the emir Mujahid, Garad Ahmadus son of the emir Mahfuz, Farasaham Satut and 'Abd Allah bin Muharram al-Mahrl.

[The fate of the king of Abyssinia]

The storyteller of the Futuh al-Habasa says: The king of Abyssinia dismounted from his horse and proceeded cautiously. He had with him five led horses that he guided ahead of him by their reins and their harnesses because of the narrowness of the path.

The imam had left by a different route with his companions. They dismounted from their horses and travelled by foot. The rest of the Muslims, that is to say Garad 'Utman bin Juhar and Ura'i 'Utman, had outdistanced the king *en route*. and, when he saw them he hid himself in some trees there and they had no idea that he was there. While all this was going on, the imam reached them with his companions who were biding their time, waiting for the king to reach them from below, for they had reached the top ahead of him.

Suddenly a knight galloped towards them. UraT 'Utman charged him and took him, seizing him by hand. He was a distinguished patrician, of a high rank close to the king. When the imam saw him he ordered that he be put to death, and God cast his soul into the fire.

While they were waiting, the sun set, the clouds came swirling in and the rain started falling. The cold was bitter, so the Muslims retraced their steps in order to re-group with their companions.

After they had gone back down, the king emerged from his hiding place and took the path for the Amba,⁶³ travelling through the night.

The Muslims meanwhile had rejoined their companions who had lighted their

tires and entered with joy and gladness the tents of the idol- worshippers which were crammed full of booty - gold, silver, horses and mules, silk, innumerable royal robes, silk brocade furnishings that belonged to the king and to his courtiers, women of surpassing beauty, the daughters of patricians, the sons of patricians, and thousands of other items. The domed tent of the king remained on its site, with his throne and his weapons inside it.

[The king's pavilion is cut to shreds on Friday October 27, 1531 AD]

When the imam arrived there he gave glory to God the Most High for the victory, and asked his companions, 'What have you done with what was inside the king's pavilion?'¹ They replied, 'The Muslims have taken all his weapons, but the king's throne and the silk brocades are still where they were.' The imam said, 'As for the pavilion, I don't need it; cut it up and take it away. But bring me the throne and the silk brocade drapes'. So the soldiers went to the big tent that belonged to the king, and cut it to shreds with their knives.

The Muslims passed the night in joy and contentment, and only a little of the night had passed when the division that was bringing up the centre arrived, with Garad Ahmusa. As they were climbing the mountain, the horse of Garad Ahmusa - its name *Du al-Jina* had been given to it by the Imam - had that very day lost its footing, fallen down, been smashed to pieces and died on the spot. Garad Ahmusa wept for his horse, so the imam gave him a choice one from among the led horses of the king.

The rear-guard had not taken part in the battle and spent the night *en route*. They arrived the next day, and the Muslims greeted them, one the other, and they rejoiced exceedingly because the Most High God had given them the victory. To each one of them the imam gave a horse, saying, "Since you were not with us at the battle, you haven't taken anything."

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him says: The battle of Wasal took place on Friday 16 Rabi' al-awwali, in the year 938 of the prophetic *hijra*.[^] May the most gracious blessing and peace be upon him who won it.

[Introduction to the invasion of Bet Amhara]

The recollection of their journey to Bet Amhara which is a region of flat arable land, standing crops, rivers and copious rain, of wheat and barley, In it are their scribes,⁵⁶⁶ their priests and monks. It is also the residence of their kings, but the king does not reside there permanently. No king who reigns over Abyssinia can exercise his rule unless he has been enthroned in Bet Amhara. They call the people

there who serve the churches, *Dabtara*^{Ab} which means in their language ‘eloquent theologians’. These are Christian people whom the king regards with beneficence and diffidence. Some of them become advisers to the king, while others are related to him by marriage/

The imam set out on the third day after the battle for Bet Amhara and passed the night in a place called Lalibala where the water was so frozen that some Muslims perished from the cold. When somebody wanted to drink, he had to stab the ice with an iron pick, [f’65] and smash it to get the last drop of water.

Then they left Lalibala, and the king’s church that was in Bet Amhara loomed up before them. When the guide saw it, he stood in his tracks and said to the imam. This is the church that you see; you have arrived’. The imam asked the guide, ‘Shall we, or shall we not, wait here until our army and our soldiers catch up with us? The guide replied, ‘We should remain until we and the army can enter it together; and we should be armed and ready for war.’

[The churches of Bet Amhara]

So the imam waited until the Muslim force was at full strength. Then he asked the guide, ‘What is the number of the churches that are here?’ He listed a great number of churches, among them the church called Makana Sellase; the church Atronsa Maryam ⁷ that king Zar’a Ya’qob, son of king Daawit, built; the church Dabra Nagwadgwad ¹ and the church of Bet Samayat.³⁷²

The imam sent Muslims against all of the churches, with the exception of the church of Makana Sellase to which the imam himself went. Against the church of Atronsa Maryam he sent the wazir Nur bin Ibrahim, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, To the church of Dabra Nagwadgwad he sent Saldl Muhammad with his army. Besara bin Jusa was sent against the church of Bet Samayat.

[The pillaging of Makana Sellase]

For his part, the imam went to Makana Sellase pausing with his force at its wall, and the imam, in amazement, entered it. His close friends entered with him. When he saw it, he was almost blinded by its dazzling brilliance. The church was embellished with gold and silver plates, encrusted with pearls. The door panels were made of wood ten cubits long and four cubits wide. They had covered the top of it with embellishments of gold and silver, and above the gold there were precious stones of many colours. The church was one-hundred cubits long, and its width was the same. The height of its topmost point was one-hundred-and-fifty cubits. Its ceiling and its courtyards were covered in plates of gold, and with

images of gold. They were stupified by the workmanship. The Muslims who had not entered it, yelled out to the imam saying, 'Open the door so that we can enter it, and take some pleasure in looking at it.' So he opened to them, and the Muslims swarmed in. The imam said, 'Whatever anyone takes shall be his, apart from the plates.' So they set to work with a thousand axes, ripping out the gold and the precious stones which were in the church, from the time of the afternoon prayer, until the time of evening prayer.

Each took as much gold as he could carry. They enriched themselves with so much booty that they would never more be in want. More than a third of its gold was burnt in the church. The imam spent the night close by the church.

[The fate of the king's palaces]

The storyteller.; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: The imam asked all the Arabs who were with him, 'Is there the like of this church, with its images and its gold, in Byzantium, or in India, or in any other place?' They replied, 'We never saw or heard of its like in Byzantium or India or anywhere in the world.'

[The treasure of Atronsa Maryam]

Close by the church there were three dwellings belonging to the king who resided in them. Inside them were wondrous things for those who saw them. The imam entered one of them and resided there. A second he gave to the emir Ahmusa and to the emir Abu Bakr Qatin. The two emirs entered the dwelling with their forces and it accommodated all of them. The third dwelling, the imam turned into a mosque.

The emir Nur, in the meantime, had arrived at the church of Atronsa Maryam, entered it, and was astounded at its workmanship. But as for gold, they found none in it. The idol-worshippers who looked after it had taken the gold that was in it away. In its vicinity they found four monks. The emir Nur asked the monks, 'Where is the church's treasure?' They answered, 'We won't show' you, even if we die for the religion of Maryam.' So the Muslims killed them.

One of the Muslims, named Farasaham 'AIT, rose and noticed a house in the vicinity of the church, locked up with iron bars. He smashed some of them, and then poked his head in so that he could see what was inside. He saw boxes, piled one on top of the other, from the floor to the ceiling of the house. So he returned to the wazir Nur and told him about the house.

The wazir accompanied him to the house, and stood at its door. Then he counted off some of his soldiers, around one-hundred of them, and said to them,

‘Go in and bring out the treasure.’ Each one of them carried out a bundle of silk brocade, and came out with it many times, but the house looked the same. They grew exhausted from the labour, and sat down. The wazir Nur asked them, ‘What are you sitting down for? Is the house empty?’ They replied. ‘Even though we have brought out a great deal, the house still looks the same, and we are exhausted.’ He said to them, ‘You have brought out only the brocades made out of crocodile skin¹ and velvet cloth and other plush material, and silk. Isn't there any gold inside?’ They replied, ‘There is gold in a corner of the house, but we began to remove from the area where the boxes are which contain the brocades.’

So he said to others of them, ‘You bring out the gold, and leave the brocades.’¹ So they went in and brought out to him the gold and the silver, and vessels of gold, like thuribles, and cups,’⁴ all of them gold. Ten strong men carried them and put them down before him.

The wazir Nur summoned his companions, one-thousand men in all and said to them, ‘This is my share; and this is the imam’s share. Now you go into the house, and take out for yourselves whatever is in it. Whatever each one takes, that is his.’ So they went in, and each man carried away some red gold, silver and silk. Some of them took out three loads; some of them took out four loads. And they never ceased carrying out treasure from afternoon until evening: and from evening until morning.

The wazir said to them, ‘Now that you’ve satisfied your appetite for booty, you have no camels to carry it for you: so you carry it on your shoulders, and on your mules. The house is still full of treasure and of silk, but we are not going to leave this immense quantity of silk for the idol-worshippers. We will burn it.’ Then he said, ‘Burn the house,* and they burnt it along with its silk brocades. And the church they burnt to a cinder.

Then they returned to the imam, and arrived to find him dwelling in the king’s house. The imam received his share of the gold and the silk brocade. The amount of gold could not be calculated. Among it was a golden calf with four feet that they used to call *Tabor*³⁷⁵ and which weighed more than one-thousand ounces - a book of gold, with a human image inside it; representations of birds and lions and golden plates from which four persons could eat. The imam gave four plates to Said as-Sarif Mujahid Jama! ad-Din Marzuq - may God assist us through him; and one of them to Said Muhammad Handul; [f°66] the rest of them the imam put in the treasure house of the Muslims.

With regard to Saidi Muhammad and Besara who had set off for the Church of Bet Samayat which the mother of the king Wanag Sagad⁵⁷⁶ had built: they entered

it, and saw marvellous things in it. But they found no treasure. In it they met four monks whom they questioned about the treasure and the gold. These said, 'The mother of the king was interred in a sarcophagus in the church. When news of your coming reached them they took the mother of the king and the treasure that was with her, and took them to the Amba. So, on the spot, the two of them set fire to the church, at which the monks wept and entered it and were burnt to death inside it. May the Most High God fight them.

[The fate of Dabra Nagwadgwad]

Besara then regrouped with Saidi Muhammad and they set off for the imposing church of Dabra Nagwadgwad that king Admas son of Zara Ya'qob had built. They arrived at it, entered it and discovered vast treasure in it. King Admas was interred in a chest in the middle of the church. They took away its treasure, including a golden calf as tall as a man's height. They took away treasure, all of it gold from Sembera/ in loads whose weight they could not estimate. They burnt down the church,^{>78} and then turned back, returning to the imam who was in the king's house. He gave each of the two of them his share of the gold and silk; and the rest he put into the treasure house of the Muslims.

[What happened to the church of Ganata Giyorgis]

'Abd an-Nasr, meantime, arrived at the church called Ganata Giyorgis."¹' King Eskender had built it. The imam had been informed of it by two prisoners, treasurers of the king. On the day that their king fled they said, 'Don't kill us. And we will show you the way to the king's treasure of gold, silver and silk that will take five-hundred men to carry it.' 'In what region?' asked the imam. To which they replied, 'In the region of Walaqa. It is in a church there, on the mountain top.'

Because of this information, the imam had sent ¹Abd an-Nasr, with the two captives to show him the way to it. When they reached the church they

Cftf)

found nothing inside it, so they burnt it down. They went on to the place of the treasure in the region of Walaqa, preceded by the guide. Whenever they met any Christians they said to them, 'We are Christians from the king's army, heading for Gojjam,' for the king had set off in the direction of Gojjam on the day that he fled. Finally they reached it. The guide went and said to 'Abd an-Nasr, 'We have arrived at the place of the treasure. You can see this mountain, and the church on its top, in which is the king's treasure, which belonged to his fathers, and to his ancestors.'

[The way to the church is open to the Muslims]

The storyteller.; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: Fifty of the king's slaves, along with a chief, guarded the mountain road. But this day, it happened that the mother of the chief of the guards died in a village below the mountain and the chief had left with his companions, the fifty guards, to bury his mother. And so it was that the Muslims took their place upon the mountain. There was nobody in the church except four monks and three eunuchs.

When they arrived below the mountain, 'Abd an-Nasr took his shield and his sword, and his companions took their shields and their swords, and they climbed the mountain. They arrived at the church and stood before its door. The eunuchs and the monks stood there too. They told them, 'Bring out the treasure.* The Muslims killed the monks, but the eunuchs brought out the treasure consisting of brocade heavy with gold, five-hundred loads worth; and in the same way they carried out even more magnificent red gold; and from the marvels of the church many crowns¹ that belonged to the king, or to the kings who went before him, among which were crowns that the king wore, on the outside of which were gold plates with gem stones; * golden cinctures, gold armlets, and gold daggers, the hafts and sheaths of each one of which were of gold; golden maces and a golden calf whose feet were encrusted with precious stones, and whose neck was two cubits;"" golden bridles for horses; and plates and cups all of them of gold.

[Arrangements for transporting the booty]

'Abd an-Nasr gathered all this together, for he was the imam's treasurer, and listed it all in his register. He split up his companions, in order for them to carry it: they numbered three-thousand. Each group had one of their number as chief. Then he summoned the chiefs and shared out the treasure amongst them. Some of them carried two-thousand ounces of gold; some of them one-thousand-five-hundred; others of them one-thousand; and others again five-hundred. Then they went back to the imam who, when they reached him, was at his earlier camp site.

The imam and his companions were astonished at something the like of which they had never seen. The imam split the hrocares into three shares.

I

One share he took, and placed it in the treasure house;' the other two shares he gave to 'Abd an-Nasr and his companions. As for the gold, the imam took as his by right those objects that were beautiful or of exquisite workmanship;

w _____ 585

the rest of the immense quantity of the gold that they call *Sembera*, so much that it

could not be weighed, he divided amongst them (all) and they stayed on in Bet Amhara.

Then the imam heard that there were Christians who were seeking refuge in a district at a point above the Nile called Abbay - the district was known as Walah⁸⁶ for it was between Abbay and Amhara - and that there were churches there that belonged to previous kings who were the ancestors of the king.

When the imam heard about these, he sent against them Ura'i Abun to whom he entrusted the white ensign, and assigned men to him amongst whom were Zaharbui Muhammad and the emir Abu Bakr Qatin. the emir Mujahid, Absama Nur, Ahmad Goita, the sheikh Dawa and Ura'i Ahmad Din. The guide was Azmac Halb. and there were two-hundred cavalry and one- thousand-five-hundred foot-soldiers. He handed over the standard to him and sent with him the one who had told him about the church. So all of them set out and they reached the region of Walah and found four churches there.

Two of the churches were embellished with gold ornaments, and the other two were without gold, but had been painted and sculpted, and were of meticulous workmanship.

They entered the churches with the gold ornamentation, and set to, stripping off the gold with axes, and took away all the gold that was in them.

Then they entered the churches made of timber and within them they discovered a collection of golden calves, each of them on four pillars. Each of the chiefs took one calf. Every calf weighed either two-thousand ounces or one-thousand-five-hundred ounces or one-thousand ounces - of this kind and of this weight. They took away all that was inside the churches, and whatever they found in them in addition to the gold and silken things. Then they burnt the churches down.

As for the imam - after he had equipped Ura'i Abun for his expedition, and six days after he had set out, a Christian came to the wazir Nur and said to him, 'I know where [f'67] the king is. He has concealed himself in a

wooded desert. He has fifteen knights with him. I will lead you to him; what will you give me if I lead you to him?' The wazir replied, 'We will give you whatever treasure you wish. And we will exempt you from the poll-tax/ To which he replied, 'I will guide you.' Then the wazir Nur informed Garad Ahmusa. He repeated to him what the Christian had told him. Then they went to the imam and told him

what the Christian had said. The wazir Nur asked him, 'Shall it be I, or Garad Ahmusa, who goes against him?' The imam replied, 'Let Garad Ahmusa go.' So Ahmusa went. The imam gave him 'Ura'i 'Utman with his army, Farasaham 'All, ⁴All WaradI, Farasaham 'Utman, Farasaham Satut. Samsu the commander of the Sea, and "Abbas the nephew of the imam.

The guide went ahead of them and they arrived at the place where the king was; but they did not find him. They asked the guide, "Where is the king?" He replied, 'He was here; and this is the site of his campfires.' Straightaway Ahmusa sent his knights into the countryside and they captured two farmers whom they questioned about the king. They said,⁴He was here, but when he saw your fires during the night he left here and crossed over the river Baselo and reached Bagemder. Garad Ahmusa then set off after him, a

rc>7

journey of two days. But when they reached the river Baselo" they did not

find him. Then they stopped where they were and said, 'We will not meet up with the king after this; let us return to the imam.* So they went back two day's journey and camped in a place.

[Ahmusa decides to attack the Amba]

v

^88 •

Ahmusa then assembled his troops and said to them, 'This Amba is quite close to us; let us attack it and besiege it until we capture it.' The sharif

Nur then rose up, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, along with the Assembly, and they spoke out. He said that the Amba was a difficult place, with lofty mountains, gorges and well-guarded forts. The only way to get up to it would be with ladders. The sharif Nur also said, 'The imam did not command us to march to the Amba. Instead, let us return to the imam/

Garad Ahmus asked the sharif Nur, 'Are you the emir or am I?' The sharif Nur replied, 'You are the emir/ Then he said, 'If I am the emir, then obey me; and let there be no talk like this amongst you.' Then they set out on a difficult path through the mountains and along river beds until they arrived at the above-mentioned Amba.

They saw the mountain, lofty, and as if hewn out of wood. '*⁴ There

was no way of going up without a ladder. On its summit there were more than a thousand dwellings in which the kings' children lived. "vu On the summit there were rivers, and treasure houses'^1 and the kings' children.

The ston'te/Ier; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: For every king, when he bore a son, would have him taken to this mountain of the Amba lest there be a dispute in the nation. When a king died, they brought down one of the kings' sons who were on the Amba, and invested him with the kingdom. This was their practice, and the practice of their fathers and of their ancestors. On the Amba there were two-thousand-three-hundred sons and daughters of the kings. The king provided for their sustenance and their apparel.

[The Muslims lay seige to the Amba]

When Ahmusa reached the Amba, and lay seige to its gates, he attacked them by night at the gates. The Muslims made the rounds of the gates by night, and used ladders by means of which to climb the mountain. But the idol-worshippers upon the gates lighted fires and strengthened the guard on the pathways, and went about with torches*⁹² keeping a watch out for the Muslims. The latter were trying to climb up. Sometimes they would put their ladders against the side of the mountain, and get ready to climb up when the infidels, who were aware of them would throw boulders down. The Muslims would then pull back.

One night, while all this was going on, some of them organised an attempt to scale the mountain. They were seven Muslims - 'Abd Allah bin Nasr ad-Din al-Hamwi, Nasr bin Dalan, the sharif Nur, Admas the killer of Takla Iyasus, Sa'id, the equerry of Garad Ahmusa, Anas, one of the pages of the imam, and 'Abd Allah as-Somali/⁹.

They set off by night for the gate and they said, 'Without doubt, we will scale the mountain today, if the Most High God wills it.' They climbed up, keeping themselves out of sight, and said amongst themselves. 'Let none of you say a word.' They stood erect at the bottom of the mountain and saw that the guard was sitting at the gate. The mountain had three gates that gave access to it. And every gate had guards. When they saw that the guards were lighting their fires, they spoke quietly amongst themselves, saying, 'This guard is sitting down. Let us remain seated until he goes to sleep, for their fires have been kindled, and they are making them flare up. Let us wait patiently until it has gone out. When it has died down, we will know that he has gone to sleep.'

[Sharif Nur's cough alerts the guards]

So they waited patiently until the guard fell asleep, and his fire went out. Immediately, Nasr bin Dalan got up, and his companions behind him, and they started to climb up, crawling on their hands and feet, on all fours,' and drew near to

the gate. Nasr ad-Din was at the head of them. He climbed up and drew his dagger so that he could slit the guard's throat. The sharif Nur had grown exhausted, and he coughed two or three times. The guard woke up, and the others cried out, 'thieves, thieves/and hurled stones and boulders at them. The Muslims raced back down, one tumbling on top of the other. The sharif Nur, meantime, when he saw' his companions tumbling ail about, and being unable to follow' them down, remained under a rock that was there until dawn and then went back down by himself, and rejoined his companions. Each greeted the other.

Ura'i¹ Utman went to one of the gates, and he and his forcc remained at the gate of the Amba, Garad Ahmusa was at the other gate. Ura'i 'Utman fought them all through the night, and they fought a bloody battle the entire night. Then the idol-worshippers lied and some of the Muslim soldiers climbed up the mountain, among them Fanj Sabbar, Bal Sur Ibrahim, Garad Amis, Barbari, 'All WaradI the martyr, and 'All TaT fjir. They were universally accepted as courageous. They went up and reached the first gate which they broke through and then proceeded in as far as the second gate. But this gate was elevated and locked shut with iron bars. They pounded the gate trying to break it down, but there was a keep above the gate. In the keep there were idol-worshippers who hurled enormous stones - each stone as big as a cooking pot - at the Muslims from a leather catapult. The Muslims went back down [f°68] the mountain after expending a great deal of effort.

Garad Ahmusa sent to the imam, saying to him, 'I have laid seige to the Amba; will you catch up with me?' He sent his messenger to the imam who was in his original camp. He saw- Ahmusa's letter and then the imam asked the messenger, 'Who ordered you to proceed to the Amba?' The messenger replied, 'After our setting off against the king, and not finding him in his camp, and after following him for two days, and still not meeting up with him, we retraced our steps two days' journey. After this Garad Ahmusa said to the army, "I am going to invade the Amba.*' The Muslims found this invasion repugnant, But he asked them, "Am [not your commander?]' They replied, "Of course," and then he said, "So, obey me." He attacked the Amba with them, and passed a night. Then he sent me to you/

[The imam disapproves of the tactics of Garad Ahmusa]

The imam asked him, "Is there room there for the cavalry to manoeuvre; otherwise, what kind of access does it provide?" 'There is no access,' he replied, 'either for the cavalry or the infantry: the only way of scaling it is with ladders.' The imam said to him, 'You go ahead, and I will come after you.' Then he added. 'Tell them, and Garad Ahmusa, to fall back from where they are, and to stay in an accessible place until I come to them.' The messenger set off at a forced march until he reached Garad Ahmusa and told them what the imam had said to him.

The imam, meanwhile, waited two days, expecting Ura‘l Abun who reached him on the third day with the gold to which we have already referred. The imam took his share and gave a share to each one of them. Then, on the fourth day after the departure of the messenger, he set out from Bet Amhara for the Amba and Garad Ahmusa. For three days he marched, and w'hen there was only a day's march between him and the Amba, he pitched camp there.

[The princes and princesses appeal to the king]

The storyteller; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: As for the inhabitants of the Amba, the children of the kings - when the Muslims bcseiged them and bore down heavily upon them, they sent a messenger to the king by means of whom they told him, ‘The Muslims have us hemmed in on all sides in our city and have laid seigc to us. Send us your army before we have to surrender the region. If your army delays in coming then we may have to relinquish the district to them, however reluctantly we may do it.’

Their messenger set out and reached the king. When he heard him, he sent three patricians with their armies, among whom was the patrician Behtwadam Sarti the son of ‘Amdu, the patrician Yona‘el, and the third was Azmaʕ Ycshaq. The patricians set out and arrived on the night when the Muslims broke down the gates during the battle waged by Ura‘I ‘Utman. and in the morning they caught up with them. They reached them *via* the Angot road.

The Muslims were unaware of their presence; being totally absorbed in the attack on the citadel. The Muslims had no knowledge of any idol- worshippers other than those at the gate which Ura‘i ‘Utman was attacking. Neither Ura‘i ‘Utman nor his companions had their horses with them; they had left all of the horses with Garad Ahmusa.

When UraT saw that the king’s forcce had caught up with him, he began to egg on his companions. He prepared for battle, took his shield and his sword, and his companions did likewise. The ground w'here the battle was fought was not suitable for the cavalry; only for foot soldiers.⁵⁹⁷

The idol-worshippers abandoned their horses and each one took his spear and his shield, and the fighting grew^r intense. Among the idol- worshippers were many archers from the people of Tegre called Simt,^r and others as well from the people of Agame. The Muslims charged, with ⁴All al- Waradi, the knight of the Muslims, and Fanj Sabbar, of the army of Bahr, at their head. They charged as one man. Among them was the emir Gafat, a renowned fighter, Barbari and ‘Ali Tai Ijir.

There was a man from the army of Bahr called Sanbatai who charged with them; and God gave him success, for four soldiers of the idol-worshippers were killed in his attack. They waged a battle to the death, before Ura‘T ‘Utman.

[The ploy of the Abyssinian fighters]

The infidels fled to a distant place, with the Muslims in pursuit, behind them. Then the forces of the idol-worshippers turned in their tracks, headed back towards the Muslims and met up with them where they were. They fought, and then, as before, the idol-worshippers fled a second time. Then they returned to the attack, but the Muslims held their ground and they fought a third time. Then the infidels fled as before. And then they fought, a fourth time, the bloodiest of battles. The fighting was hand to hand. ‘AH al- Waradi burst into their midst and a soldier from Tegre struck him in the breast with his spear. He said, ‘I have gained Paradise with the Master of the Ka‘ba,^{5gQ} and to his companions he said. ‘Don’t be afraid; fight them; it doesn't matter to me.’ Then the emir Gafat charged the soldier whose spear had struck ‘All Waradi, and dealt him a blow with his spear, so that he fell dead. The soldiers of the idol-worshippers overwhelmed the Muslims, and fired a volley of poisoned arrows against them.

[The Muslims are routed; Ura‘i ‘Utman is killed]

When the number of arrows loosed against them increased, the Muslims tied, apart from one of their number, by name Fanj Sabbar who was as roused up as a he-camel. God gave him the victory that day. When his companions fled he stood his ground, alone. He took his sword in his hand and fought a battle to the death. The swords of the idol-worshippers rained down so many blows on his shield, and they lopped so many pieces off it that all he had left was the handle of the shield. He straightaway struck one of the idol-worshippers in the face with it. The idol-worshipper was befuddled, and Fanj Sabbar stood firm, struck him with his sword and cut him in two. Then Fanj Sabbar followed his companions who had fled, and rejoined them. Then, all together, they pulled back.

Ura‘1 ‘Utman was martyred, may God the Most High have mercy upon him; and ‘All Waradi was killed holding his ground. The rest fled, descended from the mountain top and went into the valleys and the forests.

The storyteller, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: When Garad Ahmusa and his companions saw the companions of Ura‘i ‘Utman take flight, they fled without engaging in the battle, went back down and arrived one by one at the bottom of the mountain. That day God gave the victory to Samsu, the commander of the Bahr, to Sitalai and to Wasan Jan. For when the Muslims took to flight, they held fast to the rear-guard, and fought from behind them. All the

Muslims who fell they saved, and kept on like this until their companions found breathing space. Afterwards they blocked the road from Bet Amhara.

[Ciarad Ahmusa is captured on Sunday November 26, 1531 AD]

Garad Ahmusa was taken prisoner. Garad Mattan as-Somali, and ‘Abd Allah bin Nasr ad-Dm al-Hamwi, Salih. ‘Umar. Sa’id, and ‘All Duqalai as- Somali⁶⁰⁰ were all killed. The idol-worshippers took fifteen⁶⁰¹ of the Muslims’

horses. They were routed on a Wednesday, the 14th night had passed⁶⁰² of the month Rabf II,⁶⁰³ nine-hundred-and-thirty-eight⁶¹⁴ from the Hijra of the Prophet upon whom may there be the most gracious blessings and peace. This was caleulated by al-Jaizani, may the Most High God have mercy upon him.

They took Garad Ahmusa in chains into the presence of the king of Abyssinia. They cut the heads off those who died in the fighting, [f70]^{wb} and took them, with the horses, to the king. The king⁶⁰⁶ and the Christians rejoiced exceedingly The king had Garad Ahmusa held in custody for some time, and then, afterwards, had him killed,

[The imam reacts to the defeat]

The companions of Garad Ahmusa who had been routed, reached the imam on the day of his march against the Amba. They informed him about what had happened. He was saddened on account of his brother-in-law Mattan, said the prayer ‘Truly to God we belong, and unto Him do we return,’⁶⁰ and wept. Then he assembled those who were routed, had them sitdown and said, ‘Let all those who witnessed the affair present themselves.’ After they had presented themselves, the imam said to them, ‘We know that the only ones who fought in the attack were Ura’i ‘Utman and his companions. They fought, and their emir was kilted, as was ‘All WaradI and others as well. You companions of Garad Ahmusa, what is your reason for fleeing without giving battle, and for abandoning your emir, along with your horses and weapons?’

They kept silent, and hung their heads and were reluctant to reply. So he ordered that their chiefs be tied up. Those whom they tied up were Farasaham ‘All, lord of Angot after the conquest, Garad Ahmadus and around one-hundred knights. He wanted to kill them, but the theologians and the emirs pleaded for them and they released their bonds. Then he said, ‘I will not let this matter rest here. I will march with you against the Amba and you will fight there’.

[The chiefs force the imam to back down]

Then the leaders said to the imam, You want to finish us all off in this heavily fortified place. If you want to kill us all, then inarch. If not, then you know [what to do]. And even if God gives you the victory and you conquer it, all you will find will be the kings' children: there are no horses there; there is no army there, thanks be to God, and as for treasure, what we already have is as vast as the dust of the earth. The people are tired from carrying it. For all that Abyssinia has not been truly conquered. Dawaro, Bali, Sarkah, Hadya, Waj, Ganz and Damot. None of these provinces has been conquered and these are in their pristine state of infidelity. All of these provinces have armies, horses, patricians and cavalry. So now, let us retrace our steps, and regroup with the wazir 'Addoli and our forces which we left in Fatagar.'

The imam pondered their words, and said, 'What you have said rings true,' and gave up attacking the Amba. Then he said to 'Ananiya, lord of Margai after the conquest, 'You know the road to this above-mentioned region.'^{1,15} You have said to us, "Give up going to the Amba," and we have

given it up. We are going to the region of which you spoke, so you guide us to it, and to the church of Dabra Azhir.^(Al.) He replied, 'Hearing is obeying. I know where it is, and the roads that lead to it.'

The imam spent the night where he had halted, and on the second day would have headed off had not UraT Sahab ad-Din, the son of the paternal uncle of the Sultan 'Umar Din, and Kalad al-Waradi. died. He remained where he was that day out of respect for them, and on the third day they set out for the region of Angot - four days away.

They pitched camp by lake Hayq, with refreshing water in whose midst there was an island. In the middle of the island there was a church and orchards. In the orchards were fruits like sweet pomegranate, peach, tasty quince, and grapes/'¹⁶ There was also sugar, bananas, ginger, aromatic plants and every kind of fruit. In the church there were monks drawn from among the people of the region.

[Zaharbui Muhammad obeys the imam]

Against Dabra Azhir the imam sent the emir Zaharbui Muhammad, the son of the imam's paternal uncle, with the wazir Mujahid and 'Abd an- Nasr, and their forces, along with Garad Saddiq, Ura'i Ahmad, and others of their ilk. The imam seconded to Zaharbui Muhammad three-hundred cavalry, and said to him, 'March, you and your troops, against the church of Dabra Azhir. 'Ananiya will guide you. Scale its mount, and if you encounter resistance, do not fight them until you have informed me. I will come to you and will decide what is the most suitable place for

the cavalry and the infantry/ He replied, 'Hearing is obeying/

The anny and its emir Zaharbui Muhammad set out immediately and arrived at Dabra Azhir at the time of the evening prayer. He saw that the army of Angot and the anny of Badcl Nasr" had fortified their position on the mountain top, near the church. And around the church there was a moat. When the emir Zaharbui Muhammad saw the army, he camped where he was until the sun rose. Then he sent three knights to the imam to notify him of the army, so they set out and gave the imam this information.

After the sun had risen the soldiers and the chiefs asked, 'Why arc we resting here?' He said to them, 'There's nothing for us to do/ And they said, 'Let us scale the mountain/ to which he replied, 'The imam did not command us to fight. So organize your camps, stand your troops in military formation, and let us await the imam's reply / They accepted what he said, harnessed their horses, formed their battle lines and rested there.

The guide, afterwards, went up the mountain, and conversed with the Christians. He said to them, 'Don't imagine that our holding back from fighting is out of panic or fear. On the contrary, the imam said, ^L If you encounter any resistance there, however weak it may be. do not fight them until you have informed me about it: and I will come to you/ We arc waiting for the imam. So now, save yourselves. The imam has cannon with him which, if he fires them at you. will devastate your mountain and your churches/ Pear overcame the hearts of the idol-worshippers because of what he said to them, and 'Ananiya returned to the Muslims and remained with them.

As for the imam, as soon as Zaharbui Muhammad's messenger had reached him, he immediately marched out. When he drew near to the mountain the idol-worshippers saw a dust cloud that filled the air, and immediately fled, followed by the Muslims who killed them or took them prisoner. The remainder of them were scattered around the mountain.

[The treasure of Dabra Azhlr]

The Muslims climbed up to the church, entered it and saw marvellous things in it. The church sparkled with gold. In it there were golden calves,⁶ each of which even five men could not carry. Zaharbui said to the Muslims, 'As for the house, its contents are a blessing from God upon you. Whatever anyone takes, that is his, except for the golden calves; don't go near them.' Then Zaharbui commanded some men to take out the golden calves, and they laid them before him.

After this, the army entered the church, jostling one another: some of them cut away the gold plating with their swords; others used daggers to cut it away. Every single one of them took some of the gold plates that were on the ceiling of the church, its whole interior surface was clad with gold plating. It had been designed and built by the former king Sayfa Ar'ad. '!! The day that it was burnt to the ground it bore the date of the year seven-hundred-and- twenty.^{1"14} Its date had been inscribed on it on the day this king built it.

Also inscribed on the church was the amount of gold treasure that was in it^{nir} [f71] nine-hundred-and-nine-thousand, nine-hundred-and-ninety ounces, not counting the calves, the vessels, the plates and the glistening swords,⁶¹⁶ that it contained. So the Muslims took all of it, and then burnt down the church. They returned to the imam who had camped near the mountain, and rejoined him. They gave him the calves; and the soldiers took the gold from the church.

[The imam demands the release of a Muslim prisoner]

The imam then returned to Lake Hayq and camped there. He sent off a messenger to the people of the island saying, 'Offer obeissance to me. and release the prisoner that you have with you whose name is Ura'i Harb Ar'ad bin Sabr ad-Din Mujahid.

The storyteller; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: This prisoner had been on an expedition with Sultan Muhammed. may the Most High God have mercy upon him, and when the Muslims were put to flight at Dei Meda, the idol-worshippers made him their prisoner.

When the king learnt that he was related to the Sultan he had him sent to Lake Hayq, to the centre of the island, with the monks. He commanded them to convert him to Christianity, so they taught him the Gospel and he learnt it until he could recite the whole book off by heart. He remained there with them on the island sixteen years, though his heart remained at peace with Islam.

When the imam reached this place he sent a messenger to them, on his account. The messenger entered the lake, and swam until he drew near to them; but they threw rocks at him.

He said to them, "I am a messenger to you; do not stone me. The people of the island answered, Tf you arc a messenger don't come near us, for this sorcerer has sent you to us,' they meant the imam, 'say what you have to say to us from a distance.'

So he told them what the imam had said to him and they replied to him, "Say this to your lord: we will give him neither this island, nor our obeissance. Nor will we hand over to you the prisoner. Let him do what he is able against this island.^M We know that he scaled the mountain with cavalry and foot-soldiers. But this is a lake: let him attack us if he is able.' So the messenger went back to the imam and told him what they had said.

[The Arabs and the soldiers from Oman build rafts]

The imam then assembled all the sharifs, with the Arabs and those from the Magreb, and other from Mahra. He said to them: 'We know only open country and mountains. The sea is your livelihood; you know what concerns it. So now, let us hear your opinion. What would you do in this situation?' They replied, 'We need some pieces of thick wood; then watch what we do.' So the imam commanded the soldiers to bring all the pieces of wood. They gathered together for him a vast quantity of wood, and laid it down by the shore of the lake.

Then they said, 'Bring us some ropes.' The imam said, 'Get a large quantity of rope now.' So, within an hour, they presented him with more than ten thousand ropes and he said to them, 'Now do what you said, for we have supplied you with the pieces of wood and the ropes.' The Arabs came together and said to the imam, 'We will do as you command us with pleasure; but grant us a respite of three or four days so that we can get to work on it.' The imam responded, 'So be it!' They then made three large log-rafts^{6i!s} and two smaller ones.

They completed their task very proficiently and made them very sturdy.^{(l!g} The imam said to them, 'Try out one of the rafts on the lake, so that I can observe how it works.' So they brought one of the little ones to the middle of the lake and the imam saw that it performed very poorly. The imam said to them, 'Were you to travel on this raft you would not reach them before they had killed you by loosing rocks and arrows at you. This will be useless, unless you come up with something else. So make it for us, and let us know about it.' They held their peace.

Then a certain man stood up, his name was Jusu, the father of Besara. He said, 'I have an idea.' The imam replied, 'Let us hear what you think.' So he said, 'Slaughter a cow, skin it, then make it into a water-skin, and then inflate it. Make a lot of water-skins, and then do as I say. I will show you how you have to do it.' So they made the water-skins according to what the man said. Then, underneath every raft, he ordered them to fasten the inflated water-skin; tied underneath it. They put nine water-skins under every raft - three at the front, three joined under the middle, and three at the back.^{6""}

The imam said, "Test one of them in the lake.' So they took the raft, climbed aboard it and, lo and behold, it travelled like an arrow. The imam rejoiced when he saw this, and he said to this, 'This is what I wanted.' The man had seen some lake people in Abyssinia making what is called in their language *Laka* by means of which they ferry across.

Then the imam said to the commander of the Mahris,⁶⁻¹ Ahmad bin Suleiman al-Mahr! from Bait Ziad/" 'Get yourself and your companions ready.' The imam spurred on his companions, asking, 'Who will embark now on the lake, with the Arabs?' quoting to them the *hadith* : 'He will be recompensed who travels by sea on behalf of God and His religion.'⁶⁻¹

One of them rose up and said, 'We have sold ourselves in the service of God and His Religion,' and they swore allegiance by placing their hands in the hand of the imam as a pledge of the contract. May God bless them for it

So all of the Muslims got into a state of readiness - making sure their weapons were serviceable: this one his sword, that one his bow, and that other one his javelin.

Then Ahmad bin Suleiman al-Mahri spoke: 'Now is the time of the afternoon prayer. If we embark now the darkness will overtake us, and there will be no battle at night, with us in the middle of the lake. What's more, today is Wednesday, and sailors say that you shouldn't sail on Wednesday for it is ill-omened according to them. Tomorrow will be Thursday, and we will rise in the morning to a battle, if this is what God and His Prophet desire.' When he heard these words the imam said, 'So be it, if the Most High God wills it," and retired to his tent. They spent that night calling upon God the Most High.

Meantime, when the Christians who lived on the island saw the progress of the raft which the Muslims were trying out, and how it sailed like a bird, panic overwhelmed them. They took counsel amongst themselves and said, 'These Muslims have constructed something against us the like of which we have never before seen/'¹ The Arabs have made this, and they have cannon with them. If we go against their wishes they will come against us by force, fight us, burn our church and we have no means to use against them. It is incumbent upon us to make peace with them.'

Then their *Abun*, the patriarch/'²⁵ spoke to them, saying: 'Let us send to them this prisoner whom we are holding. He will obtain a guarantee for us and for the church. Let them take all of the treasure.' So they sent for the prisoner and spoke to him. He said, 'Gladly/ and they put him on board a boat^{h2h} during the night, along

with two of them to whom they said, 'Disembark him on the shore; then return, the two of you, and the Muslims will be none the wiser regarding you.' So they did this. They let him down on the shore by night, and returned to the island with their boat.

[Lira'1 Harb meets the imam]

When [f'72] morning came, the imam went out to say the morning prayer with the troops. They said their prayers and then the imam returned to his tent and invited Absama Nur to breakfast with him. As Absama Nur was on the way he met the prisoner whom the Christians had sent. Absama Nur asked him, 'Who are you?' He replied, 'I am Harb Arad bin Ura'T Sabr ad- Din.' He asked him, 'Where are you from?' He replied, 'I was a prisoner on the island, and the island people sent me to the imam.'

Absama Nur went in to the imam and gave him the news. He asked, 'Where is he? It was for his sake that earlier on I sent the messenger to them.' He said, 'He's standing at the door.' He said, 'Let him come in.'

Then he went in to the imam who noticed how his appearance had changed during captivity. The imam wept out of pity for him, and the prisoner wept and then the imam asked, 'How long were you on this island?' 'Sixteen years,' he answered, 'but afterwards, when they had seen what the Arabs had constructed, they were afraid and sent me to intercede with you on their behalf that you might give them a guarantee that you won't kill them or burn down their church; you may take all their wealth.'

[The imam agrees to their terms]

The imam spoke with those of his companions who were with him- the emir Abu Bakr Qatin, the wazir Mujahid and Absama Nur - and asked them, 'You have heard what he said about making peace, now what do you say?' They spoke, saying, 'Those people are seeking to trick us. They will not give us all of the treasure.' 'Stop speaking like this,' the imam said, 'this prisoner whom they have set free means more to us than a mountain of gold.'

Then the imam said to the prisoner, 'Go back to them and tell them that what they request will be granted.' So the prisoner embarked on one of the rafts and set sail. When he drew near, he shouted out to them, 'I have

obtained for you the assurance of your safety, and that of your church which they will not desecrate by any misconduct provided you keep your word. Let your *Abun* the patriarch, embark and conclude the peace for you/

The prisoner went back to the imam who then went to the shore and stood erect there. Also lined up in battle array were the Arab foot-soldiers, the Mahras, those from the Magreb,⁶² the sharifs, including sharif Nur bin Ahmad and sharif Muhammad Handul, along with the soldiers of the army of Bahr who were sitting down.

[The patriarch and the imam]

Their *Abun*, the patriarch/^{2*} was at this moment coming out of the church. He boarded a boat and reached the imam. He went into his presence and wanted to kiss the ground but the imam forbade him saying, 'Miserable wretch, do not kneel to people/ So he raised his head, and then the imam said to him, 'State the cause that which you've come to plead.'He said,'All the monks desire that you grant them a guarantee of safety for themselves, that you will not kill them: and for their church, that you won't bum it down/

The imam replied, 'On the proviso that you do not conceal any of the church's treasure, nor anything of the treasure you possess apart from that/ To which he said. 'Hearing is obeying. If you grant us the guarantee then I will go to the island and bring the treasure to you/

They exclaimed, 'You dog, we don't trust you. Our companions will accompany you to the island and they will take away all that they find in it/ The patriarch said, ' If it is absolutely necessary for your companions to come with us, charge them not to do any damage to our church, and let them not break your covenant/ The imam replied, 'When I have given you a guarantee, no one will be able to act contrary to what I have promised.'

The patriarch was heartened, and the imam said to Zaharbui Muhammad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, 'Now, you go,' and he seconded to him some of the Arab foot-soldiers, the Mahras, those from the Magreb, the sharifs and a troop of the army of the Bahr. He said, 'Go to the island with your infantry,⁶²⁹ accompanying the patriarch. Do not bum the church and do not kill the monks. Take away the treasure that is in the church and on the island; don't leave behind a *dirhanr*" or a *dinar*.'" He said 'Gladly,' and then boarded the rafts.

The emir Zaharbui Muhammad entered the church, and also took away all the treasure that was in the holes in the ground, and in houses. There were gold and silver crosses that took a hundred men to carry; there were countless golden lamps, and their golden chains; an innumerable quantity of golden idols^{^2} - each of the Muslims soldiers took one idol weighing three-

hundred ounces - gold plates, each one of which could satisfy three men. They also took a vast quantity of silks and other fabrics.⁶³⁴

Zaharbui spent the night on the island, gathering together all the treasure. When morning came he sent to the imam three rafts, each one of them loaded down with gold and silver and silk, with only two soldiers accompanying it, and three others on the bow.⁶³⁵ The rest of the raft's space was crammed full of treasure. Each of those rafts could carry one-hundred- and fifty men.

They offered all that they contained to the imam. He was astonished at it, and became oblivious of the treasure that he had seen beforehand. The rafts went back to the island, and were filled up with treasure a second time. They went back a third time, and were filled up as before. Then they returned to the island and the soldiers boarded them. Zaharbui returned on the second day, going to the imam at dusk. He then returned to his camp.

[The imam apportions the *Fifth*]

When morning came, the imam summoned him, and divided the treasure: one share he gave to the Arabs, another share went to Zaharbui Muhammed, and to the army of the Bahr; the other shares he split up amongst the Muslim soldiers.

On the fourth day. the imam and the army set out to rejoin the wazir 'Addoli whom he had left behind in Fatagar. They travelled until they reached the region of Wasal where they pitched camp. When it was morning the imam assembled the Muslims and said to them, "Apportion the *fifth* of your booty, and be careful not to be niggardly.' The Muslims spoke up, all of them, "We will give you all of our treasure so that you can apportion the *fifth* and give us back what remains.' He replied, 'God is your witness; let each of your emirs apportion the *fifth* for his army.' So the emirs immediately split up, and apportioned the *fifth* for their armies, and went to him with it. He estimated its weight in *rot/s* ^{Aj6} and the amount was incalculable. He entrusted it to Kablr Abun, who knew how to write and to count, may the Most High God have mercy upon him.

They stayed in Wasal six days apportioning the *fifth*, and then marched out and arrived at the region of Gujmah and camped at Absalu Zaraf.

Then the imam set off for Bet [f73] Amhara with the army of the Bahr, because there were still two churches there. This was the reason he went back to Bet Amhara. As for the two churches, one of them was Makana Maryam,⁶³⁷ and the

other was Dabtara Maryam. ^(٢٥) The imam left the wazir Nur in the camp in his stead and reached Bet Amhara and burnt the two of them to the ground. He then returned to the encampment.

[The imam seeks news of the wazir "Addoli]

At the time of the afternoon prayer. Aibis Lahati, who had become a Muslim under duress, fled; as did the patrician Eslamu. The two of them went to Bet Amhara to join the king.

The imam and his army went from the region of Gujmah into the province of Ganburah in the land of Gedom and pitched their camp there. The people of that country had made a treaty with the Muslims and welcomed them. Some people came to this place from the land of Sa'd ad-Din and were staying there, among them Warajar Abun the lord of Zayla' and his companions; and, with them, gifts. The messenger whom the imam had sent to the Sultan "Umar Din with the good news of the killing of Wasan Sagad⁶ u was also there. They remained with the people of the village until the imam reached them. The imam asked them for news of the land of Sa'd ad-Din, and also of the wazir 'Addoli: 'Have you heard in which country he is to be found?' They answered, 'Regarding the wazir 'Addoli, we heard on our way here that he was stationed in Fatagar. And as for news of the land of Sa'd ad- Din, the people are content.'

So the imam sent off Garad 'Utman, lord of Jan Zalaq, to the wazir 'Addoli, and seconded men to him. among them Del Sagad, and 'Umar, along with fifty knights. He said to him, 'Travel to him, no matter where he is. Give them the good news of our victory and of our triumph, in the conquests that the Most High God has granted to us. Say to them, "We are returning to you"; let him come to us at Dabra Berhan with our children and wives; we will meet up with him there.'

[Ura'i Abun is appointed lord of Ifat]

They set out that same day for Fatagar, in search of the wazir 'Addoli. The imam meanwhile remained in Ganburah ten days. His remaining there was caused by the sickness of the sharif Ahmad al-Qadimi, may the Most High God show mercy towards him. After he had died and they had buried him, the imam prayed for him, as did the theologian Abu Bakr al-Arsuna and everybody among the Muslims.

Then they set out from Ganburah for Kesayah in the land of Gedom. The people of Ifat came there with their chief Azmac Fessaha. The imam asked them about the region and about the idol-worshippers, and they said to him, 'We endured extreme hardship after you left us; but now, thanks be to God, you have arrived in our

region w'ith victory and honour; and the past insults and wrongs caused by the infidels no longer matter to us.' For Kesayah was close by their region.

That day, the imam despatched Ura'T Abun, to whom he assigned some men, saying to him, 'I have put you in command of the land of Ifat; travel with the Ifat people and remain there.' Ura'i Abun replied, 'Gladly,' and set off with his troop to Ifat.

The imam, meantime, went up to the summit of Manz and stayed there. Then he sent off Absama Nur to whom he gave thirty knights, and he said to them, 'Bring us news of Addoli; if he has come to the place that we indicated to him for a *rendezvous* with him.' So they set off for Dabra Bcrhan.

[The wazir 'Addoli]

The storyteller; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: 'As for 'Addoli, when the imam set off for Bet Amhara, he re-united all the emirs who had been scattered, as we mentioned earlier on, and stationed himself in Fatagar in the village of Ganburah. The wazir Addoli sent off Ura'i Nur to whom he assigned seventy knights among whom were Garad SamaTin, and Garad Ahmad bin Lad 'Utman, Garad Zinai and Garad Saddiq, and others of their ilk. He said to them, 'Go to Dawaro, and continue on until you reach the 'Awas river.'

They found it in full Hood, and, on the other bank, a troop of infidels from the Maya and some patricians of the idol-worshippers, amongst whom were Azmac Fanu'cl, lord of Waj, and Arkiya, lord of Lejabah. These had ranged their forces on the high ground above the river, and the water prevented the Muslims from finding a way of getting to them.

The Muslims stayed there three days, during which the idol-worshippers loosed arrows at them by night. After this they sent to 'Addoli, saying to him, 'We reached the 'Awas, and found its waters in full flood. On the opposite bank are two patricians with their armies, but the water obstructs us.' Their messenger reached 'Addoli, who was in his camp, and repeated to him what they had said to him. The wazir Addoli said to him: 'If it is only the water that obstructs them, what help can I be to them? If it were an enemy troop that was blocking their way, I could send some soldiers to them as reinforcements.' He replied, 'There is nothing blocking their way except the water.' So he said, 'They know what it is they must do: if it be to return, then let them return; if it be to fight, then let them fight the idol-worshippers.'

[Garad SamaTin suggests a strategy]

So the messenger went back and informed them of the reply that the wazir 'Addoli had given to them. When they heard it, they relocated themselves to a different place, and pitched camp. Then the idol-worshippers left their earlier encampment and took up a position opposite the Muslims on the other bank of the river. They were lined up in battle array, their cavalry and their foot-soldiers. The Muslims organised themselves in like fashion, and then took counsel amongst themselves. They asked, 'How can we overcome the problem of this water?' Then one of their number, Garad Sama'un, got up. He was a famous knight, 'a lion that slays its prey and

breaks its bones.' He said, 'let us charge into the water; our horses can swim it. The water isn't as before - it has dropped a little from what it was like earlier on. Now let us go forth against them; let us fight them, and may God give us victory over them.' So he and his cavalry charged into the water, and the Muslims charged behind them. The idol-worshippers loosed arrows at them when they were in mid-stream, but they gained the other bank and Garad Sama'un burst through the middle of their ranks, hurling to the ground their heroes and the coarsest and sturdiest of the unbelievers amongst them. They shot thirty-live arrows into the neck and withers of his horse, yet he was saved. His companions were with him in the charge, and the idol-worshippers were routed with three-hundred-and-fifty of their soldiers being killed. Six of their horses were taken as booty. On the Muslim side, only three persons were killed: Dalus, Farasaham Abu Bakr and another man.

They pitched their camp there and had unsaddled their horses when a troop of the Maya attacked their camp. The Muslims mounted their horses, and fought a bloody fight. The idol-worshippers were routed, and a hundred and fifty of them were killed, or even more.

They passed the night there, and then, on the next day, set off with the guide and reached Jinah where they camped above the river, unsaddled their horses and watered them. Just then a troop of the idol-worshippers took them by surprise. Garad Zinai had not yet unsaddled his horse, so when he saw them he fought them by himself until his companions had harnessed [f°74] and mounted their horses; he never ceased fighting them, single-handedly. The idol-worshippers fled. Some fifty of them were killed and four of their horses were captured.

They passed the night there. After that they set off until they arrived at a place called Kattarah where they remained until their spy re-joined them. Their spy arrived after three days, and told them, 'Ahead of you are four patricians, one of whom is Azmac 'Addalu, lord of Bali, the second is Sal'u bin Wasan Sagad, the third Mahuh, and the fourth, Azmafi Amha bin Maha Tenta, Bringing up your rear

is Azmac Yonadab,^M a relative of the king

who married the daughter of his brother, the patrician Yohannes - and the patrician Tasfa.'

When they heard this news they left their encampment for the region of Ayfars which is open country suitable for the manoeuvring of cavalry. They camped there.

[‘Addalu seeks news of the Muslims]

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says, ‘When the idolatrous patrician known as ‘Addalu lord of Bali heard that the Muslims had arrived at the river "Awas and that the Christians had been routed, he sent scouts out, with the patrician Amha, to enquire about the Muslims. The idol-worshippers went to Ayfars, not knowing that the Muslims were in it. The Muslims saw them from afar. Without delay they mounted their horses and galloped in the direction of the idol-worshippers. When the idol-worshippers saw that the Muslims were coming towards them, vying with one another for the lead, they took flight while at a distance, and the Muslims returned to their camp and passed the night there. The idol-worshippers then went to their patrician ‘Addalu who was in Zari and told him about their being routed. ‘Addalu was afraid when he heard this, and entered the region of Watmat, where they pitched their tents.

[The story of Farasaham ‘AH]

It was while the Muslims were encamped in the region of Ayfars, that Farasaham ‘All came to them, accompanied by six knights and two-hundred foot-soldiers. He embraced Islam, and his conversion was genuine. This man had been a Muslim who had gone up from Jalbi, a Muslim district, at the time when the Somalis had taken control of it after the death of the Sultan Muhammad, may the Most High God have mercy upon him. He made up his mind to go up to the land of Abyssinia, with Ahmad Goita and soldiers from the people of Najab.

When the king heard that some Muslims had settled in Bali, he summoned him to him, and after he had stayed two years, he had him made a

Christian against his will and, for his livelihood, gave him a region in the land of Ayfars. When he heard about the Muslims, he re-converted to Islam and reached them. The Muslims rejoiced at his conversion and he informed them about the situation of the infidels.

After they listened to what he had to say, they marched by night against the patrician 'Addalu. They marched all that night until sunrise, and then sent scouts

off to ferret out news of the idol-worshippers for them. They took two Christian fanners captive and questioned them about the patricians. They said, 'When they heard about you, they set off by night, and now they are in front of you.'

From that moment on they forced their march, and set off hard on their heels. When it was noon they could see their tents pitched in 'Andurah; but by the same token the idol-worshippers caught sight of their dust behind them. So they sent out scouts - sixty knights - to bring news back to them concerning the Muslims. These drew near to the Muslims, recognised them, and turned on their tracks with the Muslims in pursuit. The infidel scouts reached their companions and told them the news. These were afraid, fled, and abandoned their tents. The Muslims chased them until evening separated them before they had joined battle.

[Ura'i Nur returns to 'Addoli and is reprimanded]

One of the Muslims was killed - a man called Kaled. He was killed by the patrician Abib. The patrician Kabir from the people of Bali was captured, and two of the Muslims were captured by the infidels. They released them in exchange for this patrician.

The Muslims took all of their tents, as well as twelve horses, and a great number of mules, and they spent two nights in the tents of the idol-worshippers. They then headed off for the region of AmoraGadal' and passed the night there. On the third day they set off and entered Sarka. A man who had been an apostate and afterwards reverted to Islam came to them. His name was 'AH. Then his companions came.

The patrician Abib, with his army, attacked their rear-guard; but the vanguard turned back to fight him, and he fled. The patrician was struck by a spear, but got away. They took two horses as booty and then set off, making a beeline for the wazir 'Addoli, reaching him finally when he was at Ajamji. The wazir 'Addoli asked (Ura'i Nur), 'Who commanded you to proceed to 'Andurah with such little support? Did you want to slaughter the Muslims?' Then he had him (Ura'i Nur) put in chains, but the Muslims pleaded for him, and he forgave him.

The storyteller.; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: Then the wazir 'Addoli sent Del Sagad, the knight of Sitn, with some men among whom was Zaharbui 'Utman and the sharif Ahmad, with fifty cavalry. He said, 'Proceed to the region of Gabarge for provisions.' So they went and made forays in the provinces. They entered Gabarge and found some Christian merchants in it who were in the employ of the king. They caught them unawares, plundered their baggage and their children, and returned to the wazir 'Addoli. They enslaved all of

them."⁶⁴~ Then he sent a raiding party comprising around one-hundred cavalry, into the region of the Maya. Zaharbui 'Utman was their leader. They set out, and entered the Ar'an region which they laid waste, and took horses and mules and other things besides, as booty.

Returning in the direction of the wazir 'Addoli they entered the region of Aram, and they spent the night on the road. By the time they awoke in the morning, the patrician of Waj had caught up with them. His name was Yonadab, and with him were archers from the Maya. The king had sent him to fight the wazir 'Addoli, and while they were en route he had been informed that there was a troop of Muslims in Aram. He said to his army when he heard this news, 'Let us proceed straightaway against the troop and fight them: afterwards we will go on to 'Addoli.' They replied, 'Gladly,' and pursued them. They were in Aram, which is a district.

When the two columns of soldiers that were proceeding on the road came into each other's view, the idol-worshippers mounted a charge against the rear-guard of the Muslims. Those in the rear held their ground* and mounted their horses. Among those in the rear was Zaharbui 'Utman, the sharif Ahmad and the hegano 'Abd Allah. 'Air Farasaham and the sheikh Kalil, a descendant of Aububah - may God bless us through him. Amen. They were ten knights, and the idol-worshippers were around two-hundred. The Muslims charged the idol-worshippers, and a bloody battle was engaged, until their forearms became exhausted.

[Zaharbui 'Utman kills Yonadab, and is himself killed]

Zaharbui 'Utman charged the patrician and struck him a blow- with his spear on his chest. The spear went right through, shimmering at his back, and broke off in the patrician's body. He continued to pummel him with the haft of the spear, until it was totally worn down. They clung to their horses and fought one another until Zaharbui 'Utman seized the patrician by the hand and jerked him out of his horse's saddle, and he hit the ground, dying on the spot. May God cast his soul into the fire [f75] 'and what an evil place it is to settle in/⁶⁴"

At that moment the idol-worshippers were routed and many men among them were killed. Zaharbui 'Utman's horse was wounded, hit by an arrow, and died. They turned and went back, going down from the region of Aram. Not one of the Muslims was killed. After the second day the emir Din set off for the wazir 'Addoli with the booty, accompanied by ten knights.

Their commander, Zaharbui 'Utman, taking another route, reached Jinah, took some booty, and arrived at the river 'Awas. Zaharbui 'Utman crossed over the river

and as he waited on the bank for them to cross over with the booty, a soldier from the Maya people who was hidden among trees there, drew his bow and aimed his arrow. It struck Zaharbui 'Utman who was felled to the ground by it, and died a martyr, may the Most High God have mercy upon him. Ura'I Nasrul buried him.

When they saw that their emir Zaharbui 'Utman had been killed, they abandoned the booty and took to their heels, and reached the wazir 'Addoli. As for the plunder that was with the emir Din, the latter arrived with it at Maju, where the wazir 'Addoli was.

[The wazir 'Addoli seeks drinking water for his charges]

The wazir 'Addoli and his army then set out for the land of Dawaro with their heavy baggage, their wives and their children and their tents. They arrived close by the river 'Awas and they took counsel amongst themselves. Some of them said, 'This route of ours offers little water, and we are afraid that our people will die of thirst.'

The storyteller; may have mercy on him, says: 'They had amassed a lot of booty*⁴⁴ and had captured a vast number of concubines, young slave boys and slave girls. Because of this they were afraid of suffering from lack of water. So the wazir 'Addoli said,⁴ Let's go back to Fatagar where there is ample water,' so they set off and reached the land of Fatagar.

Then some of those who were in this place, Maju, died, amongst whom were Garad Kamal bin Haumal. and 'Alus, the knight of Sim who was worth one-hundred knights, and Goita Dakal - from among the heroes: may the Most High God have mercy upon them.

[False rumours concerning the imam's death]

After this, news reached the wazir 'Addoli that the imam had met up with the king and that the Muslims had been routed, and that they had killed them all, to the last man. This report was a lie and a slander. It had no substance to it. But when the wazir 'Addoli and the Muslims heard it, they grieved with a heavy grief.

Those amongst them who had embraced the religion of Islam out of fear of being killed, rejoiced. This falsehood and this lie originated with them. For they said, when the wazir 'Addoli asked them, 'We heard it from the

Christians; the imam's army was completely wiped out by the idol-worshippers. The imam was saved, and fled with a small band of soldiers.' But when they left his presence they said, 'the imam is dead; no one escaped.' Those were they who

had become Muslims only out of fear of being killed. While those who had converted to Islam out of an attraction for it, were thoroughly desolated by the news. The greater part of the army that was with the wazir 'Addoli in the camp was composed of those who had converted to the religion of Islam. Of the Muslims who had left their countries on the expedition, only a small number was with him.

So the w'azir 'Addoli assembled all the emirs, among them the emir Husain, Garad Fanjanat, the emir Din, Garad Ahmad bin Lad 'Utman and the emir Sama'un. The wazir 'Addoli brought together the whole army, including the Somali tribes, and others besides, and then he said to them, 'If the imam be dead, then we are one man fewer. It was only on account of the *jihad* that we left our countries.' Then he said, 'Any one among us w'ho is spying for the idol-worshippers or pretending to be what he isn't, let him speak up or let him rejoin the king. For we will remain in his country for the sake of the *jihad*. We will not depart from this place until the imam comes. And if something has befallen him, then lie was just one of us. There are enough of us for the fight.'

[The wazir 'Addoli seeks news of the imam]

After this, they dispersed to their camps, and he said to the emir Husain, 'Now, since we have no knowledge of the imam, nor of where he is to be found, you are going to march to the land of Wiz and of Warabba, to obtain news of the imam for us.' He replied, 'Gladly,' and set off with fifty cavalry. They arrived at Wiz and Warabba and captured two of the local farmers. One of these Christians was an extremely well-built man. They returned to the wazir 'Addoli with the two of them, for them to give him information. They presented the two prisoners, and then the wazir 'Addoli interrogated them concerning the imam and his whereabouts, and concerning the king of Abyssinia. They replied, 'The imam took the Wasal road and met up with the patrician Degalhan. Then he and his army set off in the direction of the king. The king and his army were oblivious of them until they had caught him unawares and routed them. A great number of the idol-worshippers was killed.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says, 'Then the wazir 'Addoli and the Muslims rejoiced at the rout of the king. 'Addoli said, 'I wish to march to Dabra Berhan to obtain sure news of the imam. You remain in camp guarding the women, the children and the baggage.' The two to whom he spoke were the emir Husain and Garad Fanjanat who had gone off earlier on. They replied, 'Gladly,' and the wazir 'Addoli set off. He said to Garad Sama'un who had with him one-hundred-and-fifty cavalry, 'You take the lower road, and we will meet up with you in Dabra Berhan. 'With pleasure.' Garad Sama'un said, and then he, too, set out.

[Garad Sama'un outfoxes the governor of Bali]

The wazir 'Addoli outdistanced him in reaching Dabra Berhan, and encountered no resistance, even though he had heard that there were troops there. Garad Sama'un lagged behind, for at that time he had commanded the Muslims to make incursions into the countryside.

They penetrated deeply into it and met up with a patrician called Ibrahim who was governor of Bali, under the authority of Degalhan who was, at that time, with the king. When the imam had pounced on them, they had split up and he had headed for Bali. The Muslims sent by Garad Sama'ur caught up with him, and he fled.

They captured a group of his slave boys and presented them to the wazir 'Addoli who questioned them about the imam and the Muslim army. These said to him that the imam had routed the king, and that great numbers of them had been killed, and that they had taken their horses as booty and that not one Muslim had been killed. The Muslims rejoiced at the victory over the king, and spent the night in their camp.

Before this happened, the king had sent to the patrician of Dawaro to join forces with the patrician of Bali, for them to unite in attacking the wazir 'Addoli, 'If you do not attack him, I will kill all of you myself.'

The wazir 'Addoli then returned to his camp in the land of Fatagar. They arrived there and he told the emirs and the Muslims what the imam had done. The Muslims were overjoyed.

The storyteller.; may God have mercy upon him, says: Garad Sama'un went on his way, and reached Dabra Berhan but did not find the companions of 'Addoli; only the patrician Giyorgis who had a vast army with him, drawn up in battle array. So the Muslims did likewise, and Garad Sama'un led the charge, and his companions charged with him. The two armies fought one another in a bloody and fierce battle. The idol-worshippers were routed, and thousands of them were killed. Not one Muslim died. They went back to the wazir 'Addoli [f76] who was in Fatagar. During the time they were there, a messenger reached them from Garad 'Utman, Del Sagad⁶⁴ and UraT Qat 'Umar^{64*1} whom the imam had sent to the wazir 'Addoli and his companions to give him the good news of their triumph and victory over the king. These had arrived at Jan Zalaq but lingered there because they were unable to continue their journey that day on account of their road weariness. They had been painstaking in their travels and they sent to him, saying, 'We shall reach you around breakfast time in the morning. Our mules and we ourselves are exhausted.'¹

[The wazir 'Addoli fears the worst]

Because the messenger had informed the Muslims of their intention to delay *en route*, and because they had sent someone other than themselves to deliver the message, the Muslims were perturbed on account of the evil rumours that they had heard earlier on. They said, 'If the imam was going to send them to bring us good news, then they would not send somebody else in their stead. Nor would they have sent anyone other than one of them to us as a messenger, unless the news that they bear be bad.' The Muslims passed that evening worried sick.

Then the wazir 'Addoli sent without delay to Garad 'Utman, saying, 'The imam sent you to us, but you have delayed *en route*. Then you sent a different messenger on to us. If the news were good, you would surely not have delayed, and you would surely not have sent someone else.' His messenger reached them, and they set off, immediately, by night.

All this took place before dawn, so they reached the wazir 'Addoli in the forenoon, and then they gave him the good news, saying, 'The imam has truly prevailed over the king of Abyssinia; the king and his patricians have been routed; the king has barely managed to escape with his life, and even then only with great difficulty; the Muslims have taken possession of the women who were accompanying them, along with an innumerable, uncountable, ⁶⁴ quantity of valuables: gold, silver, and silk. And the imam says, "We will rendezvous, we and you, for a face to face meeting, at Dabra Berhan".' Immediately the Muslims rejoiced, and began to beat their kettledrums and their big, double-faced drums.

Some of the soldiers who were with the wazir had wanted to go back down to their homes. But when they heard what the imam had done they were buoyant, and said, 'We won't go back down to the country of Sa'd ad-Din until we have seen the imam.' The whole army made preparations for the march.

['Addoli sets out for Dabra Berhan]

The people of the countryside who had become Muslims went to the wazir 'Addoli and said, 'So, now, you are leaving us to go to the imam; and our country will be laid waste.' He replied, 'Don't be afraid. We are going to Dabra Berhan to see the imam; and we shall return. Don't be frightened, and don't be sad.' When they heard what the wazir 'Addoli had to say they rejoiced, and their spirits were lifted.

Then he ordered the march to commence, and they set out, heading for Dabra Berhan. When they arrived at the district of Waj they met up with Absama Nur and

Garad 'Ananiya whom the imam had sent with a robe of honour for the wazir 'Addoli. They presented him with it, and he gave a gilt tunic and a horse to Absama Nur, because of the good news, and a gown to Garad 'Ananiya. Then 'Addoli sent a messenger bearing a letter, accompanied by twenty knights, to the imam. In it he said to him, 'The

/My

Muslim armies are well and happy since news of you reached us.' So the messenger set out, with the wazir 'Addoli bringing up their rear, finally reaching Dabra Berhan where he stayed, awaiting the imam.

The storyteller. may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: The imam was in the land of Manz when the messenger of the wazir 'Addoli reached him and gave him news of the Muslims. The imam was overjoyed that they were safe, and that they had arrived at Dabra Berhan. So he gave the order to leave, and they departed and entered Tagulat and spent the night in the town of Qedusge⁶⁴ - a place with plentiful resources. He proceeded from Qedusge to the region of Tarimma⁶¹¹ which is an excessively cold place whose people⁶¹ died in the freezing conditions. From there he continued on until he was about three and a half miles⁶¹² from Dabra Berhan. ['Addoli makes preparations to greet the imam]

Then he sent a messenger to the wazir 'Addoli, saying, 'We have reached your vicinity.' The wazir 'Addoli, in his turn, sent a messenger who said to the imam, 'Would you deign to command us to meet you in military fashion: with the soldiers arrayed as for battle, with the tribes, and the cavalry and the infantry ready for war; and could you do similarly? For we are in the land of the idol-worshippers and there are spies in our midst'.

The wazir 'Addoli's messenger reached the imam who was delighted with what he had to say. He was in admiration at his proposal and ordered him to do as he suggested. Then the imam moved closer to them and stopped. He said to his companions, 'Now, the wazir 'Addoli is about to come to us. to greet us. Everyone in the camp must prepare himself: let the knights harness their mounts with their weaponry, and let your⁶¹³ accoutrements glitter.'

The imam opened up the treasury that they had plundered from the idol-worshippers - golden armour, tiaras, and golden crowns. He took out gowns studded with gold, each one of which weighed one-hundred ounces, and clad his page boys in them so that they shone like fiery torches. The army of the Bahr under the command of Samsu drew itself up in battle array in front of the cavalry, and then the wazir 'Addoli arrived with his armies under fifty pennants, each of which was led by one of his Garads or emirs. 'Addoli lined up his forces in three sections. It was impossible to see where any section ended, because of the vastness of their numbers.

The storyteller, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: The wazir ‘Addoli’s cavalry that day numbered three-thousand knights bearing armour, and three-thousand knights without armour. There were twenty-thousand soldiers carrying white shields and, as well, archers, and others of their ilk.

The imam’s cavalry included five-thousand knights clad in protective armour made of crocodile skin,^{f,M} and of velvet, weighed down with gold.

Only the pupils of their eyes could be seen through their armour. Their helmets shone like mirrors.

[Ahmad reviews his troops and divides the booty in January 1532]

The companions of ‘Addoli entered, with the first unit, made up of the Somalis with their commanders and their cavalry. They paraded before the imam, saluted him, and wheeled round, towards the side of the camp. Then the second unit entered, with the people of Fatagar, of the Maya, and of Sawa, and those who had converted to Islam. These faced the imam, saluted him, then wheeled round towards the flank of the first unit. Then the third unit entered, composed of the wazir ‘Addoli and the emirs. Amongst these Fifty emirs entrusted with pennants, were the emir Husain, the emir SamaTin, the emir UraT Nur, and the emir Din. They were a great multitude, and they appeared⁶ by degrees, arranged unit by unit, on account of the vast numbers in their armies. Had they all entered at once, the space [f°77] would have been too confined to hold them. They paraded before the imam, saluted him, and then seated themselves and began to talk.

The imam was overjoyed, and wept tears of happiness. Seven months had elapsed from the time the imam had divided his forces to this time when he met up with them again. He left them in the month of Zu’lhijjah^{6^1} and met up with them again in the month of Jumda if’ in the year nine-hundred-and- thirty-eight of the Hijra of the Prophet^{^8} upon whom be gracious blessings and peace.

The imam took the treasure of gold, silver and silk and distributed it among the armies of the Muslims which were with the wazir ‘Addoli. The imam gave a golden platter to each one of the fifty chieftains, companions of

Addoli. To the rest of the soldiers he gave each his share of the gold, the silver and the silk.

They had so vast a quantity of gold that at this time they made any deals with gold. When someone wanted to buy some necessity, he would take a fistful of

gold, go to the market and use it for the purchase. They ignored the scales. The price of a mule went up to forty ounces of gold because gold was so plentiful.⁶³⁴

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: If one of your⁶⁶¹ friends whom you loved⁶⁶¹ came and asked you for something from the treasure that you had plundered, and you were one of the chieftains, and you offered him some of the silver, he would not accept it, whether it were one- hundred ounces or two-hundred ounces.

A certain person gave one of his friends fifty ounces, which he scorned to accept, even becoming infuriated at him for offering it.

This was one of the consequences of the booty taken at Bet Amhara. where they found more gold and silver than anywhere else in the whole of Abyssinia.

[Ura'i Abun moves against Simu]

[*The story* tells says: While the imam was stationed in Dabra Berhan a messenger reached him, whom Ura'I Abun had sent to say to him, 'Your equerry Simu, whom you put in charge of the region of Abunah, has apostatised, and become a Christian. I am setting out to engage him in battle, but he is holding a position on the mountain and has with him the armies of Abunah. I have no way of moving against him. Will you send me some units along the Dabra Berhan road so that they can fall upon them from above?' The messenger arrived, and gave the imam the message he had been given.

After the imam heard what he had to say, he dispatched Samsu, the commander of the army of Bahr, with his troops. These set out, taking the

Dabra Berhan road against Simu the apostate, and fell upon them from above. When they saw them, they took to their heels - leaving their tents standing in their places, and also their horses - and descended the mountain, fleeing to another place.^ Samsu collected their horses and mules and their baggage and remained there. He sent a messenger to the imam to say to him, 'Simu has fled. We have taken all their horses, their mules and their baggage.'

The messenger reached the imam and informed him what had happened. The imam asked the messenger, 'By which route did Simu flee?' 'By the Kassam road,' he said, 'heading for the land of Sawa.' So the imam said to the w⁷azir 'Addoli, 'You stay in our encampment, while I set out for Kassam.' So the imam set out, seeking the land of Kassam. He had no news of the apostate; nor did the apostate have any news of the imam, who forced his march. The imam met up with the

apostate on the road, at the time of the afternoon prayer. The imam sent his cavalry in against him⁶⁶³ from every side. They made inroads against him, and as he had no forewarning, they killed all his troops. Simu alone escaped, and they captured his women and his horses of which there were five. The Muslim cavalry took them, and then returned to the imam with the prisoners, the booty, the mules and the women, as the sun was setting. The imam ordered the women to be beheaded, and then spent the night above Kassam, with his army.

(if.i

The Qawat people, a part of the people of Yejju, who had converted to Islam said, 'We are Muslims, and have been guarding our region. If one of the Christians came to us, we would kill him, waiting for you to reach us.' The imam was delighted, and clad their leaders in robes of honour. The region of Qaw'at had been under the command of Kaled al-Waradi. The imam had placed them under his charge because he was responsible for their becoming Muslims. Since he^{r>ft?} perished of the plague, Bcsara was put in charge of them. Qawat is a delightful district that the people of Abyssinia call *Lesser*

Gojjam because of its plentiful blessings. Besara set off with soldiers from Yejju, for their country, and remained there.

[Samsu in disgrace. The imam seeks the head of Takla Giyorgis]

The imam returned to the Muslim encampment at Dabra Berhan, and stayed a few days there. He sent to Samsu, giving him the good news of the victory over Simu, "We killed his soldiers, while you have been dallying in the district of Sajara. Come to me. There is no point in your remaining unless you fight.' Samsu was afraid when the messenger passed on to him what the imam had said to him, and went back to the imam who rebuked him.

Thereupon the imam sent Absama Nur and the emir Sama'un to the district of Sajara along with five-thousand men/¹⁶⁶ They were all on foot, apart from the emir Sama'un and Absama Nur, for this terrain was unsuitable for fighting on horseback: only for infantry. Then he said, 'I have placed the two of you in charge of the land of Sajara, but if you don't bring back to me the head of him who killed Kabir Muhammad, I will not number you among the heroes.¹ They said to him, 'Pray God that we will be able to achieve this.' So the imam prayed to God for them and bade them farewell. They set out and arrived in the land of Sajara.

The imam then said to Samsu, 'You neglected to fight the killer of Kabir Muhammad, so I have taken your country, and given it to Garad Sania^kun and to Absama Nur. Now, go with your army by a different route; change your route, and

hold one of the gates of the country. And if the patrician who killed Kabir Muhammad comes to you - his name is Takla Giyorgis - fight him, and may God grant you victory over him.*

The storyteller; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: The patrician Takla Giyorgis was one of the bravest of the idol-worshippers; a knight who would take the field and fight against ten men. Then Samsu⁽¹⁶⁾ set out for Sajara and held one of the gates. Garad Sama'un and Absama Nur. for their part, took up their position on top of the mountain and fought the patrician who was routed and headed for the gate that was held, although he did not know it, by Samsu. Samsu had forestalled him, so he captured him, killed him and cut off his head. Then Samsu sent a messenger with his head to the imam. When his head reached him, the imam was ecstatic, and prostrated himself in thanksgiving before the Most High God. He gave a golden wrist-bangle, and a gown, to the one who had come with the idol-worshipper's head.

[The imam reinforces Ura'i Abun]

Ura'i Abun wrote a letter to the imam in which he said, 'The only army that we have is composed of the people of Ifat who only lately became Muslims. Could you, now, perhaps, send us some of your troops?' So he sent the messenger off with the letter. [f°78] Immediately the imam summoned the wazir 'Abbas - though he was not *wazir* at that time - and ordered him to set out for Ura'i Abun with fifty knights, amongst them Sabr ad-Din, the knight of the Muslims, 'All Goita bin 'Adruh, Farasaham Muhammad and others of their ilk.

The imam then said to 'Abbas, 'Fight the *jihad* with Ura'i Abun for he has sought troops from us to assist him.' 'Abbas set out and went down to the region of Ifat. He met up with Ura'i Abun in a town of that province called Tobya and they stayed there together.

The storyteller; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: Two days after 'Abbas set out, the Maya people came with Wazari Faqih and Nur al-Asram al-Mayuwi and said, 'Our country has been devastated, and now the people of Waj and the people of Ganz, who are above us, descend upon us and plunder us night and day. He asked them, 'What is it that you want now?' 'We want you to give us,' they replied, 'some of your troops, and one of your emirs who will go ahead with us, while you remain behind us as far as Fatagar where you will stay.' At that, he sent them Garad 'Utman lord of Jan Zalaq and one-hundred of the cavalry, among them Ura'i Qat 'Umar and Jasa 'All. The imam said to him, 'Go down to Jan Zalaq and defend the country. See to it that no harm comes to the Muslims on your account. Protect the people of Zari.' So Garad 'Utman set out and reached them,

and stayed above Suq Amajah.

The storyteller,; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: With regard to the king of Abyssinia Wanag Sagad: when the imam returned to Dabra Berhan the king set out for the region of Hiffin in a country called Bahr Dabba, which was a lake with sweet water. He instructed the patrician Ras Baniyat - one of his knights, and the most courageous of them, much admired among the Christians, who had a vast army with him - saying, 'The Muslims have gone up to Dabra Berhan and settled down there, while Ura'i Abun has stayed behind in Ifat. You march against him, and take him and his army as they fall into your clutches.' He was unaware that the imam had sent to Ura'i Abun numerous troops as reinforcements, with the wazir 'Abbas.

So Ras Baniyat set out, with the patrician Feqra Iyasus and their two forces, until they arrived at the district of Kcsayah where the Muslims had pitched their camps. The patrician came, expecting to take them in one fell swoop, as the king had said to him. When the Muslims saw him they lined up their troops, and the idol-worshippers did likewise, facing them. The patrician advanced with his army towards the Muslims, and Sabr ad-Din led the charge, with the Muslims charging behind him. Army mingled with army, and their lives hung in the balance there.

'Abbas charged at the patrician Ras Baniyat and struck him on the helmet with his sword, and cut away a third of the helmet, and his horse's ear. At that, the patrician fled back the way he had come, and all of them were routed. The Muslims pursued them from midday until sunset, killing them. The carnage was horrendous. They captured their horses and their mules, and then they returned to their camp, sending a messenger to the imam with the good news of the victory over the patrician and his army. The messenger set out and reached the imam in Dabra Berhan. He was overjoyed.

Then the imam sought the advice of the emirs. He asked them, 'What do you think about the region of Dawaro? Should we send an army against it while we remain in Dabra Berhan?'

Farasaham Din replied, 'This is not a good idea. There are regions from the river 'Awas to the river Wabi which have not converted to Islam: and the same goes for the regions of Bali, Ganz and Waj. But you go yourself, and we will remain on in Geberge, or in Zeqala - a district that will be close to you; and you can send out your forces in all directions.'

[The imam prepares his Dawaro campaign]

The imam replied, 'You have spoken well, but what shall we do about the regions that have converted to Islam - Ifat, Gedem and Sajara? If we leave here, and leave them without an army, their people will apostatise.'

So Farasaham Din said to the imam, 'If you say that, then those regions that have become Muslim have merely donned a mask as a means, thereby, of improving themselves. If you were to go to Dawaro and stay there but one day, a thousand knights would come to you from Bali and from Hadya. But as for these provinces [of which you speak], there is no special advantage in our staying there.' The imam said, 'You are right. Let us send for Urai Abun and 'Abbas to join us. Then we will add around four-hundred knights to their number, and let them stay on in these provinces that have converted to Islam. Should the army of the Abyssinian king, or the king himself, come against them, let them fight him.' So he straightaway wrote a letter to them both in which he said to them, 'Catch up with us immediately'.

[Ura'i Abun is unwilling to remain in Ifat]

The messenger set out and reached them and gave them the letter which he had with him. As soon as they read what was in it, they set out from Ifat that same day and went to the imam who was in his encampment. The imam said to Ura'i Abun, 'We are leaving for Dawaro. We will give you and 'Abbas reinforcements and you are to remain in Ifat.' He replied, 'I cannot remain in Ifat, for autumn will have commenced by the time you leave for Dawaro and the river 'Awas will be in flood. There will be water between me and you, and the king will come with his armies and I will not be able to fight him'.

The imam said, 'Enough of this. I have commanded you, so be off with your army. You have enjoyed the benefit of the land tax that they pay.

and yet you would abandon them now ; you would go away from them. If they say^{W1*} to you, "Take us with you to the imam,"⁶⁶⁹ then so be it. But if they say, "Stay in our country," then remain there.'

The imam then said to the emir Abu Bakr and to 'Abbas - to whom he had detached around three-hundred cavalry - 'Travel with Ura'i Abun and do as I told you. If the Ifat people wish to stay in their region, then you remain with them; otherwise, return to us with them, and with your emir Ura'i Abun.' Since the imam had got the better of him in the matter of travelling to Ifat. Ura'i Abun and the army set off for Ifat. They arrived there and pitched camp in Tobya.

Those people of Ifat and Tobya who had converted to Islam, along with the

people of Gendebelo, and its merchants, came and gathered in a group before Ura'i Abun and asked him, 'What news is there?' He said to them, 'The imam is going to go to Dawaro. Now you gather yourselves together and we will accompany you to Dawaro.' They replied, 'We will not evacuate our country and march away. You have a vast army, and the king will not be able to get the better of you.' He said to them, 'It is not possible for me to stay here; nor will I stay. Rather I will set out to join the imam.' 'It that be so,' they said, 'then we will make some compromise for the sake of our region.'

So Ura'i Abun set out to join the imam, and the people of Ifat with their cavalry, around fifty knights and two-thousand infantry, with their wives and children, went with him. They marched on, and reached the imam who was *en route* for the land of Dawaro and had pitched camp at the river Maju. and assembled there. Then they set out for Geberge.

[Besara is foolhardy and is killed by a poisoned arrow]

Before he had gathered with Urai Abun at Dabra Berhan the imam had sent Farasaham Dm, with Besara and Garad Sama^un. the knight of the Muslims, and Garad 'Utman bin Juhar, with about two-hundred cavalry, to

the land of the Maya to fight its people, [f°79] They set out, and entered the country of the Maya, guided by Nur al-Asram. The Maya people had built fortifications in the mountains, in thickly forested valleys and in inaccessible places.

The Muslims pitched camp by the river 'Aram in the middle of the territory of the Maya. Besara's army decamped and penetrated into the heart of the forest. Here they encountered a Maya unit composed of archers with poisoned arrow's. They wasted no time in engaging them in battle there. The cricr sounded the war-cry and Bcsara knew that his troops had joined battle, so he mounted his horses and set off in their direction.

Farasaham Din sent him a message, 'Don't go into the middle of the forest. It is not suitable for cavalry fighting, only for the foot-soldiers.' But Besara was foolhardy, and paid him no heed. For when he saw a fight, he could not control himself. He ignored the advice of Farasaham Din and went into the midst of the forest with his army and engaged the Maya archers in battle. They numbered five-thousand, while Besara had thrcc-hundred soldiers from Ycjju and twenty knights. A fiercc battle ensued.

Farasaham Din for his part was infuriated at Besara because he had not heeded

his warning; and he held his ground and remained where he was. Bcsara fought on the whole day, until mid-afternoon. Then a Maya archer hit him with a poisoned arrow^r, which struck him in the face and he died a martyr

- may the Most High God have mercy upon him. His companions took to their heels, with the Maya firing arrow's at their backs.

Farasaham heard the news, and Garad Sama'un and Garad 'Utman rose saying, if Besara has been killed, then why remain here? You can stay, but we are going to fight. Don't you leave the camp.' Farasaham Din replied, 'Very well,' and remained there, ready for battle. The companions of Garad Sama'un accompanied him. They met up with Bcsara's body which was being carried by his companions, and the Maya who were firing at them from their rear. The two of them charged at them, breaking through their midst and killing them. The achievement of the two knights Garad Sama'un and Garad 'Utman was God's doing. For the two of them threw the idol-worshippers' army back on its heels, and they were routed.

The Muslims pursued them into the midst of the forest and the rocks. Nur al-Asram was firing arrows at the idol-worshippers. for he was an archer;⁶and each time he fired one he would say, 'This is in revenge for Besara'. He killed a large number of them, until he had exhausted all the arrows in his quiver. By sunset the idol-worshippers had been routed and forty of their chieftains had been killed. The Muslims buried Besara. and then went back to Farasaham Din. They found fifty arrows in the breastplate of Garad Sama'un, but the Most High God saved him. Likewise the Muslim cavalry, some had thirty arrows in them, others fifteen, and they were saved.

The storyteller,; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says. When morning broke, the Muslims made preparations for battle. Farasaham Din mounted his horse and spurred his companions on. The foot-soldiers went ahead of the cavalry, and they proceeded to the spot where Besara had been killed; but they did not find one Maya. For when these saw how many of them had been massacred each of them took his wife and child and. in disarray, fled during the night to Fatagar.

When the Muslims learnt of their flight, and of their panic, they sent their cavalry into the land of the Maya, plundering its treasure and capturing them. This went on for some days, until they pledged their obedience and became Muslims - all except their chieftain whose name was Zarji. He refused to submit, saying, 'I will become a Muslim only by the hand of the imam.'

When the imam entered the land of Waj, Zarji became a Muslim in the presence of the imam. The rest of them, however, converted to Islam by the hand of Farasaham Din. The people of Zeqala also became Muslims, with their chieftain Tasfa, even though they had dug a trench before then, and had been on a war footing. After they realised that the trench could not protect them, all of them converted to Islam.

Farasaham Din then sent a messenger to the imam with a letter in which he said to him, 'The inhabitants of the land of the Maya have embraced Islam; as have the regions of Zeqala, Jitu.^{6 1} Arkatlu and Sajan - all of them have become Muslims/ The messenger reached the imam who was in Suq Wazjiba⁶ ' and gave him the letter. When he understood its contents he rejoiced exceedingly at the subjugation of the provinces, but grieved at the death of Bcsara whom he loved.

['Abd an-Nasr and Mujahid are sent off]

Ahmad then sent 'Abd an-Nasr to the land of Ganz as emir of that region. Previously another person had held that position. He said to him, 'Head for the region of Ganz, and do battle with its people, until either they become Muslims or they pay the poll-tax.' Similarly, after him, he sent off the wazir Mujahid, saying to him, 'You proceed straightaway to the land of Waj and Gebarge, and engage their peoples in battle until God conquers their territory. [I will bring up your rear.]

The wazir Mujahid set off and entered the regions of Waj and Gebarge, Their peoples offered him no resistance, and submitted to him, so he imposed the poll-tax on them. Their patrician, Eslam Dahar son of Korn Dahar, and the patrician Yonadab the brother-in-law of the king, refused to become Muslims, and went to Upper Gurage. Then the imam went, after Mujahid, to Waj and pitched camp in a place called Duj.

The two patricians, meantime, when the imam had made camp in this place, split up: Yonadab took his wives, his children and his treasure along with one-hundred-and-fifty knights and headed for the land of Damot seeking the king. He took the road to Angot. Eslam Dahar, fearful lest his country be devastated and his churches be burned down, sent his son, and the patrician Asebo^{<VJ} to the imam.

[The imam refuses Eslam Dahar's offer]

They set off and reached him where he was, in Duj. The imam asked them what they wanted, Asebo, who spoke Arabic well and was a reasonable man, spoke. He said, 'This boy is the son of Eslam Da liar. I am his relative by marriage.'¹⁴ We have come to you so that you do not burn down our churches, or lay waste our country. We will pay the poll-tax if we may continue in our religion/ The imam

asked them. 'Why is it that your patrician has not come with you?' 'He did not come to you,' Asebo replied, 'because he would be shamed before the king. As for his son, his father said to take him to you, and if you wish that he be a Muslim, then let him be a Muslim, and let him be with you. His father, however, will pay the poll-tax.'

So the imam sought the opinion of his companions. They were unanimous in saying, 'We do not wish the patrician to pay the poll-tax and remain in his religion. As for his son, we think it far better that he become a Muslim and be with us,' The imam agreed with their opinion. So he said to them: 'Say, "We acknowledge that there is no God but Allah, and Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah".' The patrician Asebo repeated the formula and became a fervent Muslim. The patrician's son, on the other hand, said. 'I will not become a Muslim unless you swear an oath to God that you will take me as your son.' The imam scorned his proposal, but said to him. 'Become a Muslim and I will grant all that you ask. Say. "There is no God but Allah - Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah. [T80] May God bless him and grant him peace"/ He said this. His thirty companions, the knights, also became Muslims, and the imam bestowed robes of honour upon them, and said to them, 'Do not be afraid'. And they remained with him.

Tasfa, the commander of the Maya, sent to the imam saying, 'Do not devastate my country, for I have converted to Islam by the hand of Farasaham Din. I should like to come to you. Send to me for an army, and I will gather together cavalry and foot-soldiers, and I will come to you'.

[Tasfa's submission accepted by the imam]

The imam sent Ya'qim to him. He set out, and reached Tasfa, who welcomed him, treated him graciously and entertained him hospitably. Tasfa rounded up thirty knights and two-thousand foot-soldiers who were also archers, and who hardly ever missed what they fired at. They reached the imam and Tasfa stood before him and gave him a costly gift which the imam accepted, and then gave to Ya'qim. Then he said to him, 'You are under his command'. To which he replied. 'As you wish'.

The imam then said to Ya'qim. 'Take this army and join 'Abd an-Nasr in the land of Ganz; and lend him assistance/ So Ya'qim set out and caught up with *Abd an-Nasr. Then the imam set off from Duj and camped at the foot of Mount Gurage/'⁷⁵ The wazir Mujahid went to the imam with the people of Waj who had converted to Islam, and with those of their patricians who despite having fortified themselves in the mountains with their lord, Eslam Dahar, had become Muslims. After the arrival of the wazir Mujahid, Farasaham Din arrived with those who had

converted to Islam by his hand: the inhabitants of six large provinces, with their cavalry and their patricians and their infantry in their thousands. They arranged themselves in line, and when the imam saw^r how many they were he worshipped God in thanksgiving; and prayed for Farasaham Din.

Meanwhile, the people of Ganz had made peace with ‘Abd an-Nasr and he imposed the poll-tax on them. Some of them refused, and left their country and fortified themselves in the mountains. When they did this, ‘Abd an-Nasr set off for the land of Kambat,⁶⁶ on the border of Ganz, whose people had joined forces with Gafat. ‘Abd an-Nasr fought them and routed them, killing a large number of them until he imposed the poll-tax on them. Then he went back to the district of Jaitu on the border of Hadya, whose people had likewise fortified themselves in valleys and wooded places.

‘Abd an-Nasr went against them and fought them there. Two of the Muslims were killed. One of them was al-Hajj Ibrahim al-Tigrawi and the

678

other was Abyat Kun. The greater part of the army was routed and only ten renowned knights held their ground with ‘Abd an-Nasr. Among them was Sabr ad-Din and Ezer Muhammad. These, with their ten companions, held their ground until those who had fled returned. After this they routed the idol-worshippers and killed the majority of them. ‘Abd an-Nasr remained on in their country.

[The Dawaro campaign gains momentum]

The stoyteiler; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: The imam was in the land of Waj fasting during the month of Ramadan. He ended the fast in Gurage, and said the prayer of the Feast,^{6 0} staying on two days. Then he handed over the pennant to the emir Husain, along with twelve other emirs among whom were the wazir ‘Addoli, the emir Abu Bakr Qatin. Garad ‘Utman bin Juhar and Absama Nur. All of them bore pennants. They had six-hundred knights with them, and large numbers of foot-soldiers. The imam ordered them to set out for the land of Dawaro. The emir Husain was their commander in chief So they set off for Dawaro. They were a vast company,^{6x0} like overlapping tiers of chain mail. They entered the land of the Maya, and the army of the Maya, with its commander Nur al-Asram, joined forces with them. Then they set off with them and went into the land of Zari, whence they entered the district of Watmat and heard the news that the patrician Safu the son of Wasan Sagad, and Fanu’el and Amha were joining forces in Dawaro. So they set off by night from Watmat, forcing their march, until when morning broke they had crossed the borders of the land of Dawaro.

News reached the patricians of Dawaro: ‘The emir Husain and wazir ‘Addoli with their two armies have crossed the Dawaro frontier; and the two of them are

headed in your direction.’⁶⁸¹ At that, they took fright, set out and arrived at the Sari gate.^{^2} Then they sent their vanguard ahead to [reconnoitre] the Muslim camp. The Muslims, meanwhile, reached the encampment of the idol-worshippers that had been abandoned by them. Local people gave them news of the patricians, saying to them, ‘When they heard news of you they first of all went off to the Sari gate; beyond that we don’t know what became of them’.

The vanguard that the idol-worshippers sent with the patrician Amha was composed of thirteen knights. They arrived in the vicinity of the place where the Muslims were, and met up with some persons who were cutting hay for the Muslims’ horses. They rode among them, killed three of them. Not far from them were around five of the Muslim knights, Takia whose hand and leg had been cut off, and Talila, Garima, ‘Umar Qumas and Goita ‘Umar. When the Abyssinians moved against their companions they slackened their reins and raised the tips of their spears. When the enemy of God, the patrician Amha, saw them, he fled, returning the way he had come and three of his companions were killed. Takia pursued Amha, and when he drew near, the patrician had two javelins in his left hand and a sword in his right hand.⁶⁸³ As it was, he escaped only after a bitter contest, and went to the patricians and gave them the news that the Muslims were above Suq Dawaro^{TM4}.

[Husain and ‘Addoli differ over strategy]

The storyteller of the Futuh al-Habasa - may the Most High God have mercy upon him - says: The Muslims disagreed amongst themselves. The emir Husain said, ‘So now, let us march against them and fight them’. But the wazir ‘Addoli said, ‘The imam clearly told me that the patrician Safii wants to convert to Islam. He said to me, “If he goes into the land of Gatur, don’t pursue him. Wait for me until I come, and he becomes a Muslim at my hand. But if he goes down the ‘Awas road, towards Ifat, pursue him and fight him.” So now let us see which will be the road he takes’. The emir Husain replied, it is not up to you to be giving this advice. Let us set out, and fight him’. At which ‘Addoli replied, ‘This isn’t what the imam said to me; I won’t go with you’. And he pitched his tent. Then he said, ‘I won’t budge from this place’. When he pitched his tent the Muslims pitched their tents.

The emir Husain was totally at a loss, and said, ‘If I had known that you would act in this way, I would never have set out with you’. Then he said to Absama Nur, ‘March to the land of Zamit. I have heard that the children and the wives of the patricians are there. Plunder what is there and return to me speedily, within two days.” He detached to him one-hundred knights and many foot-soldiers bearing shields. So Absama Nur set off, for Zamit, captured their wives, their children and their treasure, and laid their country waste. Then he went back to the emir Husain

and they all went and pitched camp on Gurage, above Suq Dawaro. The local people came and gave them news of the idol-worshippers, saying, 'Safu, son of Wasan Sagad has left the Sari gate and entered [f'8l] the land of Jan Zajra. A vast church that w^as built by Wasan Sagad is there. They used to slaughter for it five-hundred cattle in one day. His son has stopped there'.

[Safu escapes the emir Husain's net]

When the emir Husain heard this, he commanded the emir Abu Bakr Qatin, 'Travel by the lower road, and enter the land of Jan Zajra, for the patrician Safu is there. We will take the upper road, and we and you will join forces at the church of Wasan Sagad.' So the emir Au Bakr set out.

The storyteller says: When Safu heard that the Muslims were making a beeline towards him, he assembled the monks, his brothers, his kinsfolk, his wives and his children and took the road for Zagba so as to reach Ifat. He fled towards it until he reached Zagba which he skirted around. He crossed over the 'Awas, finally reaching Ifat, heading in the direction of the king, Wanag Sagad. He journeyed after that for a month, reaching him in Angot, informing him of what the Muslims had done, and of what had happened to him. The king was grief-stricken.

The emir Abu Bakr, meanwhile, entered the land of Jan Zajra. devastated it, and burnt down the churches. The wazir 'Addoli and the emir Husain took the route that they had said they would take, and joined forces with the emir Abu Bakr in Jan Zajra, and he gave the two of them news of the movements of the patrician Safu. They said to him, 'He has taken the Zagba road to join the king'.

The emir Husain summoned the emir Abu Bakr and gave him a detachment of fighting men, amongst them Absama Nur, Garad'Utman bin Juhar, Ura'i Qat, Garad 'Ananiya, and others of their ilk - in all, one-hundred knights and one-thousand foot-soldiers. He said, 'Travel by the lower road, go around behind Zagba, and catch Safu unawares. If you catch up with him, you will take booty.'

The emir Abu Bakr travelled night and day, forcing the pace until he entered Zagba w^herc the local people gave him new s of the patrician Safu, the son of Wasan Sagad. They said to him, 'He has outstripped you by three days. He has traversed a great deal of our territory; you won't be able to catch him'.

The emir Abu Bakr felt chagrin at his having slipped from his grasp, and he and his companions set off. They said. 'Let us enter the land of Jaurari and let us fight, until they either become Muslims or pay the poll- tax'. Their suggestion delighted him, and he set off against it and pitched camp above the river Buro.^{68?}

The first to come to him was the patrician Jaraurai who embraced Islam. Then the patrician Robel, and the patrician Wasan Jas, and Tedros, all became Muslims, and their conversion was sincere.

Five other patricians, however, amongst them Balaw Jas, Sarseya and Qart Kafluh who became Muslims after this, and Sim and Auhasah, decided to dig in. Garad Hanu also became a Muslim.

The emir Abu Bakr moved against the five afore-mentioned patricians who had fortified their positions, and fought them on the mountain top. God gave the victory to the believers. The five patricians were captured, along with their horses, their wives and the children and the emir Abu Bakr returned victorious to the land of Ar'an, and sent a messenger to the emir Husain and the wazir 'Addoli, with the glad tidings of Jaraurai and the surrounding countryside's having converted to Islam; and that they were such a throng, that God himself alone could count their number. When the messenger reached the two of them they were in Gadarah. They were overjoyed.

The storyteller; may the Most High God have mercy upon him. says. The emir Husain and the wazir 'Addoli had set out from Jan Zajra and reached the Sari gate. They pitched camp at Gadarah. As for the idol-worshippers - when Safu had set off, leaving the patricians Amha and Fan'll, he said to the two of them, 'Don't come along with me to the king'. They said, 'What kind of a welcome would the king give us, when we haven't done as he wished? We will go, instead, into the territory of Gatur. Perhaps we will meet up with a small band of Muslims, or a force that has split up, with which we can present ourselves to the king, and he will be pleased with us.' So he left them, and they went into Gatur.

The Muslims had camped in Gadarah as we mentioned already. The people of Adal-Mabraq went to the emir Husain and all of them became Muslims, as did the people of Auwawalada. Watan, Ajyat and Arqul: all were from Dawaro which had fifty patricians, each one of whom governed a considerable area of the territory. All became Muslims.

The imam set off from Gurage [and after] two days pitched camp above lake Zway whose water is sweet. Their boats took three days to cross it. There were three islands^v in it, at a distance from one another, and each island had three churches upon it. The imam wanted boats to be made to cross it, but the Muslims complained of the paucity of their supplies and said to him, 'Leave the lake, and go up to the land of Hadya and the people of this region who have become Muslims will suffice against the islanders'. So the imam withdrew from the area and set off

for Hadya. Then the governor of Hadya, who was a Muslim, came to him. He used to pay the poll-tax to the king; and in the same way, every year, he would give him one of their daughters to be baptised a Christian by him. It was customary in their country for them to do this.

The above-mentioned governor of Hadya went, with his army, to the imam. He said, 'I am a Muslim, and you are Muslims; I am ready to obey whatever command you give me.' The imam welcomed him for he had been hospitable to the Muslims. The imam gave him a sumptuous robe of honour, and clad all the chieftains in gowns, [there was a vast throng of them. The imam questioned them about their conciliatory practice, every year, of giving one of their daughters selected for her beauty, comeliness and nobility of birth, in spite of the fact that they are Muslims. They said, 'The king imposed it on our fathers who have gone before us; he was more powerful than they. He has also obliged us not to wear armour, or to carry' a sword, or to ride our horses with a saddle; only bare-back. And he also obliged us to give our daughter⁶⁹⁰ whom we give out of fear that he will kill us or burn down our mosque. When he sends someone to us to receive the girl and the money^{h 1} we bring the girl out to him on a divan, we wash her, drape her in cloth, pray over her and treat her as if she were dead. And then we hand her over to him. Our fathers and our ancestors did this, but now the Most High God has brought some Muslims to us. You have routed him who had dominion over us and you have destroyed his armies. Let us fight with you for the sake of God. If you went away [f'82] after this,⁶⁹² he would not be able to reduce us to

impotence because of what you have done to him; because of how you have treated him: draining his power."

The imam said to them, 'Don't be afraid; fight with us'. They replied. 'Willingly'. The imam remained in their country live days, and then he set off. With him was the governor of Hadya. He entered the territory of Ayfars and pitched his camp there. Then he sent Ahmad Goita to the land of Sarkah with the brother of the governor of Hadya. He said to him, 'Stay in Sarkah until Garad Saddiq, the emir of the place, comes to you. So Ahmad Goita set off, with fifty cavalry, and the local people welcomed them, and all of the idol-worshippers who were there became Muslims.

[Allah Majan bin Ahmad is killed in battle by "Addalu]

He likewise sent Goita Allah Magan to the emir Husain and to 'Addoli in the land of Gadarah with the glad tidings that the governor of Hadya and his companions had gone over to the imam. Allah Majan bin Ahmad set off and entered the region of Ganburah.

While he was thus *en routexo* the emir Husain and to 'Addoli, who should join the patricians who were in Gatur - Amha and Fanu'cl - but the patrician 'Addalii. 'Addalu asked them both, 'What news of the Muslims; how far have they got? And the two of you - what benefit is there in your remaining here?' They replied, 'As for news of the Muslims, they are in the land of Gadarah; the emir Husain and 'Addoli have pitched camp there. The emir Abu Bakr Qatm has set off to Jaurai. It is thought that the imam has not yet come, but there are those who think that he is in the land of Hadya.'

The patrician 'Addalu said, 'If this information be correct, then let us leave here this evening. Let us enter by the Sari gate, and fall upon the emir Husain at first light. If the imam comes and they join forces, then we will not be able to do anything. So let us move against them now, while they are separated. Let us attack them - that is more to our advantage than our remaining inactive until they join forces.' They arose that evening and set off

- in all, three-hundred cavalry and six-thousand infantry.

Allah Majan bin Ahmad, meantime, set off from Ganburah and passed the night on the road leading to the Sari gate. The companions of Allah Majan saw the vast army on the move. This is how they saw it:¹⁴⁴ the patrician Amha on the right, Fanu'cl on the left, and the patrician 'Addalu in the middle. The companions of Allah Majan who saw the infidel cavary went to Allah Majan who was bringing up their rear⁶⁹ and said to him. 'There is an enemy force at our back; and we won't be able to prevail over these troops, for we are only twenty knights. So let us rather return to the imam and inform him about it.'

In reply, Allah Majan said, 'My only reason for leaving the country of the Muslims was for the *jihad* and for martyrdom. The imam entrusted me with his pennant: am I to flee with my pennant, without having fought? If you want to flee, then flee. But if you want paradise, and the black-eyed *houris*, then follow me. I will be the first of you who bursts into their midst'.

He then donned his breastplate and his armour, girded himself with his sword, mounted his horse whose name was Lazaza, and headed in the direction of the Abyssinians while egging on his companions. These were Zaharbui 'All; Abu Bakr bin Arsa; Kaled bin 'Adruh - a companion of Garad Ahmadus; Sajara; and the people of Kusem. Others of his companions were marching with Urai Nur. As companions Allah Majan had five knights only: not more.

So they set off, glancing neither to right nor left - intent only on their goal. When they saw the idol-worshippers, Allah Majan said, three times, to Zaharbui 'All, I am the son of Ahmad \ Then he said, 'This is my wished-for end: what I have desired'. Then he struck his horse with his whip, and it bounded twenty cubits. He burst into their midst, breaching their lines and destroying their compactness, penetrating to the spot where the patrician 'Addalu was.

The patrician who was in the centre, emerged to meet him in combat after he had killed six of the idol-worshippers. They both received spear thrusts, but Allah Majan got under his guard and struck the patrician, who

was wearing protective armour, a blow on his breast. The spearhead became stuck in the armour plating and when Allah Majan tried to pull it out, the spear snapped. Then he pulled his sword out of its scabbard, wheeled around, left him and rode into the middle of the fray, killing their champions while he searched for 'Addalu. Meanwhile some foot-soldiers bearing shields made of hide came up behind him and hurled javelins at his horse. These struck it in the belly and emerged from the other side. The horse collapsed, and Allah Majan was unseated. He struggled to get up, sword in hand, but the patrician 'Addalu charged at him, and stabbed him with his spear. He died a martyr - may the Most High God have mercy upon him, Amen.

[Zaharbui 'All and Sajara escape by lying doggo]

His four companions had charged when he did.⁴ Adruh Abu Bakr and the patrician Fanifel grappled with each other, striking each other blows with their swords, so that the army was astounded at their contest. Then the idol-worshippers joined forces against him and killed him - may the most High God have mercy upon him. The same happened to Abu Bakr bin Arsa. They hamstringed the horse of Zaharbui 'All - and so weakened him with wounds that they abandoned him thinking him to be dead. He managed to get away after that - long may he live - and took part in the conquest of Jlnah. The same thing happened to Sajara - the idol-worshippers so weakened him that they left him for dead. But he recovered and took part in the conquest of Tegré.

When Allah Majan penetrated the massed lines of the idol-worshippers, UraT Nur and his companions took to their heels without doing battle. The idol-worshippers pursued them, killing four of their knights and more than sixty of their foot-soldiers. They captured whatever horses and booty⁶⁹⁷ of the Muslims they could find, and then returned to Gatur.

The emir Husain and the wazir "Addoli heard news of what happened to them,

and sent a large contingent of knights to the scene of their battle. They buried Allah Majan and then returned to the emir Husain.

The storyteller says: The imam, meanwhile, after pitching camp in Ayfars heard the news of the idol-worshippers joining forces. So he set off from Ayfars, leaving the wazir Nur behind in the encampment. His army accompanied him. He camped, in mid-afternoon in the land of Sadqah, and took captive two farm labourers from among the local people. He asked them, 'Do you have any news of the idol-worshippers?' 'Yes,' they replied, 'the patricians who had been in Gatur left the Sari gate wanting to do battle with one of your emirs, either the emir Abu Bakr or the emir Husain. Then they encountered your troops, whom you had sent with Allah Majan and his companions, at the Sari gate. They fought, and Allah Majan and his companions were killed. Then they returned to their camp at Gatur'.

[The imam takes Gatur]

The imam was desolated with grief over Allah Majan, and the next day set out from Sadqah for the land of Daneq, passing the night there. The

—

£QQ

idol-worshippers got to hear of the imam's spending the night at Daneq. The local people told them, saying, 'The imam himself is heading in your direction. Don't imagine that they are the emirs ff'83] whom you know about

- this is the imam with his army/Terror and apprehension overcame them and they left Gatur for a different place.

The imam left Daneq, set off and approached the vicinity of Gatur. But when they wanted to enter it, they found that the horses could not negotiate the road and the mountains. So they pitched camp* and took the saddles off their horses. While they were engaged in doing this, news reached hem that the idol-worshippers were in Gatur, Once the imam had stationed imself above Gatur, the inhabitants of that region, and the people of Jan-Jai - n very large numbers - became Muslims. 'Utman bin Takla also became a Muslim - because his father had been a Muslim, and had apostatised in the iays of the sultan Muhammad. His brother Kaled bin Takla, likewise :onvertcd to Islam, along with a vast throng of knights and infantry.

The imam and his anny set off next for 'Andurah, and the church of Wasan Sagad which he had previously burnt to the ground, as we have already described. He appointed Garad Sihab governor of Gatur; and after the conquest he gave the territory of Astar Gatur to the emir 'Umar. Then he sent for Garad Jusu, the father of Besara. He said to him. 'Go down to Dawaro for I have made you its governor'.

Garad Saddiq he sent to Sarkah as its governor, and he departed. In one day the imam divided his emirs among the various provinces: in all he sent out fifty emirs to all the regions. The imam remained on in 'Andurah,

Garad Saddiq set off for Sarkah and was welcomed by its inhabitants, offering him their obediencc. The lord of Hadya gave his daughter to the imam. Her name was ... ' ¹ * She was with him only three months and then, after that, died.

['Abd an-Nasr reports to the imam]

The storyteller,; may God have mrcy upon him, says: [£]Abd an-Nasr remained in Ganz, and its people submitted to his authority. The lord of Hadya said to the imam, 'Since you have told 'Abd an-Nasr to stay in Ganz. and since my country and Ganz arc adjacent, O my Lord, send for him to join you, and forge an alliance between me and him. When we have made this pact between us, nothing will be able to prevail oscr us.' So the imam sent a messenger to the lord of Ganz, 'Abd an-Nasr, to come to him.

The messenger reached him while he was in Ganz. As soon as the imam's messenger reachcd him he made preparations for the journey. He got together some gifts for the imam - well brokcn-in mules and *objets d'art* from Ganz, many head of cattle of a buffalo-like species. Twelve days later he reached the imam who was in 'Andurah. He greeted the imam and presented him with his gifts. The latter sought news of the region, and of what had

happened to him in Ganz, and in the district of Bater-Amora. So he informed him of all this.

The imam was astonished and asked him, 'Why did you enter this region, and why did you asccnd mount Kambat?' 'When I entered the land of Ganz,' he replied, 'I heard of the treasure of Wanag Sagad. When Wanag Sagad, the king of Abyssinia, entered Ganz. he left his treasure behind here. So w hen he set off for Bet Amhara, I set off after them, and fought them on top of the mountain, and captured the treasure.⁷⁰⁰ Here it is. I have brought it to you.^T

Then he presented it, and gave it all to the imam. It included money and wondrous things like golden statues, and vessels, and a vast quantity of Byzantine ⁰² brocades and carpets. 'Abd an-Nasr stayed three days with the imam who formed an alliance between himselfand the lord of Hadya. The imam also married him to the sister of the lord of Hadya. Afterwards, the imam said to him, 'Proceed to the land of Jinah and don't be concerned about yourself, because you will have a mighty army with you. I will join you after two days.' 'Abd an-Nasr set off for

Jinah with his brother-in-law, and stayed there.

[Simu and Sabbaru betray the Abyssinians]

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: The imam left Andurah and arrived at the encampment which was in the suq of the district of Jinah. Then messengers reached him from the two patricians who were in Bali. They said. The two patricians, Simu son of Wanag Jan the *mujahid*, and the patrician Sabbaru of Bali, sent us to you. This is their message: 'We are not on the side of the people of Bali. We are with you. Send an army to us and

we will be the first to fight alongside you.' Simu son of Wanag Jan the *mujahid*, says: 'I will act towards the people of Bali as my father acted towards them in the days of the sultan Muhammad; and even more harshly than he',^{7*} The imam rejoiced and questioned them, seeking all the news from them. Then, delighted, he sent a messenger⁷⁰⁴ to them both, saying. 'Don't be afraid, and don't be anxious. Patrician Simu, you remain in the country until my companions reach you. And let your companion and friend, the patrician Sabbaru, come to me.' Then the messengers left, after he had clothed them in gowns of honour, and informed the two patricians of everything that the imam had said.

[Husain stays in Dawaro; 'Addoli returns to the imam]

The imam then wrote to the emir Husain, lord of Dawaro, and to 'Addoli, and said to the two of them, 'The two patricians Simu and Sabbaru and the people of Bali have sent a messenger to me saying, "We are with you: not with our people. Send your armies to us, and we will fight with them and we will do what is sufficient to place you in charge of our country ." So now.. both of you, come to us, if you have concluded all that you had to do in Dawaro; otherwise, let the wazir 'Addoli come to me.'

He gave the letter to Ura' I Abu Bakr and said, 'Set out'. So he set out: and reached the emir Husain and the wazir 'Addoli and gave them the letter. When they had understood what it contained the emir Husain said to Ura' Abu Bakr. 'As far as Dawaro is concerned, we have wound up everything; here. They have all become Muslims. But the emir Abu Bakr is in the land of Jaraaurari. He has gathered together throngs of the Dawaro people who have become believers and embraced the religion of Islam: there are thousands of them, patricians, knights and foot-soldiers. It is impossible for me to undertake a journey until he comes back to me with these people.' So Ura' Abu Bakr said to Wazir 'Addoli, 'You come with me. The emir Husain can

stay here until the emir Abu Bakr returns to him.⁵ Then the wazir 'Addoli and his

army thereupon set out with the messenger in the direction of the imam.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says, The imam was residing in his base in Jinah when the wazir 'Addoli arrived in the encampment with half of his army. The emir Abu Bakr had the other half of the army. He was in the presence of the imam and his companions when 'Abd an-Nasr and his brother-in-law arrived. The imam was speaking with the wazir 'Addoli.

The emir 'Abd an-Nasr and his brother-in-law said to the imam, 'We have heard that idol-worshippers have devastated some parts^(lf1) of the regions of Hadya and Ganz. So now, what shall we do? You [f'84] know what should be done. News of the devastation has reached us from the two regions.' The imam said to them, 'The two of you should travel to your respective districts before they are laid low. 'Abd an-Nasr, you remain in your region, Ganz, with your army; and let your brother-in-law remain in his region. Hadya.' He recited the *Fatiha*, farewelled them, and they set out and entered Sarkah.

After this, the patrician Sabbaru came to the imam in Jinah and informed him about 'Addalu, the patrician of Bali. He said, 'I have come to you without his knowledge'. Sabbaru became a Muslim by the hand of the imam, and his witness was a genuine one. He said, 'I acknowledge that there is no God but Allah, and I acknowledge that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah - may God bless him and grant him peace.'

The imam then sent the wazir 'Addoli to Bali, saying to him: 'I have made you governor of Bali'. So 'Addoli set off with the large group mentioned above, including Absama Nur, the wazir 'Abbas, son of the imam's brother, Garad Ahmad Goita, Ura'I Qat 'Umar, Garad Ahmadus bin Mahfuz, Farasaham Satut, the much lamented Farasaham 'Ali, Ura'I Ahmad bin Harjai Muhammad, and Hamed bin Suhah. They set off and reached a country called Zanabatan.

Afterwards, the imam learnt that the lord of Bali was at full strength, with a mighty army. So he sent to the wazir 'Addoli saying to him, 'The lord of Bali is at maximum strength. To reinforce you. I have sent you 'Abd an-Nasr, lord of Ganz, and his brother-in-law, lord of Hadya, and Garad Saddiq, lord of Sarkah.' Then he wrote to them to travel to the wazir 'Addoli to reinforce him against the idol-worshippers. The messenger got through to all of them, and they joined forces in Zanabatan.

Their guide was the patrician Sabbaru who had converted to Islam and was a famous knight. They set off down the Hadya road, and crossed over the river Wabi.

Here, the patrician Simu bin Wanag Jan joined them: it was he who had sent to the imam and said, 'I will be the first to join your companions; and I will fight with them'. He did as he said, and became a Muslim. The wazir 'Addoli questioned him, asking 'Where is 'Addalu the patrician of Bali; what region is he in?' He replied that 'Addalu was in the district of Zallah. So they set off, with the cavalry detachments tiling, one after the other, and the two patricians, Simu and Sabbaru. in the lead. They reached the vicinity of Zallah and pitched camp there.

['Addalu's response to Simu's proposal]

After this, the patrician Simu came looking for the wazir 'Addoli. He said to him, 'I will send to him ¹¹ and say, "There is no way that you could fight the Muslims. You have heard about their fighting. They have dominated a great number of our provinces; and have given promises of security to their inhabitants in return for their submission. Numbers of the the Abyssinians have become Muslims. They put the king and his armies to flight. So now, if you wish to be a Muslim, become one; if you refuse to do so, and prefer to retain your religion, then pay the poll-tax, and provide us with provisions and horses, if neither of these suggestions pleases you, then prepare to do battle.'

The wazir 'Addoli said to him 'Go ahead and do it,' and Simu sent one of his equerries to the patrician 'Addalu to repeat his words to him. The patrician said to the messenger, 'What you have said to me does not correspond to what I believe to be the truth. You say that I won't be able to fight the Muslims. How many of them are there now?' The messenger replied, The number of original Muslims whom they can rely upon is five-hundred cavalry. But there is a vast throng of those people of Yeju, and Dawaro and Waj who have entered their religion and become Muslims at their hands/ The patrician said to the messenger, 'Say to your master Simu, "As for what you say about how multitudinous the Muslims are - to my way of thinking they are few. And as for the poll-tax, I won't pay it. And as for becoming a Muslim, I won't do it. On the contrary', I will die fighting for my country"/

So the messenger returned to Simu and told him what the patrician had said. Then he took him to the wazir 'Addoli to tell him the news. Then they passed the night where they were. When day broke and they had said their prayers they readied themselves for the fight. They raised their pennants aloft, and set off. The patrician of Bali, meanwhile, had risen and drawn up his divisions and ordered the Public Crier to make the following proclamation: 'Bring your womenfolk and children from the countryside, and you march together with them to fight the Muslims.

The patricians then assembled before him and said to him, 'Why have you ordered us to act in this way towards our children and our womenfolk: turning them out for the battle? Rather, we will go up with them to the mountains, and then we will fight alongside you/ He said to them, 'You will not act thus: rather you will bring your womenfolk and your children with you; and I will bring my womenfolk with you. And each one of you will put his womenfolk and children behind him, and fight in front of them. For if he is tempted to flee he will see his womenfolk behind him, and will not be able to continue fleeing. However, if you were to leave your womenfolk and children in a safe place, and you were to flee, having done this would not help you, and you would find no sanctuary. But now you want to act differently. You will not. Die [if necessary] for your country and for your womenfolk and your children.'

After they had heard his words, and how he had spurred them on, they brought their womenfolk and children and made their preparations for the fight against the Muslims. In the same way the Muslims marched out against them.

[The battle for Bali]

When the two forces caught sight of each other on the confines of Zallah, each of them stood stock still where they were. Their soldiers ¹⁹ were ranged on the right, the left and the centre, In the centre was the wazir 'Addoli with his companions - Ura'i Ahmad Din, Ahmad Goita, 'Ali Farasaham. Farasaham Satut bin Dawaro^{71,1} - like ravening lions. On the left was 'Abd an- Nasr lord of Ganz and his companions; and on the right was Garad 'Abbas the imam's nephew, the Bahr Nagas, and Garad 'Utman. Leading the charge w^rerc Absama Nur, and Sabr ad-Din - the most famous of the heroes of the cavalry, ¹¹ and the emir Abu Bakr bin Yemaj Ahmad, the killer of the patrician Eslamu in the battle of Zari, and others of their ilk.

The Muslims encouraged one another, each man reminding his companion of the benefit of the *jihad*: what good things God had prepared in paradise for the *mujahdun*. Then the Muslims felt loathing for life in this world, and yearning to meet their Lord - may he be praised and exalted. All the Muslims were convinced that whatever happened they would be victorious.

The *Author*; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: As for the patrician 'Addalu. lord of Bali, when the Muslims advanced against them he arranged soldiers carrying shields in front of the cavalry, then mounted his horse and held the middle position like a tower of iron. Then he

summoned his womenfolk and his children and placed them at his back, saying to them, 'Take your ornaments and put them on. This day will be famous. Its memory will be recalled until Resurrection Day,' [f°85] His womenfolk did as the patrician ordered them. When the other patricians saw what their lord had done, all of them did as he did, and placed their womenfolk at their backs, as he had previously commanded them to do.

Then the Muslims marched against them with a God-inspired tranquillity and dignified bearing, placing all their hope in what God had promised them in his perspicuous book in which he says - and he is the most trustworthy of speakers - 'Reckon not those who are killed in the path of Allah as dead; nay, they live, and are provided sustenance by their Lord,

• • - , .7J2
rejoicing, etc.

[‘Addalu is killed, and the Abyssinians routed]

The first of the Muslims to charge was a man called Adasa; and the Muslims charged at his back, with Islamic hearts and Muhammadan zeal. The idol-worshippers likewise charged. The fighting was hand-to-hand, and the struggle intense; hero facing hero. The patrician ‘Addalu charged into the middle of the Muslims. The battle that ensued was the fiercest possible: with the two armies commingling confusedly. Then the voices of the Muslims were raised in the *tahfil*,⁷¹³ and the *takbir*.¹⁴ and in prayer for the bringer of good new's, the herald.⁷¹⁵ Farasaham 'Ah charged at the patrician of Bali until he dislodged him from his horse's saddle and threw him to the ground. Both fell together. Then 'All Farasaham drew a large curved and double-edged dagger that he had with him and cut off his head - may God thrust his soul into Hell, and ‘an evil place it is to settle inV¹⁰ When the idol-worshippers

saw their patrician had been felled, they turned tail pursued by the Muslim^ who killed and captured them.

The storyteller,; may God have mercy upon him, says: To God goes the credit for the achievement of the Muslim women on the day of the battle of Bali, for when the Muslims charged the idol-worshippers, their wives charged behind them, on their mules; and when the Abyssinians had been routed, each woman could say, ‘I have captured four of the women of the idol-worshippers,’ or others of them could say, in the same way, ‘five, or ‘six’ or ‘seven’.

Many thousands of the idol-worshippers were killed that day, along with an incalculable number of patricians, among them the patrician Yeshae whom

Absama Nur killed; Abib, lord of Gatur, a notorious *Satan* whom the patrician Simu, son of Wanag Sagad the *mujahid* killed; the patrician Limu, lord of Sarkah, whom Garad Ahmadus bin Mahfuz killed; and Gafani, killed by one of the Muslim converts. Also killed was Za-Mankir, the son of the patrician of Bali, 'Addalu, whose killer was Tamas Abun, the slave-boy of the sultan; the patrician Majan whose killer was Sabbaru, who had become a Muslim with Simu. The total number of high-ranking patricians who were killed was one-hundred.

Those who were captured were numerous: among them were the Azi] Zakirah, ¹ one of those close to the king, and one of his arbitrators among the patricians; Naqdiya the apostate; ^{1N} Giyorgis, the son of Dahragot wtior; Farasaham Adal captured; and Karej, whom Mansur captured. The total of the patricians who were captured was around two-hundred. Three-thousari infantry and cavalymen whose names are unknown, were killed.

The terrain was covered with dead. And blood flowed like water on the ground. God delivered their horses, their womenfolk, their children and their tents, and everything that they owned, into the power of the Muslim.' Praise be to God, the all-powerful, the opener of the gates of sustenance, the all-wise, for of the Muslims two men alone were killed - upon both of whom

God had set the seal of martyrdom: one of them was Ball Nur, and the other was Ahawamih. The wazir 'Addoli camped in the house of the patrician 'Addalu in Zallah. He assembled the prisoners, the wives of the patricians and their children and asked them, 'Is there any patrician of Bali remaining?' 'Yes,' they said, 'the patrician of Qaqmah, Aidabis, and Badlu, patrician of Dawaro, and five others of their ilk'. Then he asked, 'Where are they now?' Simu answered, 'They can only be heading for Qaqmah and the patrician Aidabis'.

['Addoli consolidates his victory]

When 'Addoli heard this he assembled forty Muslim knights from the cavalry and said to the patrician Simu, 'Travel with these forces, and pursue those who are fleeing wherever they may be. For you know their territory; it is your country.' Simu said, 'Willingly,' and then set off with them to the land of Qaqmah, where he encountered the patricians hiding in the forests.

He employed a ruse against them, and captured them. He killed one of them, the patrician Dal Sabbar, one of the Dawaro patricians, the brother of the accursed Fanu'el who until now has not converted to Islam; nor has he fallen into the clutches of the Muslims, despite all the battles that he has fought in. Simu killed his brother. They captured the remainder of the patricians - they were around fifty

knights - along with their horses, and returned victorious to the wazir 'Addoli who was in Zallah. Then he presented him with the horses and the prisoners.

The patrician Haja, meanwhile, had crossed the Wabi and was heading for the road to Dawaro. In Dawaro was Garad Jusu, father of Besara, whom the imam had made its governor. It so happened that when the wazir 'Addoli set off for Bali the imam said to Garad Jusu, 'Take the lower road to Bali and hold the Darah gate. No one leaving Bali will be able to slip past you'. While he was on the road, that is, the Darah road, the patrician approached, descending the Bali road after crossing the Wabi. He was seen by the guards whom Jusu had ordered to take up positions in the heights, so that they could observe the road from a distance. They informed Garad Jusu, saying to him, 'We have spied a force descending the mountains on the Wabi side'. He asked, 'Are they many, or few?' 'We can't tell now'. We won't be able to be sure of their strength, until they get closer to us. We'll come and tell you then'. He said to them, 'Quickly, go back to your positions, and you'll be able to ascertain what is what'.

[Jusu kills Haja and sends his head to the imam]

So they set off, and then returned not long afterwards, saying,⁴ He is close by us; hold the position with your troops; we have seen them descending nearby us'. Jusu arranged his troops at a point where the road narrowed, and waited there. The idol-worshippers had no idea that Garad Jusu was holding the spot where the gate was; and the only road they could take was *via* this gate. When they reached the gate they saw him there with his troops. They were unable to flee⁷¹⁹ because of the narrowness of the road. When Jusu and his troops attacked them, they yelled out out, 'Mercy,' 'Mercy,' but he did not hear what they said. He ordered them. Throw down your weapons,' so they threw their weapons on the ground. Then he took them captive: five patricians with sixty cavalry, including a son of Addalu the patrician who had been killed. They took all their horses, weapons and equipment. Then he ordered them to be beheaded.

They killed all of them, apart from one patrician called Fares. When they tried to tie him up one of the Muslims went towards him, but the idol-worshipper had a dagger with him and when the Muslim tried to grab him, he took the dagger in his hand and stuck it in the Muslim's [f°86] throat and he fell down dead - may the Most High God have mercy upon him.

The idol-worshipper fled while all the other Muslims were engaged in killing their prisoners. Only when they had finished killing the prisoners did the Muslims notice that that man was dead, as well as his equerry. The name of the man whom the idol-worshipper killed was Alhamai Sultan, who had been a flute player in the

land of Sa'd ad-Din. The imam loved him. He was a courageous knight who had forsaken his flute playing and become one of the cavalymen. They buried him. Garad Jusu had cut off the head of the patrician Haja, and sent it to the imam who was in JTnah. The imam was exasperated at

this patrician because he had sent him a letter saying, 'I want to become a Muslim,' but when the imam sent a messenger to him and he arrived, Haja killed him and then went off to the land of Bali. That is why the only head he had cut off was Haja's,⁷²⁰ in order to give the imam pleasure by so doing.

When the messenger carrying the head of the patrician reached him, the imam proclaimed the power of God, and glorified him. He had no news of the wazir 'Addoli or of what he had achieved in the battle of Bali, or of his victory over the idol-worshippers.

When the imam saw the head, he asked the messenger, 'Where did you meet up with the person whose head this is?' The messenger asked him, 'Hasn't the messenger from the wazir 'Addoli come to you? Haven't you received the glad tidings of what he did?' "What has he done?" asked the imam. So he told the imam about the killing of the patrician 'Addalu, and the routing of him and his army, and the coming of the patrician whose head Garad Jusu had cut off.

Hearing this the imam prayed to God in thanksgiving, prostrating himself twice, and then gave the messenger and his companions matching⁷⁻¹ garments of honour, and two golden bracelets for their hands. ^A

Overjoyed, the imam went out and camped in the countryside. Then he ordered that the small copper drums, the big bass drums and the Abyssinian drums made out of hollowed tree trunks, be sounded. Then the Muslim army assembled before him, and asked him, 'What is the news?' He held up the patrician's head in front of them, and informed them of the news of the victory. Their joy knew no bounds. ['Addoli's messenger arrives belatedly 1

The wazir 'Addoli, meanwhile, when he had completed his subjugation of Bali, wrote the imam a letter, giving him the good news concerning the killing of the patrician in Bali and sent it with a man called Ibrahim. He arrived in the land of Jinah two days after the arrival of Garad Jusu's messenger. The messenger bearing the good news entered the presence of the imam and gave him the letter, and kissed his hand. The imam asked him, 'What held you up on the road? We heard the news two days before your arrival'. He answered, 'We were delayed by the river Wabi which was in spate'. So the imam read the letter, and absorbed its contents, especially the part that asked, 'What shall we do with the captives: the patricians'

womenfolk, their children and their horses?'

The storyteller; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: The imam wrote him a letter in which, after the *Basmala* ⁷² ' he said, 'With regard to the patricians. their womenfolk and their children and their horses, which you have taken as booty: take out the /7/?/?and divide the rest among the *mujahidun*, keeping the wife of the patrician 'Addalu as your concubine. Of the patricians whom you captured, keep with you those who become Muslims; kill anyone who refuses. Execute the apostate Naqdiya by- hanging him at the gate of the city of Zallah. As for Karej, and Azaj Zakirah the one-handed, and Giyorgis and the son of Dahragot - send them to me, and also four horses. As for 'Abd an-Nasr, and the ruler of Hadya and Garad Saddlq lord of Sarkah - give them their share of the horses which they took as booty, and the womenfolk of the patricians, and send them on their way back to their countries. Send to Simu a sword whose hilt is made of red gold weighing twenty ounces for the way he acted towards the Muslims, and for not betraying them.'

["Addoll divides the booty, and hangs Naqdiya - June/July 1532]

The messenger set off and reached the wazir 'Addoli in Bali. He presented the letter to him. After he had understood its contents, he summoned Naqdiya, and hanged him, as the imam had commanded, at the gate of Zallah. Then he took out the *fifth*, and divided the horses, and the patricians' womenfolk, among the Muslim soldiers; the wife of the patrician 'Addalu he took for himself, making her his concubine.

Then he sent the imam the captives whom the imam had mentioned to him, and the horses which the imam had told him to send, with his slave. The slave set out and reached the imam who was in Joraji which was in the land of Dawaro, where he was to stay until autumn, and the rainy season, had ended. He presented him with the horses, the captives, the mules, gold, and the treasure of Wasan Sagad which had been in Bali and which they had plundered. He gave all of this to the imam, including silks, brocades and valuables. The imam ordered the captives to be beheaded.

The Muslims intervened on behalf of Karej the apostate, saying 'He grew up in your home, when he was little. He is sorry. Forgive him his unfaithfulness,' So the imam forgave him and attached him to his troop of soldiers.

The storyteller; may God have mcrcy upon him, says; All of the people of Bali, young and old, became Muslims at the hand of the wazir 'Addoli, may God have mcrcy upon him. As for 'Abd an-Nasr, and the lord of Hadya, and Garad Saddiq, lord of Sarkah - each one of them set out for the respective country over which the

imam had placed him as governor.

[Eslam Dahar's ruse fails]

The storyteller of the *Futuh ai-Habasa* says: The battle of Bali took place on a Friday of Zu'l-hijjah, the day of the Great Pilgrimage⁷⁰⁰ in the last

of the months of the year nine-hundred-and-thirty eight,⁷²⁰ from the pilgrimage of the Prophet.⁷² upon whom be the most gracious blessings and

peace.

The storyteller, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: When the imam had consolidated his position in Dawaro, he sent the wazir

t * ■ 7

Mujahid to the land of Waj. He and his army set off.

He likewise sent off Farasaham Dm to the country' of the Maya which he had conquered; the rest of its people were there. So he and his army set out and reached the land of the Maya. Its inhabitants welcomed him, and he settled down there.

The wazir Mujahid, meanwhile, had entered the land of Waj. Half the inhabitants accepted him,^{72y} while the other half supported the patricians of Waj. Their principal patrician was Eslam Dahar, son-in-law of the aforementioned⁰¹¹ king Eskender. They had built fortifications in the mountains; there were thirty patricians among them. The wazir Mujahid came against them to fight them.

When the patrician saw the Muslims heading in his direction he cried out to his companions, 'Now, let us set aside our horses, dismount, and fight the Muslims on foot. This place is not suitable for the cavalry. The Muslims are moving against us'. He grasped his sword and his shield, and all the patricians and their soldiers did as he did. They left their horses on the mountain. At that moment, the wazir Mujahid charged with his foot-soldiers [f'87] in front of the cavalry, and they headed towards the mountain. The Muslim infantry fought the infantry of the idol-worshippers; all of them on foot. Then the Muslim cavalry came up from behind the infantry but they could not find a path that they could take up to the mountain. The idol-worshippers prevented them from climbing the mountain.

At that time, one of the Muslim cavalry named Ura'i Abun al-Qaudah, along with four other knights, went stealthily around the side of the mountain, and found a way up it. When he saw it, he climbed up it, and with him climbed his

companions, the four knights mentioned above.

The idol-worshippers knew^r nothing about them until they cried out against them from above them. When they heard the shouts, they fled and the Muslims pursued them. The companions of the wazir Mujahid, who w[^]ere at the foot of the mountain killed them, and took the patrician Eslam Dahar captive, and then they killed him. They killed the patricians, and the forces of the idol-worshippers who were with the patricians. Not one of them escaped.

Of Eslam Dahar's army of thirty patricians, none escaped save one patrician. They captured all their horses, "and killed them. Of the soldiers carrying shields some were killed, and some others managed to escape. Not one of the Muslims w^fas killed. God conquered the country - its plains and its mountains - and all its inhabitants submitted.

Then the wazir Mujahid sent the imam the good news of the victory, the triumph, the conquest, and the killing of the patrician. His messenger reached the imam w^ho was in Gurage; and he praised the Most High God.

[‘Abd an-Nasr defeats the patrician Aiker]

The storyteller, may God have mcrcy upon him, says: After ‘Abd an-Nasr had set out and arrived in the land of Hadya, new^s reached him that king Wanag Sagad had sent a patrician named Aiker, with his army, and he had entered the territory of the land of Ganz. ‘Abd an-Nasr asked, ‘How'many days have elapsed since his arrival until now?’ ‘A month,’ they replied. So ‘Abd an-

Nasr set off from Hadya for the territory of Ganz, travelling night and day for five days. On the sixth day he caught the patrician unawares as dawn broke. The patrician mounted his horse and fled alone. The remainder of his soldiers and his horses fell into the clutches of ‘Abd an-Nasr who proposed to them that they become Muslims; and all of them did so. Their conversion was genuine and they took part with him in the periodic battles for Abyssinia. He stayed on in Ganz and its people submitted^o and then he sent a messenger with the good news of the victory, the triumph and the conquest of the region. He reached the imam who was in Dawaro, and informed him how things were, and what had occurred in the battles. The imam praised the Most High God, and spoke in the most laudatory terms of Him.

[Mujahid conquers Warabba]

The storyteller\ may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: The imam then sent to Ya'qlm who w[^]as with the wazir Mujahid and said to him, ‘You and

your soldiers march to the region of Warabba, and fight its inhabitants until God conquers it by your hand'. The letter reached him when he was in Waj and when he understood its contents he immediately organised supplies for thirty knights. So he set off heading for Warabba and entered it. All of the inhabitants of Warabba gathered around. There were some people from the Sudan⁷³ in the vicinity, and also with them were some Arabs, some riff-raff ⁷³⁴ and some foreign travellers, who gave him gifts, and made him

7«

welcome. Nearby them was a patrician called Aklil * who was an arrogant *Satan* Sonic of the infidels went to him and said, 'We have appointed you our chieftain; fight with us for our country'. He listened to what they had to say, and was delighted because the king had never before given him any responsibility. He lived in the territory of Warabba, but had never before had any authority. It was the inhabitants of Warabba who were idol-worshippers, who put him in authority over them so that he would fight Ya'qim. They beguiled him with their words, and he set off in the direction of the Muslims to engage them in battle,

Ya'qim. all the while, knew nothing about him. While they were in their tents, suddenly the idol-worshippers' cavalry was attacking them from a distance, A scream went up from the camp, 'A surprise attack on us!' and they made a dash for their horses, mounted them, armed themselves and hurried to the tent of their commander, Ya'qim, who mounted his horse. They stood in battle array before his tent. The idol-worshippers advanced, and the Muslims, as one man, made a charge against them, and they fought one another there. Hardly an hour had passed before the idol-worshippers turned tail with the Muslims pursuing them, killing them. They found their freedom in death. That day, a thousand or more of the idol-worshippers' foot-soldiers were killed. The patrician whom the people of Warabba had seduced, managed to save only himself.

[The people of Warabba pay the poll-tax, and side with Mujahid]

Ya'qim sent a messenger to the imam, bearing the good news of the victory, the triumph and the conquest. In the letter he said, 'All the people of Warabba have requested. "Allow us to pay the poll-tax," so, now, what shall we do? We await your reply'. After the messenger had reached the imam, and he had understood its contents he said to the messenger, 'Go back to Ya'qim and say to him, 'Let them pay you the poll-tax'. So the messenger returned to Ya'qim who was in Warabba, and repeated to him all that the imam had said concerning the poll-tax. So he ordered them to bring the following poll-tax: fifteen thousand loads^{7~h} of wheat, one-thousand ounces of gold, and one- thousand *kadujah* ¹⁷ of honey and clarified butter - every year. They agreed to this, and Ya'qim remained in their country'.

The storyteller; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: News of the conquest of Warabba reached the king of Abyssinia who was in Angot. He grieved at its being taken and then said to a patrician named Ras Baniyat, 'You set out for Warabba and drive the Muslims from it - for if Warabba is taken from us, we lose our glory and our crown, since it is our country's garden of paradise'. The patrician set off with his army and arrived at its frontier. The inhabitants of the country went to Ya'qim and informed him of the arrival of the army of the idol-worshippers, and of their patrician. Ya'qim asked them, 'So now, what are you suggesting?' 'You,' they said to him, 'are dearer to us than the idol-worshippers are. We will have no peace of mind apart from with you. Our people' are oppressive, taking our wealth from us by force, over and above what we freely give them. Let us fight alongside you, for we are stauncher enemies of them than you are. Be in no doubt about us.'

While all this was happening, a messenger from the patrician reached the people of the country. He said [f'88] to them 'I have come for your sake, to drive the Muslims from your country'. The king has sent me to fight on your behalf. But they heaped insults upon him, and cursed him. So the patrician's messenger returned to him and informed him what the people of the country had said. He was dismayed at the words of the inhabitants of the country and at their good-will towards the Muslims. While the patrician was in this frame of mind. Ya'qim set out from his base and headed in his direction. When news of this reached him, the patrician set off for another place, leaving his tents just as they were. Ya'qim arrived at his camp, seized his tents and marched behind him, in pursuit, for two days, without catching up with him. Then he returned to the country and remained in his camp. The patrician had thought that the people of Warabba would help him in his fight against the Muslims; but they would not.

The storyteller; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: After all the provinces,, the lands of Dawaro, Bali, Hadya, Ganz, Waj, Warabba, Fatagar and Ifat - along with their outlying regions - had been conquered, and all that remained unconquered was a section equivalent to a quarter or a third of Abyssinia. The imam called an assembly of his emirs, his chieftains and all the Muslims.

[The imam announces his intention of staying in Abyssinia]

He said to them, 'Praised be God who has conquered the whole of the land of Abyssinia. Now let us send to the land of Sa^kd ad-Din, to bring up our wives and our children. Let us make our homes in Abyssinia. It is no longer possible for us to go back down to our country, or to leave this one. What do you say; what is your opinion?' 'It is up to you.' they said, 'to command. Whatever you order us to do, we

will obey you.' So, thereupon he sent a messenger with a letter to the country of Sa'd ad-Din, to the sultan 'Umar Din, and to his brother, ^{7j9} Muhammad bin Ibrahim. He said in the course of his letter, after the usual salutations, 'After our messenger reaches you with this letter, send our wives and children to us\ Each of them, whether emir or lowly soldier, wrote to his wife that she should go up, accompanying the wife of the imam. Then he sent the letter, along with priceless Abyssinian artifacts as gifts, to the sultan. He also sent gifts to all the chieftains. Likewise, each one of the *mujahidun* sent his wife some gold to help cover the cost of the journey, and for whoever stayed behind:⁷⁴⁰ some of them sent thirty ounces, others twenty and others again, ten. Each according to his ability' to provide. They also sent large numbers of mules for them to ride, and to carry their belongings.

The messenger set off, and reached the country of Sa'd ad-Din, and presented the gifts and the letter to the sultan 'Umar Din, who permitted the wives of the *mujahidun* to go up to their husbands. The imam's wife, whose name was Ba'tiya Del Wanbara, the daughter of Garad Mahfuz, made preparations for the journey up, as did some of the wives of the *mujahidun*. Others of them refused.

After that, the wives of the *mujahidun* arrived in the land of Ayfars, and met face to face with the imam. Then the imam and his companions made a beeline for the land of Tegre, and he ordered his dispersed emirs to assemble before him.

The wazir 'Addoll who was in Bali advanced with his army to the imam who had set off from Ayfars and had pitched camp in Waj, in a village known as Wiz Gabaya. He left the emir Husain behind in Dawaro. and Garad Saddiq in Sarkah. Also in Dawaro was Garad Jusu. The wazir 'Addoli's brother, whose name was 'Umar, was in Bali,

[Ambush at Wallamo]

The wazir Mujahid was stationed in Waj, but could not be there the day the imam arrived, since before the imam's arrival he had set off for a far- off locality known as Suf Gamo ⁴¹ and Bahr Gamo. ⁴⁻ The king of Abyssinia only ruled there by agreement, for they were barbarians and had neither religion nor a book. Mujahid entered their country, and put them to death, and afterwards they submitted under an agreement that involved their paying the poll-tax. 'Send your representative,' they said, 'and we will pay him our poll-tax'. So he sent his equerry Salih who was a courageous hero, with them. He detached to him ten knights and around one-hundred foot-soldiers. Amongst their number was a sharif of the Husaini tribe. His name was 'Ali.

They travelled for one whole day. accompanied by some of the people of the

country who led them into a locality whose earth was clayey and like quicksand. Its name was Wallamo.⁴⁴ They said to them, "Remain here while we gather together the poll-tax for you¹. But what they said was a ruse.

Salih and his companions waited there for them to assemble the tax for them. But, instead, all of the people of the country assembled, and advanced in the direction of the Muslims, and attacked them. The Muslims tried to mount their horses, but were unable to do so. They could neither escape nor charge, for their horses' legs got stuck in the soft clay of the terrain where they were. They killed all of the Muslims, including the sharif and Salih: they killed both of them; may the Most High God have mercy on them both.

[Stubbornness of Mujahid and its consequences]

When the wazir Mujahid heard the news of the killing of his companions, he became exceedingly angry and said, 'I will not budge from here until I have revenged my companions'. All the Muslims who were with him said to him, 'This terrain is unsuitable for cavalry battles. There is no point in besieging it, because it has meagre supplies of food. Rather, let us return to our country before they seize the gate that we left behind us. It is a very confined space. If the idol-worshippers get to it before us, we will have no way of escaping through it; and they will deal with us as they dealt with Salih'.⁷⁴⁵

The wazir Mujahid refused to follow their advice, and remained there. He stayed there a month, and the local people fortified themselves in a mountain there. The scarcity of food weighed heavily upon the Muslims, and they suffered grievously. Finally the wazir Mujahid wanted to return the way they had come, so he sent some knights to reconnoitre the gate for him. They found that the idol-worshippers had preceded them to the gate, so they returned and informed him. The Muslims were worn out, and at their wits end. If they remained where they were, they would have no strength as they were starving: their provisions were exhausted; and yet they had no other route that they could take.

'Abd an-Nasr was in Ganz when he heard the news that the people of the country had trapped the wazir Mujahid. 'Abd an-Nasr travelled from Ganz night and day, and after eight days arrived at the gate, coming up behind the idol-worshippers from the Ganz road, and killing those who were there. Then he stayed at the gate, and sent a messenger to the wazir Mujahid telling him to go to him. The Muslims rejoiced, and set off, and met up with him, and thanked them^{74f} for what they had done.

*The storyteller says:*⁷⁴ Since news of the w'azir Mujahid, and of 'Abd an-Nasr,

was slow^r in reaching him, the imam immediately sent for the emir Sama'un and Absama Nur and said to them, 'Travel to the emir Mujahid and 'Abd an-Nasr wherever they may be, and come back to me with them.

So they set out for Ganz with their forces and met up with the two of them there, as they were heading in the direction of the imam. Together with them they went back and reached the imam who was in Wiz Gabaya. He asked them 'Where were you? [f^r89] What kept you?' So they told him what had happened, and what 'Abd an-Nasr had done, and the imam, and the Muslims thanked him.

['Addoli is sent to conquer Damot]

After this, the imam set off and entered the land of Geberge. The emir Abu Bakr came from Fatagar to the imam; and Ya'qim came from the land of Warabba. The Muslim forces assembled in Geberge. Then the imam despatched the wazir 'Addoli against Damot, saying to him, 'Conquer the land of Damot and fight its people'. So off he went, with his celebrated army. Accompanying him was Saidi Muhammad whom the imam had appointed governor over it. 'Abd an-Nasr and his army set off with them.

They travelled and reached the land of Damot. Stationed there with his army was one of the king's patricians, by name Dahragot. When he heard how the Muslims were heading for the land of Damot, he was afraid of them, and fled to Gafat, one of the regions of Damot.

The people of Gafat are desert nomads with no knowledge of the Book,^{4 s} and no religion. They warned the patrician, 'Don't enter our country.' but he ignored them, and entered their country by force/⁴ So they joined forces against him, to fight him.

[Dahragot's force suffers the fate of Salih]

The land they held against him was swampy and clayey, and the four hooves of any horse that entered it would sink into it. The patrician advanced with his army, to do battle with them. There were some trees there, amongst which they hid themselves until the patrician entered the swampy ground. He knew nothing of them until they attacked him. Now all the people of Gafat went on foot; they had no experience of horse riding. Fighting in the swampy ground with the patrician were two-hundred knights, The horses could not move, and their four hooves were no sooner stuck in the clay than the people of Gafat slaughtered them^{7"0} and their riders - dragging them down [into the mud].

The patrician fled, and only a few of his cavalry were saved. A great number of his soldiers were killed, amongst whom were three of the patrician's sons. Fifteen of the patricians of Damot, inferior to the patrician Dahragot, were killed.

The storyteller; may God have mercy upon him, says: The wazir 'Addoli meanwhile was in Damot, and had split up the emirs who set about capturing prisoners or taking booty.

[Treachery of the slave of Damot who betrays Balaw Sagad]

When the Muslims entered the land of Damot another of its patricians - his name was Balaw Sagad, a brother of the patrician Eslamu who had been killed at the battle of Zari - fled the region, along with thirty knights.

He crossed the river Bahr Zibi ⁰¹ and asked a slave from Damot, in a region called Enarya, for help in delivering him from the Muslims. The slave received him hospitably, bade him welcome, and vacated a place where he and his companions could stay. So the patrician and his companions dismounted from their horses and made camp.

Then the slave took them unawares; they attacked the patrician, binding his hands behind him; and they took their horses. The slave then sent a messenger to the wazir 'Addoli, saying. 'I have captured the patrician, and have tied all of them up. Send some of your companions to me, so that I may come to you'.

Immediately the slave's messenger reached him, 'Addoli sent to him, and he straightaway sent the poll-tax and gifts, with the captives and their horses, and a great quantity of gold, for his region is a gold mine. They went off to the wazir 'Addoli, and upon reaching him handed over the patrician and his thirty companions all tied up like merchandise, and their horses. They also handed over the poll-tax which was one-thousand ounces of gold, to say nothing of the gifts. The wazir 'Addoli greeted him warmly, gave him a robe of honour, and agreed to the terms of the poll-tax. Then the slave went back to his own region.

News of Gafat then reached 'Addoli. and of what they had done to the patrician Dahragot. He sent off to them some of the people of Gafat who were among his companions and who had converted to Islam. These set off and readied their idolatrous compatriots, calling upon them to accompany them to the wazir 'Addoli.

They concurred, and reached the wazir 'Addoli bringing the horses that they had captured from the patrician Dahragot, along with their trappings and their smallish copper and wooden drums. The wazir 'Addoli's joy knew no bounds. He

clad their leaders in robes of honour, and they returned to their country.

Then he sent Farasaham Din off to carry the good news to the imam, informing him 'Gafat has put to flight the patrician Dahragot, lord of Damot. He has fled from it. Having entered the land of Gafat, they dealt with him as we should have wished¹⁰⁴.

Then he sent the messenger, Farasaham Din, off to the imam who was in the land of Warabba. He handed him the letter, and gave him the news. The imam rejoiced exceedingly and sent the wazir Mujahid to the wazir 'Addoli to get him to come to him, because he wanted to lead a raiding party.⁰⁵

The wazir Mujahid reached 'Addoli who was in a district called Tcqr Waha⁰⁽¹ in the land of Damot. 'Addoli set out straightaway and readied the imam who was camped near Dabra Berhan. He stood the patrician Balaw Sagad and the horses in the presence of the imam who commanded that the patrician be beheaded.

[The Muslims decide to attack Tetre]

The storyteller., may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: then the Muslim armies and their emirs assembled in Dabra Berhan. The imam said, 'Thanks be to God, Abyssinia has been conquered. Only Tetre, Bagemder and Gojjam are left: these are the only regions remaining. Shall we march against them, or shall we stay on in this region for a year until we have settled it down? What is your opinion? May God's blessing be upon you'.

Some of them said, 'Let us remain a whole year or even longer in this place now, to set it in order. After that let us go wherever you command us.'

Others of them - including Zaharbui Muhammad and the wazir 'Addoli and 'Abd an-Nasr - said, 'But now we have the military advantage and the necessary forces: let us set off for the land of Tetre.⁷⁵⁷ Let us ferret out the king wherever he is'. The imam approved of the latter's advice and said, 'The counsel that you have offered is wise'.

So he sent for a man called Fcssahl, 'an inhabitant of Ifat who had converted to Islam. He said to him, 'Set out for Ifat, and we will meet up with you in Amajah*.

In the same way he sent for the wazir 'Abbas bin Abun. who was the Bahr Nagas at that time,^{7yJ} saying to him, 'Go on ahead to Gedemge and remain there'.

Likewise he sent for the emir Husain and his army, and detached to him the

army of Fatar. He said to him, 'You march to the land of Manz. So he set off with Ya'qim for Bet Amhara and reached Manz without encountering any hostile forces.

The imam then set out, bringing up their rear and arriving at Manz where he rendezvoused with the emir Husain.⁷⁽¹⁾

[‘Abbas appeals for help]

Garad ‘Abbas, meantime, had entered Gedemsa and was laying siege to the infidels who were on the mountains with their wives, their valuables, their children, their horses and their armour and weapons. They fought him night and day and their assaults wore him down. Moreover, they were

cunning and cut the road, thus isolating ‘Abbas from the imam, so that the imam received no news of them, because they were between the two Muslim forces.

The imam had marched to Lake [f90] Hayq on the border of Angot, above Wasal. ‘Abbas then sent off a message⁶¹ that contained news of the idol-worshippers: ‘They have cunningly broken off contact between us and you, and thus have disadvantaged us. We have genuinely tried to engage them in battle, but there has been no means of our fighting them. If ⁷⁶“ this letter reaches you, march against them from your side; I meanwhile will go from my side.’

The letter succeeded in reaching the imam, who was at Lake Hayq. When it reached him, the imam questioned the messenger about the idol-worshippers: ‘Upon what mountain have they placed their fortifications?’ The messenger, who had arrived with the letter, replied, ‘They are upon the mountain that the patrician Degalhan had fortified when he was in the land of Gedemsa, at the time that you fought the Hat!’⁷⁶³ in Wasal.’

The imam asked, ‘Who is their paramount patrician?’ He replied, ‘They have around five patricians with their forces, and two other patricians on another mountain who have with them the patrician Degalhan's son whose name is Takla Haymanot’.

The imam said to the messenger, ‘Let us spend the day patiently here: at daybreak we will equip ourselves for war against Angot. The day after tomorrow, if the Most High God is willing, we will set out’.

Then he summoned Farasaham Emir ‘Ali [who was to become] lord of Angot, and ‘Abd an-Nasr, saying to the two of them: ‘Set out for Angot, and the land of

Badcl Nasr, for I have heard that there are cavalry, foot-soldiers and patricians there: march against them and fight them. And may God give you both victory over them, if it be God's will.'

[April 8, 1533:

The imam seeks advice, and decides on a pincer movement]

The imam took counsel with the emirs. He asked, 'What do you advise about this patrician who has fortified himself on the mountain?' The wazir 'Addoli said, ⁴I will march against him and fight him*. The imam replied, 'On the contrary, you are to remain in the encampment'.

Then the emir Husain said, 'I will march against them and fight them, but they will lack the advantage and the physical strength only if you march against them yourself. The imam replied, 'I know this mountain; and even if all of you set out, you will only prevail if I march out tomorrow'. You, 'Addoli, remain here'.

The imam set out on the fourteenth day of the celebrated month of Ramadan in the nine-hundred-and-thirty-ninth year ^M of the Hijra of the Prophet: may the choicest blessings and peace be upon its originator.

He maintained a fast pace, and halted below Wasal, where he pitched camp. Then he sent Admus off with fifteen knights to 'Abbas, to whom he said, 'You can see that we have arrived here by the road that is facing them; you now^r take the road that is behind them'. So Admus set out.

The imam summoned the emir Husain, saying to him: 'Climb up to Bet Amhara, and station yourself on the upper road and be above them until we come at them from below. May God give us the victory. When they have been put to flight, they will find no route by means of which they may escape'. The emir Husain set out. The imam also took to the road. At nightfall he pitched camp at a place called Basclo-Azaf ^o in the district of Gujmah. ^{76(S)}

When morning came, the imam said to the soldiers, 'Break your fast today' and they broke it and marched towards the mountain to the idol-worshippers. They arrived there in the forenoon. When the idol-worshippers saw the imam's army, the patrician descended the mountain, and lined up his soldiers at the gate to the mountain. The mountain had two gates.

At that moment the imam divided his forces into two parts. One part he entrusted to the emir Sama'un, saying to him, 'Hold the gate that is on the left side, and fight them'. The imam then set out for the gate that was on the right side. The

infantry marched ahead of the cavalry, and they fought there and God routed all of the idol-worshippers at the two gates, within a single hour. Some of the Muslim infantry climbed the mountain.

The idol-worshippers, for their part, climbed up as far as the mountain peak, planning to go down by the other side, but they ran into the emir Husain who had preceded them along the other route, and forestalled them. When they saw the emir Husain there, they backtracked, fleeing to the gate where the imam was. The imam and his forces captured them: they numbered four- thousand men - seasoned infantrymen - along with their patrician who was the son of Degalhan.

Islam was explained to them and they became Muslims and their patrician converted to Islam along with them, and they remained with the imam. However the son of Degalhan escaped after having spent four months in Qeda in the district of Zubil.⁷¹

[Personal aside by the author]

The storyteller,; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: this incident occurred while we were with a caravan which was travelling from the land of Sa'd ad-Din. as we tried to find the encampment of the imam. The lord of Damot, Said! Muhammad, treated us hospitably. At this time he was in Ifat, in the region of Bahyah. After Ifat we were *en route* while the rest of the skirmishes were taking place, until we arrived within a *parasang*⁶⁶ of the mountain without having heard anything of the imam. We pitched our camp in the middle of the day in Ramadan.^{0 J} We noticed that the whole of the top of the mountain seemed to be ablaze. Homes were burning and we said, "This fire is the idol-worshippers' doing; without doubt we cannot avoid a fight".

Around the time of the afternoon prayer some people came to us and said, 'Don't be afraid: this is the imam's conflagration. He has been victorious over the idol-worshippers and has climbed the mountain'. But, we said to them, if the imam be here, why didn't Saidi Muhammad tell us about this, in Ifat?' So we sent two men from the caravan up to the mountain, saying to them both, 'Find out who it was that lighted that fire'.

They set off without delay. Now some of the idol-worshippers, in their disorderly flight, had hidden themselves in forests on the mountain side, and in ravines running from the valleys, until darkness could give them cover. These attacked the two of them from the midst of the trees; and they turned tail and fled back to us. As a result we thought that the fire was the work of the idol-worshippers, and we passed the night with our anus at the ready: each one of us

clutching his sword and his weapons.

When day broke, and the morning star shone and sparkled we set off in the direction of the imam. ¹⁰ Then, all of a sudden, there they were full of happiness and rejoicing at the victory. We kissed his hand and he bade us welcome, treated us with honour and sought news of the country from us.

[The Muslims besicgc Amba Gesen]

The imam went back to the land of Hayq with the booty; as did the emirs whom he had spread around on the mountain. He set out and arrived at the encampment and rejoined the wazir 'Addoli. All the Muslims rejoiced in the imam's victory.

Then he struck camp, transferring it to the Amba of which we spoke earlier in connection with Urai 'Utman: when Garad Ahmusa beseiged it, and Urai 'Utman was killed. This was the same Amba that had the kings' children on its summit. Whatever gold or silk or other things of which they had need would be taken up to it. Every time a child was born to them, it would be taken to the summit of this mountain; and would never be brought down except upon the death of a king. Then they would bring one of them down and invest him with the kingly office. There was no other way to get up this mountain except by means of ladders.

The imam besicgcd the Amba and the forts.⁷¹ For two months they

fought over them. The king of Abyssinia had commanded all the forces of Tegra, with their cavalry, their most valiant warriors and their patricians to march against the imam [f⁹¹] and to fight him from below the [lower] fort. ⁷² The imam fought for two months, until finally they took the [first] fort. Boulders and rocks rained down like hailstones upon the Muslims while they were advancing, until they captured it.

In disarray the idol-Avorshippers then scrambled up to the second fort. The Muslims had captured only the first. Among the Tegra patricians, all of whom fled, were the Azmac 'Umar and Tasfa Iyasus who was Azmac of Bahr Amba. Azmac 'Umar was poked in the eye by a branch as he was fleeing, and his eye was plucked out: may God curse him.

Tasfa Iyasus, for his part, was stabbed in the stomach by a branch while he was running away, and died. May God not have mercy upon him.

[The imam buys cannon from Zayla']

The imam spent the night above the fort. Now the Christians ⁷³ and the people of

Tegre possessed cannon and muskets that two Arabs would tire at the Muslims for them.⁴ One of them was called Hasan al-Basri. and the other was 'Abd Asfar Turkl.⁵ They⁶ used to recite the Qur'an, but then they apostatised, and became Christians. May God curse them. They were part of the army. The next day the Christians descended from the second fort, pursued by the imam from dawn until dusk.

The imam had sent Warajar Abun to Zayla* to buy cannon for him so that he could take this fort. He bought a large bronze cannon, and two little ones made of iron and carried them by camel as far as the city of Gendebclo. The imam's nephew 'Abbas, whom the imam had left in the land of Gedem. met up with him [there!].

'Abbas then had them carried on men's backs, because the camels could not traverse the path, and accompanied by the army of Gedem reached the imam who was besieging the fort, with them. Accompanying the cannon were two skilled handlers - Indians - to whom the imam paid a hundred ounces of gold. He said to them, 'Fire on those who are milling around, blocking our path, so that our infantry can get past them, and we can get above them, by means of ladders'. The imam had already prepared the ladders.

Then he assembled the army, and the infantry who were well skilled in mountain fighting and gave them gold bracelets. He put his cousin, Zaharbui Muhammad, in charge of them. Garad Sama'un commanded the remainder.

The imam said to them, 'Go down and attack the fort and fight them'. Now the fort had two gates. Half the army was with Zaharbui Muhammad, and the other half was with Garad Sama'un. The imam situated himself above, in a spacious place that was favourable to cavalry manoeuvring, to prevent reinforcements coming from the king of Abyssinia to the defenders of the fort.

This was the fort that the imam had, earlier on, commanded Ura'i 'Utman to capture,⁸ but the latter neglected to put any of his companions in this spacious place to protect his back when the enemy attacked him while he was fighting the defenders of the citadel. The Christian army had advanced through this place with their cavalry and infantry, and had killed him. May the Most High God have mercy upon him. Amen. The imam, on the other hand, was astute and knowledgeable in matters of war - that was why he stationed himself in this place.

[Ahmad raises the siege of the Amba]

The storyteller, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: Zaharbui Muhammad and his companions went down to the fort, and fought. The Christians

directed their cannon against the Muslims: it was Hasan al- Basri who fired them. He was captured in the war of Gojjam and the imam forgave him as we will describe in the last section.

The fighting went on from morning until the time of the midday prayer. ^{MI} Large rocks and stones were hurled down from the fort upon the Muslims, but none of the Muslims was hit by anything. Then the imam came down and said, 'Fighting on this mountain serves no useful purpose*. Then he gave orders for a withdrawal from the fort; and they withdrew.

After they arrived at their encampment, they set off and entered Angot. He attached a pennant to a spear for the emir Sama'un, to whom he entrusted it. He also detached to him sixty knights from the cavalry wearing coats of mail, and said to him, 'Set off for GcdemgeTM for I have appointed

782

—
you its governor¹. The imam then set out after him, ~ and entered Qeda, a region on the border with Tegra. The son of the patrician Degalhan, whom the imam had captured in the mountain, had fled here.

The storyteller the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: then the imam made preparations for proceeding towards Tegra. He left his

—

•783

encampment, and supplies in the region of Qeda, with some of the soldiers and the wazir 'Addoli, and set off for Tegra.

[The imam sacks the church called Lalibala]

After he had heard that the idol-worshippers had assembled near a church called Latibala, ⁸⁴ the imam set out into the mountains, by a difficult route, to attack them. Rain fell on them from above. They marched by night, and still he forced their march. Some of their number died from the piercing cold before he arrived at the church. ‘

He found its monks there, milling around and willing to die for its sake. The imam gazed at the church, He had never seen its like. It was carved out of the mountain. Its pillars were likewise cut from the mountain. The only things made of timber in the church were their statues and their

787

sarcophagi. It had a large water cistern carved out of the mountainside. The imam

had the monks⁷⁸⁸ grouped together and then ordered firewood to be strewn inside [the church]. He had it set alight, and when the heat intensified he said to them, 'One of you shall enter it; and one of us,' to find out what they would do; to put them to the test. Their chief said, 'I shall enter willingly'. Thereupon one of the women rose up, she was a nun, and said, "This is he who taught me the Gospel. Shall he die while I am watching him?*" So she entered the fire and threw herself down in it. The imam said, " Put I her out'. So they pulled her out. Part of her face had been burned.

The storyteller,; may God have mercy upon him, says: Then the imam set fire to their [wooden] sarcophagi and smashed to pieces their stone statues and took whatever golden patens or silken furnishings he found in it.

[The king's niecc is taken]

The Muslim foot-soldiers set off with their commander Samsu on a journey of two days: on a reconnaissance mission. They arrived at the river Harar which the idol-worshippers had just crossed, leaving their personal belongings, their heavy baggage and their supplies as well as the daughter of the sister of the king of Abyssinia, on the river bank. The Muslims confiscated the heavy baggage and the daughter of the king's sister and reUimcd to the imam who made the girl his concubine and she bore him a child.

The imam then turned back in the direction of his encampment, after appointing Samsu commander of the vanguard. He set off two days ahead of

the imam and pitched his camp. While they were making camp the idol-worshippers, who were on foot, fell upon them without warning. They had archers with them and some warriors. They came with rope, with which to tie up the Muslims; but God tied them up with their own rope. Samsu engaged them in battle, killing three-thousand of their infantry. The rest took to their heels. Some of the idol-worshippers were tied up with their own ropes and when the imam arrived on the fourth day he had the prisoners beheaded. Then they set off, and arrived at the encampment that was in the district of Qeda.

[‘Addoli is tricked into leaving the encampment]

The storyteller,; may God have mercy upon him, says: The wazir 'Addoli had heard that the army of the idol-worshippers had assembled in great numbers and were *en route* to attack Garad Sama'un whom the imam had left in the region of Gedem. So 'Addoli set off to assist him, and abandoned the encampment, vacating it. Some of the soldiers said, 'Don't leave the camp undefended.' [f92] so he left a small party behind and then departed. ^{1)1'}

The emir Abu Bakr and Absama Nur then returned to the camp with their two armies. 'Addoli meanwhile set off for SamaTm whom he reached. As it turned out there was no need for him to light because what he had been told was untrue. So the wazir 'Addoli returned to the encampment, only to find that the imam was there in the camp, in the mountains of Mahquah.

The storyteller may God have mercy on him, says: News that the Muslims were heading for the land of Tegré reached the king Wanag Sagad. He summoned the patrician Degalhan who presented himself. He detached to him the armies of Tegré and said to him, 'Hold the road of Mahquah, Don't allow a single Muslim to get past you into Tegré. For nothing remains of

Abyssinia but Tegré and Bagmdcr. If the Muslims penetrate it we will have no sanctuary left for us to go to'.

[Zaharbui Muhammad is killed]

The patrician set out and occupied the mountains and the route that led into Tegré. The imam also set out from the land of Qeda, and pitched his camp in a spot in the mountains in the region of Mahquah. Each day he would go out into the mountain to spy out the field of battle. One day the imam went out, as was his usual custom, with six mounted knights. His cousin, Zaharbui Muhammad, was one of them.

The idol-worshippers, meanwhile, had hidden themselves among trees at the foot of the mountain and when the imam reached the mountain, checking the route and fighting those who were by the mountain, suddenly those unbelievers who were among the trees attacked them. The cavalry charged them, and they turned tail and ascended the mountain. But Zaharbui Muhammad was struck in the right breast by a poisoned arrow, and died a martyr: may the Most High God have mercy upon him. Amen.

The imam grieved over him with an inconsolable grief. Many were the tributes paid by the people at his tomb. They said, 'See what has happened before we even enter Tegré'. To which the emir Husain replied, 'We have never left our homeland without killing. How many of their provinces have we not ravaged? How many of them have we not killed? This is but one of us who has been touched by the fate that was written down for him. God, may He be praised and exalted, has granted him what he loved and sought: he has died a martyr'.

[Birth of the imam's son Ahmad an-Nagasi]

The next day, the imam set out with his army eager for a *jihad* and to avenge his cousin. He set off for the mountain where the idol-worshippers had lined up their forces against him. Some of the Muslim foot-soldiers managed to break through to them, warding off their stones with their shields. God put the idol-worshippers to flight and the Muslims ascended the mountain against them, pitching their camp at the church of Maryam.¹¹ The wife of the imam,

Ba'tlya the daughter of Mahfuz, gave birth there. They named him Ahmad an-Nagasi/¹² He was the first child [of the imam] born in Tegre and he died in the land of Saraye as shall be mentioned later on.

The imam set out and pitched camp in the district of Qarqara¹³ which is part of the land of Tegre. It is a spacious land, with an abundance of wheat and honey. The Muslims were suffering from famine when they were besieging the mountain, but God relieved their distress in Qarqara.

The imam set up his base there, and sent the wazir Mujahid off to collect supplies in the regions of Sahart¹⁴ and Abargale and in the districts surrounding them. 'Addoli [also] set out and entered Abargale which he completely ravaged, plundering their cattle. Some Muslims came across things made of gold: the first gold they encountered in Tegre.

One of the Muslims, by name Abun Dawah, died a martyr. The infidels blocked his path between two mountains, and killed him. May the most High God have mercy upon him.

[Ahmad routs the forces of the *sums* of Tamben and of Agame]

The wazir 'Addoli and the imam returned to Qarqara. Then the imam, after entrusting the encampment to the wazir 'Addoli, set off for the land of Endarta¹⁵ which he laid low. He killed its leading inhabitants and plundered its wealth and then returned to the encampment. After this he went off to Tamben which he entered. He encountered the *sum* of Tamben who was accompanied by a troop of soldiers, so the Muslim cavalry and infantry mounted a charge against them on the top of the mountain, putting them to flight and killing more than three-thousand of them. Of their cavalry they captured seven horses. All were on foot apart from these cavalry.

The imam heard that the patrician who was *sum* of Agame, whose name was Raqat, had assembled his cavalry and infantry and was holding the road to his country to prevent the Muslims from entering it. The imam and his companions departed from Tamben. They presented a solid mass, like running water.

On the second day out they reached the tomb of Ahmad al-Nagasi ⁴⁶ who lived in the time of the Prophet - may God Bless him and give him peace. The Muslims said, 'Today, let us visit Ahmad, the famous Ashamat al- Nagasi; ^Q tomorrow we will go into battle\ The imam replied, 'Today we are involved in a matter of considerable importance; let us pay the visit tomorrow'.

He then set out against the *sum of* Agame and met up with him. He was holding the mountain that was on the road leading to his country. The Muslim infantry' led the advance against the mountain. Stones and arrows hit the shields of the Muslims like drops of rain, but still they advanced against the idol-worshippers who then took to flight, pursued by the Muslim cavalry.

They arrived at the mountain there, at the foot of which the land fell away into a gorge. The *sum of* Agame, when he found himself being overtaken by the Muslim cavalry, flung himself into the gorge and broke his arm, but managed to escape. They captured eight of his cavalry and the rest were scattered.¹⁰⁵ The imam went back, with the intention of marching

against the city of Aksum.¹¹ It is said of it that it is a most ancient city. No
xfin

one knows who built it. Some say that Alexander the Great' built it. God knows the truth of all this. There were stone columns inside it. eighty cubits

OA |
long and ten cubits wide; freestanding.'

The imam pitched camp in Ara'da and made his base there. Some of the local people who belonged to the tribe of the Balaw, went to him. These dwelt in Tegre, They were Muslims, The people of Tegre,'they said,'have assembled with their wives, their children and their wealth, in this mountain which is close by you. The only way that you will find them is by trickery '.

[The people of Tegre are betrayed: 10,550 are slaughtered]

So the imam spent the night in the encampment; until sunrise. Then he divided his forces into two divisions: 'Abd an-Nasr set off with one division. The imam ordered him to climb the right-hand side of the mountain. The imam himself then set off with his army which was the second division, taking the left-hand side of the mountain. The sun had not risen before the imam reached the mountain. The entire two divisions ascended the mountain, taking their two [different] routes.

On the summit, the idol-worshippers had fortified themselves in their citadels.

The Muslims penetrated their fortifications and the Christians were put to flight, and captured. Then he commanded that they be beheaded. There was no way of their escaping from there. Not a single one managed to slip away. They killed them in the forts, in the valleys and in the gorges. The ground was so thickly covered with their corpses, that it was impossible to walk in that place because of the dead bodies.

It is said that some people who were with them on the mountain top counted the number of idol-worshippers. It transpires that their number, including their patrician, came to ten-thousand five-hundred-and-fifty.⁸⁰ Not one of them survived. The Muslims [f⁹³] plundered their cattle and livestock in quantities that could not be counted or calculated.

The imam then turned back to Amba Sanet^{h b} and sent the treasure on to the encampment where the wazir ¹ Addoli was. It was while the imam was staying in Amba Sanayt that he heard news of the patricians Amha and Azmac Fanu'cl who had assembled in Tamben with the lord of Tamben. So the imam set off against them at the time of the afternoon prayer, marching the whole night. At sun rise they slackened the reins of their horses, trying to outdo one another in the speed with which they arrived at the city of Hasaru. But they never encountered even one idol-worshipper. So they settled down in the town.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: Then news that the Muslims had arrived in the region of Tegre and ravaged it, reached the king of Abyssinia who was in the land of Wagda ^{Mt4} in Bagemder, When the king⁸¹ heard the news he grieved inconsolably. Then he gathered together all of his soldiers, and his patricians and his armies and set off for the city of Aksum. Their number was incalculable.

They removed the great statue from the church of Aksum. It was of white stone, studded with gold. So large was it that the statue could not be taken from the church through its principal gate. Because of its size they were obliged to make a hole in the church's wall] through which they took it out. It took four-hundred men to carry it. They took it to the citadel known as Tabr^{80K} in the land of Sire, where they left it.

The imam was in his camp in the land of Tamben when a man from the tribe of the Balaw from the city of Aksum, came to him. His name was 'Abd al-Wahab. He said, 'Are you aware that the king of Abyssinia has arrived at Aksum?' Then the imam immediately ordered them to strike camp: and they did so,

By the next day they had reached the district of Abba Garima⁰⁹ two

K10

parasangs from Aksum, where they made camp. Some of the local people said to the imam. 'The idol-worshippers here at Abba Garima have barricaded themselves up in three forts, because they have no means of fighting you'. When the imam heard this news, he pitched his camp there, and then set out against them.

The inhabitants of two of the forts yielded to him. and he imposed the poll-tax upon them. The defenders of the third fort refused, so he fought them and God put them to flight and he killed them to the last one of them. On fullbattle-alert the Muslims set off for Aksum. They arrived there without encountering any hostility. So the imam then sent some soldiers off to bring him back some local people. They set out and seized some local people, returning with them to the imam wtio questioned them about the king. 'He was here. Where has he gone to now?' The local people replied, 'He set out six days before you arrived, intending to go to the land of Mazaga/^{1 1} to the

sultan Makattcr\ The imam made camp in Aksum.

[Sultan Makattcr appeals to the *mujahidun* for help]

At the time of the afternoon prayer, a man came from Mazaga, bearing a letter from the sultan Makattcr to the imam. This is what he said to him: 'Hurry up and come to me before the idol-worshippers kill me'. The imam set out the day afterwards. Some monks in the city of Aksum said to him, 'Spend today with us so that we can pay you the poll-tax in gold¹. The imam refused, and set out on a strenuous journey to Mazagar to assist the Muslims. So they set out, but the Muslims had no chance to provide themselves w^rith supplies.

At dusk, he pitched camp in the church of Abba Sanuf el in the land of Sire. This church was a glorious building, embellished with every colour Its monks assembled together and they killed them all inside the church, so that the blood flowed through the doors. There w^fcrc five-hundred of them.

The next day the imam set out on the road for Walah, intending to reach Mazaga *via* the desert and the uninhabited parts. He marched night and day. They had only very meagre provisions with them. En route some of

r

Oil 1

them, driven by appalling hunger, even ate the Indian *tamarind* ' ' which grew luxuriantly beside the road.

[A fatal ease of mistaken identity]

They camped by a river there. While they were making camp some soldiers of the idol-worshippers, from among the people of Salamt, coming as reinforcements for the king, mistook the Muslims for idol-worshippers and went up to them. The imam was sitting down when one of the Muslims said to him, 'Some of the infantry of the idol-worshippers have entered the perimeter of our camp'. When they drew nearer to the camp, they could see that they were Muslims: for they saw their dress which was different from the dress of the Christians. They twisted around to right and left. The imam said to the Muslims, 'Seize them/ as they tried to flee.

The idol-worshippers scattered, striking the mules of the Muslims with their daggers. But the Muslims killed them, to the last man of them.

Then the imam set out, but their mules and horses were exhausted from the strenuous pace of the journey. It was between midday and the time of the afternoon prayer on a hot day. The Muslims wanted to climb up a mountain that was there, but they had no knowledge of the path. So they set off through trees that were intertwined, lost their way, and finally came back to where they started.

The king⁸¹⁴ Makatter, meantime, had seen a dust cloud filling the air and heading in his direction, so he sent off some knights to investigate the dust cloud. They set off in the direction of the dust cloud, and reached the rearguard of the imam's forces, made up of those who were exhausted, and had stopped. They captured some mules and donkeys and returned.

[Ahmad reaches the sultan]

The Muslims, however, had seized one of them, and went with him to the imam who questioned him, 'Who are you?' He replied, 'I am a Muslim; and my companions are Muslims. We came from Mazaga when we saw your dust cloud filling the sky. We thought that you were the king of Abyssinia, so we infiltrated your rearguard to steal the mules from the stragglers of the army'. The imam asked him, 'Where is Mazaga?' He replied, 'It is close by: a journey of two *parasangs*'. Then the imam pitched camp, and said to the man, 'Go to your country. Say to your lord the sultan Makatter, "You know, we are coming to you. Don't be afraid. We have come to you"'. So the man set out.

The idol-worshippers had hemmed the sultan in. They had seized their road from the local people. When they fought the idol-worshippers, the companions of

Makatter were put to flight, and three of the children of Makatter's sister were killed. That day Makatter was ill and unable to fight. His army had fled.

It was while they were in this situation that the imam's messenger reached Makatter and gave him the good news of the imam's arrival. He rejoiced exceedingly, and despite being ill mounted his horse, and put on his armour, and set off in the direction of the imam. With him were fifteen thousand Nubians/¹ and five-hundred foot-soldiers, some of them 'Asaris.⁸¹⁶

— 817

For ten days he feted the imam and his army.

[The king flees along the Gojjam road]

The storyteller.; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: the king of Abyssinia had no idea that the imam had come. Then a monk came to him and flung himself down in front of the king's pavilion. The king questioned him, and asked him, 'What new's?' 'Save yourself,' he replied, 'you know^r, the Muslims have overtaken you in their thousands'. So he sent for some knights and said to them, 'Bring me back new^rs of the Muslims, to verify what this person has said'. They hurried away on the road to Sire and they saw^r the cloud of dust that filled the air. They informed him of this [f°94] and fear gripped him. He set out immediately on the road to Gojjam, and his army with him.

The imam, meanwhile, arrived a day after the departure of the king and pitched camp by a cultivated field of the country of Mazaga. The imam married the daughter of the sultan Makatter. and after having delayed ten days he said, 'I am going to set out after the king, and will never cease pursuing him'.

[The sultan dies. Nafa' succeeds him in the sultanate]

So he set out, and with him was Hasan, the son of sultan Makatter's sister, with twenty stallions; he it was who acted as guide for the imam along the way. They marched along the road to Takzi - a mountain in the land of Mazaga at the foot of w^hich they pitched camp.

Three days after the imam had set off from Mazaga, sultan Makatter died: may the Most High God have mrcry upon him. His sister Ja'wah concealed his death from the soldiers for three days and she sent a messenger to the imam to inform him of Makatter's death.

Her messenger reached the imam who was camped at the foot of mount Takzi, at the time of the midday nap, and informed him of the death of Makatter. The

imam had the kettle-drums beaten, assembled the Muslims and gave them the news. He proclaimed sultan the son of sultan Makatter whose name was Nafa*. He was a minor under the guardianship of his aunt, Makatter's sister, who administered the sultanate during the life of her brother. She was a wise and prudent woman; and a good organiser. The imam said to Hasan, the son of Makatter's sister, 'Return to Mazaga and act *in ioco parentis* for the sultan's children'. He replied. 'Willingly,' and set off for his country.

After Hasan had set out for his country, the imam gave orders to

– gig

depart, and they set off at a forced march and entered the land of Dambya. endowed with plentiful resources: rivers that never run dry; verdant gardens;

and where famine is unknown, A country of pure air and lush soil, it has neither mountains nor forests. A land of plains, its green crops and fruit have no equal in Abyssinia.

The imam pitched camp there and enquired about the king of Abyssinia, Its inhabitants said, 'He has eluded you by eight days. And even if you march after him you'll catch up with him only after two months, in the land of Damot'.

[‘Abd an-Nasr catches up to the king's rearguard]

A man came to ‘Abd an-Nasr and Saidi Muhammad and said to them. ‘You know, the king's treasure is here, quite close by you . So ‘Abd an-Nasr went to the imam and told him. The imam said to him. ‘You set off with your army by night; and I will march after you, either tomorrow, or afterwards'.

‘Abd an-Nasr set off by night, lighting their way with torches made of wax. The night was pitchblack, but God shortened the way for them. The imam followed them on the same day. On the second day the companions of ‘Abd an-Nasr reached the idol-worshippers' rearguard. They saw some of the idol-worshippers' knights who were straggling in the rearguard of the king of Abyssinia.

When the Muslims observed them, they halted and sent off some knights to inform the imam about the idol-worshippers. These reached the imam on the road, as he was intending to pitch camp there because of the extreme exhaustion from the march. When they had informed him, the imam set off at a forced march at the time of the evening prayer. He pitched camp by the church at Enfraz,⁸¹⁹ which he put to the torch. The next morning he set out along the route by which ‘Abd an-

Nasr had outdistanced him. The king of Abyssinia was four days' journey away. For a day and a half the imam marched, until their mounts were exhausted. Then, in the forenoon, some of the Muslims slackened their reins on their horses so as to outstrip the others and gather some news.

[AbOn, brother of the wazir Mujahid, is captured by the Muslims]

Amongst them was 'All Goita who caught up with one of the knights of the idol-worshippers, seized him and made him his prisoner. This was the brother of the wazir Mujahid. His name was Abun. and he had apostatised earlier on. So he took him to the imam who asked him. 'Where were you?' He replied, i was with the king, but I left him yesterday, wanting to join you\ The imam asked him, 'Will we not catch up with him if we march after him now?' 'No,' he replied, 'bccausc lie has covered a great deal of the province'. The imam struck this man, but then forgave him.

His words, however, were a lie, becausc lie was frightened. The Muslims set off, and after an hour what should they sec but some of the king's curtained canopies, and some of his cooking utensils - with some food inside them - that they had discarded. The Muslims remained an hour eating their breakfast, and then set out at midday. What should they find then but some tents that the idol-worshippers had thrown away! However they continued marching, ignoring them. Then they found some boxes of the idol- worshippers, that they did not touch. Rather, they quickened the pace of their march.

['Abd an-Nasr again catches up with the Abyssinian rearguard]

Now, 'Abd an-Nasr was in the vanguard. He marched until mid- afternoon and then sent out some Muslim knights to bring back information to him. These marched until they caught up with the king's rearguard, and then returned to inform 'Abd an-Nasr who, for his pail, sent off messengers and informed the imam. He wanted to pitch camp because of the extreme tiredness that overcame them. It was exhaustion, too, that kept the companions of the imam from catching up to him.

The imam asked the messengers, 'Have you seen the king's rearguard with your own eyes?' 'Our companions,' they replied, 'have seen it. They infiltrated it, and informed us about it\ The imam set off, before he even dismounted from his mule, and marched until sunset. They reached Bahr Gumara,⁸²¹³ a flowing river, and the Muslims dismounted from their mules, mounted their horses and donned their armour, and then took to the road again.

[Taki and Ura'T Ahmad Din deceive the king]

Sonic of the Muslims caught up with the Abyssinian king in the rearguard. With the king were two apostates: one's name was Taki and the other's name was Ura'I Ahmad Din. Taki said to the king, ^L'May I have a spirited horse so that I can fight the Muslims, and charge against them'. This was a ruse of his/^{"1} The king gave him one of his horses that was being led^{^~} whose name was *Zabil*.^{x2j} He charged at the Muslims, and when he got close to them he said, 'I have come turning in repentance to God the Most High'. Ur'ai Ahmad Din charged with him.

The two of them went to the imam who forgave both of them. Then the imam set out until he could see the dust cloud of the people at sunset. He said to the Muslims, 'Speak the language of the Christians when you move amongst them. Don't strike with the sword or the javelin until you are close by the king. God willing you will take him unawares, and capture him. And do your hair like the Bam DuwaV" They set out in this fashion until darkest night fell. And when it was night the Muslims mingled with the wives of the idol-worshippers, and after journeying an hour, mingled with their cavalry' and their infantry, without their knowing anything about them. Even when they struck them and killed them, they did not know that they were Muslims. Sometimes they would cry out, saying in their language. 'O king, stop him' or 'attack him' or sometimes 'O patrician, stop him'. The imam would cry out in their language '*tau tau*,'

■

07*

which means, leave them alone,' 'don't hit them', "

They proceeded in this fashion as long as it was darkest night and the darkness was pitch black, [f95] The Muslims travelled up to the vanguard of the army in search of the king of Abyssinia. It happened that when one of the idol-worshippers grew tired, he would sit down, light his fire and eat his bread. Now the Muslims travelled along without anybody recognizing who was beside him because the darkness was pitch black, and because they spoke only the Christian language.

They were in this situation when, suddenly, flares were lighted and everything that was in their vicinity was illuminated by the flickering and bobbing lights. The Muslims thought that this was the king,^{h2A} so they unsheathed their swords and advanced to the place where the flares were, and charged. The idol-worshippers smothered the lights as the Muslims moved into their position. It was not the king, but one of his sisters.

[The imam bluffs his way out of a dangerous situation]

They set out on their way. When it was the time before daybreak the king went down a narrow road at the head of the river Abbay whose waters flow into the Nile

in Egypt. The idol-worshippers were treading one another underfoot because of the narrowness of the road. The imam who was in their midst was carrying his weapons in his hand, but he could not strike a blow^r against them because the place and the path were so constricted.

Some idol-worshippers grabbed hold of his horse, and when one of them questioned him, he said to them, 'I am patrician so-and-so'. And in the same way his companions said as he said,¹ 'We are so-and-so and so-and-so, and we have come with our soldiers to assist the king'. When they heard this, they cried out and said. 'Light up the flares, for this is patrician so-and-so who has come to join us.' and they lighted their torches, and before the imam could say another word someone of them said in their language *Harbanna tamallas*, ' which means 'Every commander of a force must go back behind him and fight at the king's back'^{1.827}

He had not known that the king of Abyssinia was ahead of him. So the imam retraced his steps and some of the Muslims came to him. He said to them, 'The king has returned behind you', The imam and his companions remained on the road until dawn. Absama Nur then said to the imam, 'I will go on down ahead of us and gather some news'.

So he set out with five knights, crossed the river Abbay, and what should they see but some knights of the idol-worshippers who had given their horses their head as they fled. Absama Nur and his companions set off after them. They managed to catch up to one of the knights whom they captured. He was Anas, an apostate who had apostatised earlier on in the land of Qcda. He had left with the son of the patrician Degalhan. He had been one of the imam's pages, and the imam cut off both of the apostate Anas's hands."

Anas said to Absama Nur, 'You see that knight galloping off? That is the king of Abyssinia'. So Absama Nur took off in the direction of the knight, in hot pursuit. But the Abyssinian king's horse was speedy and a thoroughbred. The only one of his companions whom they succeeded in overtaking was a patrician whose title was 'Aqabe Sa'at, " who was their *qadl* He was also their second patriarch because the idol-worshippers had two patriarchs: one of them was from Egypt, and they paid one-thousand ounces

of gold for him. They called him *Abun* ³⁽¹⁾ The other one was Abyssinian

i

from among their own number. Without him they had no religion. He owned a quarter of the kingdom.⁸ When Absama Nur realised that he was not the king, he

killed him.^{SJJ} God cast his soul into Hell. 'It is an evil place to settle in'.^{s'4}

OK

The storyteller says: The sister of the king of Abyssinia ' was captured. Her name was Amata Dengel.^N The imam remained on in the land of Gojjam for a month.[Tribute by the author to Ahmad bin Ibrahim]

The *Author.*; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: here is a poem about this war:

O son of Abraham, O lion of the fray:

Your Lord has granted you what you sought in its entirety.

You have roamed the country with the cavalry:

You have ruled it from the land of Sa'd ad-Din to Nabila' .

Then you turned around with your anny:

In the midst of Gojjam you pitched your camp groaning with booty.

After you crossed the desert in its entirety:

Dambya, Enfraz and Egala.⁸³⁸

The Hati⁸³⁹ passed the night with his fleeing anny:

You marched behind him from the morning of pursuit.

An exacting march, like running water your might,

Until you infiltrated their lines under cover of night.

Blows against the infidels, severed heads that fall:

Until they wake in the Nile's midst/^{4"} beyond recall.

Muslims on their laden horses:

Know neither sleep nor material resources.

Two days and a night, and a third day:

It comes to: with booty for the taking away.

[Ahmad sends reinforcements to Garad Saddiq]

The storyteller; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: The imam set out from Goj jam with half the army, heading for Tegre and the wazir 'Addoli via the road to Amhara. He crossed the river Abbay fearing that the idol-worshippers whom he had put to flight might have attacked Garad Saddiq whom he had left behind in Dawaro. He sent for Said! Muhammad, for the emir Husain al-Gaturl. lord of Dawaro, and tor Farasaham Din, lord of the Maya, with his army. He said to them, 'Set off for the land of Dawaro and offer assistance to Garad

Saddiq should something unexpected occur'.

The storyteller; may God have mercy upon him, says: the imam then set off and arrived at Lake Hayq. There he met up with the emir SamaTin who remained behind in his country. The imam arrived in Tegre and rendezvoused with the wazir 'Addoli in Aksum. His Muslims were completely exhausted.

[Famine and inflation in Tegre]

The land of Tegre was suffering from inflated prices and famine¹ caused by the scarcity of food. The price of three *asa* 'of food was two *mitqal*^{s4} ' of gold; but it was unprocurable. The local people wore out the

Muslims with their pilfering: they would steal their mules. When they entered the land of Tegre each Muslim had fifty mules; some of them even one- hundred. When they left, each one of them had only one or two mules.

[*The storyteller*] says: most of their fighting in Tegre was over food supplies. Now, before the arrival of the imam, the wazir 'Addoli had sent the wazir 'Abbas to the land of Saraye. The latter who was, at that time, Bahr Nagas, entered Saraye and granted protection to its people.

When the imam arrived with his army from the land of Gojjam he sent for the wazir 'Addoli, saying to him, 'Go with your army to the land of Saraye and help the wazir 'Abbas¹. So he set out with Farasaham 'AIT and his army, and Garad 'Utman bin Juhar, with his army. They were made up of people who were Muslims by birth, or who had embraced the religion of Islam. So they set off.

[Tasfa Le'ul kills Tedros]

Now, in Saraye, there was a patrician, Tasfa [f°96] Le'ul.^{vu} When the wazir 'Abbas moved against him in Saraye, he hid himself in one of its forests. His cousin, whose name was Tedros, was one of the principal patricians in Saraye. He went over to the wazir 'Abbas, and the wazir 'Addoli made him lord of Saraye, subordinate to the wazir 'Abbas who was stationed in Saraye. Tedros set the people's minds at rest.

While all this was going on, Tasfa Le'ul had somehow^r managed to get close to him without his being aware of it. While Tedros was sitting in the camp he took him unawares and they fought: Tedros was killed.[^]

The wazir 'Addoli reached Saraye, and Tasfa Le'ul got to hear of his arrival,

hid himself in a forest there, between the wazir ‘Addoli and the wazir ‘Abbas. Nobody knew he was there. Now, the trees in that place where he drew up his infantry were all intertwined. The path was so narrow that the cavalry could only make their way in single file, until they broke through to more open country.

[The wazir ‘Addoli is ambushed and killed]

When the wazir ‘Addoli arrived at the beginning of the narrow path he said to his soldiers, ‘None of you should lead, for fear of creating a bottleneck; ^{N4}” I will go first’. So the troops halted, and the wazir ‘Addoli took the lead. With him was Kabir Muhammad and Garad Haiju, with the Muslims filing behind them. When they were half-way along the path, without his knowing about them, some infantry attacked him, throwing spears and javelins at him, until they so weakened him by the wounds they inflicted, that

847

848

he collapsed, ' ' may God the Most High have mercy upon him, Amen.

God be praised for two of the Muslims. The name of one of them was Barbari. When the wazir ‘Addoli had been utterly exhausted by the wounds they inflicted, he went up to him and took him, with the last spark of life still in him, on his back, so as to flee with him. ‘Addoli was on his back like a little child. The javelins were falling like rain, and the wazir ‘Addoli said, ‘Take me off your back; I can't breathe. Save yourself. So then he put him down, off his back, while the soldiers halted along the pathway, for there was no way of their reaching him on account of the narrowness of the place.

Then a knight called Kabir Muhammad, who was one of the pages of the wazir ‘Addoli, went ahead, and they killed him. May the Most High God have mercy upon him. Amen.

Another man called Garad Halju then went forward, only to die a martyr. He was one of the people of Bali.

When the Muslims saw that every one who took the lead was killed on account of the narrowness of the path, they turned round and went back to more open country, above the path. There they made camp, under the open sky.

[Ahmad learns of the death of ‘Addoli]

The idol-worshippers cut off the wazir ‘Addoli's head and sent it off to the king of Abyssinia on the following day. Then the idol-worshippers fled. The Muslims took the body of the wazir ‘Addoli and buried it. They also buried his companions

who died as martyrs along with him.

They then went on their way to the wazir "Abbas, with Farasaham 'AIT in command. The latter wrote to the imam informing him that the wazir 'Addoli had been killed and saying to him: "You see, we are on our way to the wazir "Abbas as you ordered us'. When the letter reached the imam on the third day, he was in the country of Abba Garima. When he grasped its contents he hid news of his death until mid-afternoon because the troops were scattered about, with the wazir Mujahid, foraging for food. They arrived back on that day at the time of the afternoon prayer. "Abd an-Nasr also arrived from Wadla^{N44} after having been pursued by the idol-worshippers while he w^ras *en route*.

When they were gathered together, the imam had the kettle drums sounded and then all of the Muslims assembled around him. Most of the army consisted of those who were converts to Islam. Fie commanded the crier to proclaim, 'One of the imam's most loyal servants, the wazir 'Addoli', has died, but someone will take his place'.

The camp was stunned into silence, broken with weeping and wailing on account of the wazir 'Addoli. They were inconsolable in their grief. The wazir "Abbas succeeded him as chief wazir.

After the patrician Tasfa Le'ul had cut off the head of the wazir 'Addoli, he had it sent to the king of Abyssinia. When it reached him he was in the land of Wafla/*¹ Immediately, they beat their large drums, sounded their horns, and beat their kettle-drums*⁰ and their small copper drums. The king called for a platform made of iron and told the patrician Degalhan to go up on the platform and speak.

He went up and flaunted his unbelief, may God curse him. He said. 'O you monks, deacons, patricians and priests, know that ^LAddoII has been killed, along with so-and-so and so-and-so,'and here he named some of the emirs, alleging falsely and deceitfully that they had been killed. 'Fortune/ he said, 'has turned towards us and away from the Muslims', But God disdained this. Then they rejoiced exceedingly, and for eight days they sat beating their big drums, and their little copper drums, flaunting their ornaments, attired in their best clothes, and drinking wine.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: Tasfa Lc'ul who had killed the w^razir 'Addoli, overstepped the bounds of decency, and acted outrageously. He said, 'I killed the wazir 'Addoli, and Tedros who became a Muslim; and I will kill all of those who remain'. He then assembled his army and his soldiers and set off

in the direction of the wazir ‘Abbas.

[The inhabitants of Abba Hallelo lie to the imam]

The imam heard that he was marching towards him, so he set off, and the whole camp with him, halting on the border of Saraye near the church of Abba Hallelo/" Its inhabitants, and those who lived round about it, had

accepted his protection and paid the poll-tax. These came to the imam and told him, ‘The patrician Tasfa Le’ul and his anny has moved against the wazir ‘Abbas. They, and those with him, arranged their troops in battle array on open ground and they fought there. The Muslims were defeated, and not one of them escaped’. What they said was a lie, to stop the imam from delaying in their country.

The imam was instantly overcome by a grief more terrible than his grief over ‘Addoll. So he sent one of the Muslims to the church there, to verify the tidings. They*¹⁴ came to him with a monk. ‘This monk,’ they said, ‘witnessed their battle, and came to the church people to inform them’. So the Muslim went with him to the imam and the imam questioned him. ‘The truth is’, he said, ‘that the Muslims have been defeated,’ and he gave the imam the news.

[‘Umar offers some advice to the imam]

The imam hid this news from all but five of his companions, amongst whom were the emir ‘Umar, lord of Qeda after the conquest, Absama Nur and the wazir Mujahid. The emir [f97] said to the imam, ‘Why are you grieving? For six years we have been in their country killing them, capturing them and stealing from them’.

So the imam was silent and left their country. He placed ‘Abd an-Nasr in the vanguard of the anny and he had not marched very far when he met some Muslim cavalry - among their number was Ahmad Goita and the brother of Tedros whom Tasfa Le’ul killed; his name was Tastawl - from the wazir ‘Abbas, whom the latter had sent to the imam to give him news and to say to him, ‘We are well; and the country is well’. When they and ‘Abd an-Nasr met it was night-time, and they did not recognize one another, and wanted to do battle on the road. But after they spoke in their language they knew who they were. The night was pitch-black. They questioned them, and gave them their hand. ‘The country is well,’ they said. The Muslims passed the night where they were. And when morning came the imam arrived with the whole company, and halted. Then he questioned the people of the church who had lied to him. He asked them, ‘Why did you lie to us?’ ‘We acted wrongly,’ they said, ‘forgive us’. He forgave them.

The storyteller may the Most High God have mercy upon him. says: When the patrician Tasfa Le'ul heard that the imam was making for the land of Saraye to join the wazir ^L Abbas, he assembled his troops from amongst the inhabitants of Saraye armed with bows, lances and shields, and hurriedly marched off against 'Abbas.

In the vanguard of the army of the idol-worshippers was a monk riding a donkey who said to the idol-worshippers. Today you will be victorious if you tight the wazir 'Abbas," beguiling them with his words. The patrician marched ahead with thirteen of his knights, seduced by the words of the monk. His foot-soldiers, who could not be counted, were from the people of Simt. The Muslims had around one-hundred cavalry, and five-hundred armed with shields. The patrician sounded his drums and the Muslims heard them, and came out in front of him and lined up in battle array. The idol- worshippers lined up their troops in the same manner.

When the two armies drew' near to each other, the patrician's sons dismounted from their horses. They were Aron and Balaw Sagad who was younger than Aron. They grasped their shields, and donned their armour and said. 'Each one of us is worth five of their knights'. They advanced, holding their lances aloft and hurled them at the enemy. They were famous for their courage.

The Muslims mounted on their horses stood their ground against their attack, and then the Muslim cavalry charged. Leading the charge was one of the senior emirs, Abu Bakr Qatin. A lance that was hurled at him hit him in the thigh. Then Barbari charged, but they hamstrung*¹⁰ his horse. Then 'Utman bin Juhar charged, plunging into their midst and bursting through their lines, with lances falling on him like rain. After him, Saldl the sharif 'Abd ar-Rahman charged, along with with the people of Dambya, the theologian Hubata, Garad Ahmadus, and Farasaham Satut. Farasaham 'Utman, mounted a charge at their patrician Tasfa Le'ul. A Muslim infantryman struck him a blow on his shoulder and he fell off his horse, dead.^{8''6} When the idol-worshippers saw that they had flung the body of their patrician, killed in battle, onto the ground, they turned tail.

The Muslim cavalry and infantry pursued them into open country where there was neither tree nor rock; only desolate wasteland. They killed them, to the last man. Not one of them escaped. They captured all their horses They killed the monk while he was on his donkey. They killed all the sons of the patrician. May the Most High God not have mcrcy upon them. Amen/'"' 'Abbas avenged the wazir 'Addolf and conquered the country of Saraye which voluntarily offered him obcdicnce. and paid the poll-tax. They cut off the head of the patrician and cut off his sons' heads, and sent them to the imam. The Muslims were overjoyed at their victory and triumph/'"'

[Famine, plague and backsliding afflict the *mujahidun*]

The storyteller; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: the imam gave the land of Saraye to the brother of Tedros, and they were under the wazir ‘Abbas whom he invested as chief wazir in place of ‘Addoli. The patrician ‘Afra he made Bahr Nagas, and he gave the seaport of Dokono to the sharif Nur. The wazir ‘Abbas was above all of them.

The Muslims remained a year in the land of Tegre until their supplies were exhausted. Staying there caused the Muslims grievous harm. Many people died from the plague in the land of Saraye: Ura‘i Abu Bakr died, just as the imam’s son Ahmad al-Nagasi died and was buried next to the wazir ‘Addoli; the widow of the wazir ‘Addoli, Tausi, died; Garad Simu, the son of

Wanag Jan, died. The *sum* of Simt died as a martyr, killed by a javelin while foraging for food. Garad ‘Abd an-Nasr, and his wife Bilqisah also died.

Many of the Muslims, whose wretchedness was foreordained, apostatised: may God preserve us from that. Among these was the brother of Farasaham Sultan, along with a great number of those who had converted to Islam: on account of the weariness that settled on the Muslims. The Muslims witnessed an amazing phenomenon in Tegre: all on account of foraging for food. There was no mule or donkey left for them to use for carrying things: most of them carried their furniture on their backs, and travelled by foot.

[Ahmad elects to leave Tegre for Bagemder]

At this time the imam assembled the Muslims and said to them, "You see what has happened to the Muslims on account of exhaustion and famine: so now, shall we leave this country, not remaining in it, and go to some country other than this one? What is your opinion? Where shall we head for?" They replied, 'It is your prerogative to advise, and your prerogative to command. We will follow you'. So then the imam said, 'Let us go to the land of Bagemder, for it has abundant resources. We will take it as our capital, and dwell in it. We will build mosques in it, and when we mount an expedition against another country we shall leave our belongings there, with our wives and our mules, and march wherever we want to'. They answered, 'Willingly*.

The storyteller; may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: when the imam settled on departing, he appointed rulers: among them were Tasfa wi, whom he appointed lord of Saraye; ‘Afra, as the Bahr Nagas; and Zara Sanay over Hamasen. Then the imam set off for Bagemder. He deprived the sharif Nur of Dokono, and gave it to sultan Ahmad bin Ismail, from Dahlak. The Muslims came

to the imam from every province and the imam set off from Tegre for Bagemder.

In Sire was the patrician whom the imam had appointed to rule it. His name was Dijnah. He obtained protection for his country by paying the poll-tax with horses/⁶ and preserved his province. With him from among the companions of the imam were fifty knights who assisted him in fighting the people of Salamt [f 98] who were idol-worshippers, and in fighting [other] idol-worshippers, and in offering advice to the Muslims.

When he was driven to it, the imam set off with his army in the direction of the mountain in which Yohannes^{W11} had fortified himself. He reached the mountain in the morning, only to find, at sunrise, that there were two gates to it. So he divided his army into two halves. Each of the horses was clad in protective armour, and the companions of the imam also donned two coats of mail in layers. He gave each foot-soldier and shield-bearer a golden bracelet.

The infantry preceded the cavalry into the mountain, and they fought there. The idol-worshippers were on top of the mountain hurling their lances, stones and slingshots.⁸⁶² The Muslims advanced towards them. The Hamaj and the Nubians were with the idol-worshippers. They never stopped fighting from morning until evening and a great number of the Muslims were wounded, for the people of Sire were famous in Abyssinia for throwing the javelin and for their courage. When evening fell, the imam saw how many injuries there were, and ordered the infantry to fall back to their camp, with the army/⁶ close by a village of Bagemder.

When daw'n broke, the brother of Dijnah, whose name was Takla Ab, came with his wife and son to the imam, and embraced Islam. Having given his son to the imam for him to teach him the Qur'an, the patrician fled and went to the king.

[Ahmad spends Ramadan 941 AH (1535 AD) in Mazaga]

The imam then set out, heading for Bagemder and entered Mazaga. He fasted there for the month of Ramadan in the year nine-hundred-and-forty-one ^{Sf>4} The people of Mazaga treated the Muslims hospitably, and the imam celebrated the breaking of the fast there. Then he set off for Bagemder. While he was *en route* he learnt that the idol-worshippers had assembled in the place through which one reaches Bagemder. There were four patricians: Yohannes, and the patrician of Salamt, the patrician of Wagara and the patrician of Bagemder. Senior to all these patricians was the patrician Sa'uh son of Takla Iyasus. These held the road.

The storyteller; may God have mercy upon him, says: When the imam heard this, he split his army into two parts: the first part marched with him; the second part

with the wazir 'Abbas was to march after him. The imam and his army reached the idol-worshippers to find them lined up in battle array at the gate, which was very narrow. The imam ordered the commanders of the infantry to take the lead, ahead of the cavalry'. They did so.^{86>} and they fought from morning until midday without being able to prevail over them.

[Ahmad reconnoitres an alternative route]

Then a Muslim came to the imam. His name was Azmac Taklu. He said, 'I know a narrow road, apart from this road, into the mountain'. When he heard this, the imam chose around twenty knights from amongst the cavalry of the *mujahidun*, and a few infantry. He left the armies with the emir Mujahid, and said to him, 'Hold your position. I am going to march in the direction of this road, to see it for myself.

So the imam set out, disappearing from sight with his companions. When they reached the gate they found there the idol-worshippers who were guarding it, including the patrician Sa'ul, and Yohannes mounted on horses like fiery torches. Then the imam put the foot-soldiers from the army of the

Bahr in the lead, and the Muslims charged them, with the cavalry climbing up behind them. The idol-worshippers fled, but the Muslim cavalry headed them off on the [second] path, while the wazir Mujahid fought them on the original path. They put them to flight and pursued them, killing and capturing them. Yohannes grabbed hold of a tree, and was dangling from it when the tree fell and he died. May God not have mercy upon him.

[The patrician Sa'ul escapes to Samen]

Then the imam returned to the mountain where Yohannes had fallen, and sent the foot-soldiers up to this place. They encountered all the patricians there, and took them captive. They captured the younger brother of the patrician Sa'ul, whose name was Ganzay, along with the patrician of Bagemder, whose name was Baman, and the *sum* of Saraye, and around twenty infantry as well as the patricians,^{^7}

The only one of the patricians to escape was Sa'ul who fled to Samen⁸⁶⁹ which is rugged country, dotted with fortified citadels and lofty mountains where there is no access to cavalry. There is no country in Abyssinia more impassable than it.

Now when the imam said, 'we will pursue those who are fleeing' some people from the Balaw came to him, amongst them the *sum* Muhammed and his companions. They said to the imam, 'Don't enter the country of Samen, You won't prevail over him, even if you remain there a long time'. The imam replied, 'We

will not leave Samen until we have pacified it. It is the crown of the whole region. If it embraces Islam, then the whole region will do so.

The imam then entrusted the government of the district to Ganzay, the brother of the patrician Sa'ul; until he himself should enter it. Ganzay left his

wife behind with the imam as a pledge of his good faith, so the imam gave him his freedom and he left, and set about pacifying the region. But then he broke his word, and to save his skin, he lied, abandoning his wife.

[Ahmad executes the prisoners from Bahr Amba]

In Samen there were inaccessible fortresses and many safe refuges. In it there was also a fortified and precipitate mountain peak. Its summit was a half-day's trek and on it there were cultivated fields and ploughed land. If one man blocked the road, even a mighty army could not climb up because of its narrowness.

The imam sent Absama Nur to the mountain. He set off, and climbed it without their noticing him, and seized it. Then he returned. The imam had the forty prisoners from Bahr Amba^{8,11} brought to him, and had them beheaded.

Jewish Abyssinians (once) controlled the district of Samen. They are called, in their own language, Falasa,⁸¹ because they chant the praise of the One God and have faith in none other. They have no Prophet and no saint. For forty years the people of Bahr Amba had enslaved them and put them to work as servants. They tilled the fields for them.

[The Falasa assist the imam who pacifies the region]

After the imam had won the victory over the patrician Sa'ul, all the Falasa came - from deep valleys and even from mountain caves - because they did not dwell in the lowlands, but in the mountains and in caves. They said to the imam 'For forty years there has been hatred between us and the people of Bahr Amba. Let us kill them now, those who are left. And let us occupy their

strongholds now that you have conquered them. We will be sufficient to do this to them. So, remain in your camp, and what we will do to them will astonish you⁷.

The imam sent some soldiers with them and they set out for the mountain. They climbed it and bound the people of Bahr Amba in chains, and then went back to the imam with them.

The imam stayed in Samen until he conquered it. He took away all the people

of Bahr Amba from it, and killed them. The people of Samen in the meantime became reconciled with the Falasa [f°99] who 'paid the poll-tax in

•

87^ _

acknowledgement of superiority, and were in a state of subjection', 'Garad 'Utman bin Juhar was left in charge of it, along with Farasaham 'Utman. Its people became peasant farmers for the Muslims.

The storyteller, may God have mercy upon him, says: After the

*

871

Muslim victory the wazir 'Abbas climbed the mountain ' of Wagara and stationed himself in it. Then he sent the wazir Mujahid to Bagemder which he entered and conquered. Its inhabitants made peace, became peasant farmers for the Muslims, and paid the poll-tax.

The imam then left Samen for Wagara which passed over to the Muslims in the same way. Over it, the imam appointed Garad Sabr ad-Din,

\$74

and built towns and mosques in it that are there today.'

He also appointed Farasaham ⁴ All along with Farasaham Sultan, 'Adil, Samsu and Takla over the land of Darha⁸⁷ which extends from Bagemder to Gojjam. He built towns and mosques there, and its people remained on as peasant farmers for the Muslims.

In the same way he appointed Abu Bakr Qatln who had his army with him as governor of the district of Wafla and Kan fat,^{*6} from Bagemder to the

K77

•

*

land of Wag. With Abu Bakr were forty knights from Balaw, with the *sum* Sakr and the *sum* Muhammad. He pacified it and its people remained on as peasant farmers for them. He built towns in it, and mosques.

[Ahmad chooses Dambya for his place of residence]

Then the imam set off from Wagara for the region of Dambya which he entered. It is a country with an abundance of resources and without an equal in Abyssinia: never having known drought.

It has a market in which you can find horses so numerous that they arc

like cattle. It is the 'gold seaport, and around it there are many countries, like that of the Nubians, from which the gold comes.

He organized it, and chose it for his residence.^' He utterly pacified it, and its inhabitants remained on as peasant fanners for the Muslims. The imam built mosques and divided the tenitory amongst all the Muslims, down to each of the knights.

(a 001 Hit⁰)

He gave the frontier-territory of Taka, " which abutts the country of Homjan, ' to the wazir 'Abbas. The Muslims enjoyed a period of rest.

The storyteller,; may God have mercy upon him, says: [f'100] In Dambya there was a lake of sweet water,^{8*4} that took four days' journey byboat to cross it. There were thirty islands⁸⁵⁰ in the middle of it, that produced sweet smelling plants ^{SW1} and an abundance of fruit.

[Refugees flee before the *mujahidun* to the thirty islands]

All the patricians and soldiers of the idol-worshippers who would not obey the Muslims crossed over to the islands. The imam sent to them asking them to pay the poll-tax. They refused, and were very inaccessible on their

887

islands. They had boats that they made from rushes from the papyrus plant. They laid it down, layer upon layer, and from it made a boat that flcw^r like a bird. No wooden vessel could overtake them; only one similarly made to theirs. They had fortified themselves on their islands. They constructed barricades,^{1m} and would moor a small vessel to a big vessel alongside the barricade.

The monks and the soldiers who were with them asked, 'Who can do anything against us? We are in the middle of the lake. No one can make vessels [like ours] apart from us; only if they do as we do'. The idol- worshippers and the monks w^rere presumptuous and vain. The king of Abyssinia appointed a monk, Nabrazun, as their leader, because he knew that the monks w^rere resolute in the practice of their religion, and took no pleasure in the w orld.After the imam and the Muslims had settled down in the land of Dambya, the imam commanded that some big trees be felled, and that they be hollow^rcd out into boats, because those from the country

of the Arabs need

pitch and^{ss41} And we had no tar or^{sy"} So they cut down the trees.

They hollowed them out so that each boat could carry thirty men. In charge of the making of the boats was an Arab. Ahmad bin Suleiman al-Mahri.^{S M} He cut down eight trees/⁹²

The imam found waiting for the boats to be made tiresome, so he ordered them to leave them [to be made], and set off with the Muslims to the land of the Nubians and the land of Gojjam.[^] He laid them waste, and enslaved their inhabitants. In Gojjam, the imam met up with the emir Sama⁶un and his army,^{SQ4} whom he had left in Gedem. Sama'un had come there, as we described earlier on, when the imam had set off from the place after the king of Abyssinia had marched against him with a vast troop. He departed to confront him, with forty knights, and put him to flight, capturing all his wealth and his soldiers.

As the land of Gedem proved to be incapable of supporting his vast army, he moved away to the the land of Gojjam. and made his residence there as will be described in the clear account of this battle and of what happened

during the second war in which the Most High God was benevolent towards him,

[Ahmad embarks on the boats]

The storyteller, may the Most High God have mercy upon him, says: When the imam returned to Dambya from his foray, he pitched his camp by the lake there. The boats were built. So the imam ordered the people to embark on the lake, to fight. The soldiers said to the imam, 'Travelling on the lake, and fighting will succeed only if you are there. If you embark with us, then the soldiers will fight'. So he made a r a f t f r o m two of the boats, and, in all, made three rafts.

The imam embarked in one of them, and the Arabs and the soldiers in the rest of them. Before this, the Malasai⁸⁹⁶ had never embarked on the sea, and knew nothing of fighting on it. The boats set off for an island called Galila⁸⁹⁷ When they were in the middle of the lake, the Christians set out from their island in their boats - around fifty of them. They flew from the island like birds and meeting up with the Muslims on the lake, fought them with slingshot and stones. The boats of the Christians being from the interior of the island, were small, and made of papyrus stems * ^hand they could not approach those of the Muslims without their overpowering them. When the Muslims drew near to the island which had the

barricades in it. they found water as deep as twice the height of a man,^{s 3} and surmised that they had arrived and that the land was near by the barricades. So they disembarked and fought at the barricades.¹⁰⁰⁰* The Christians were routed.

The conquest was achieved, and the Muslims had the victory and the triumph over the idol-worshippers.

To God be the praise, who supplies his blessing, and whose superabundance suffices. We cannot enumerate Your glories in the way that You glorify Yourself

Forty nobles, knights, from Dambya, went to the imam, all of the nobles, with their chiefs: sharif ad-Din bin ⁴ AIL sharif Mahmud, and sharif ‘Abd ar-Rahman. The imam received them hospitably, and gave them the borderland of the province, to the border with Nubia. All of Dambya to the region of Nubia was pacified.

[Conclusion]

God be praised for the religion of Islam, that God has enabled to gain the upper-hand over all other religions, and has made sincere *mujahidun* one of its pillars. May God bless and grant salvation to our lord Muhammad, the favourite among the sons of ¹ Adnan/¹¹¹ and upon his family, and his companions, and, as day succeeds night, upon those who succeeded them, and upon the successors of those who succeeded them.

Praised be God, the Lord of the worlds: bountiful, upright and blessed praise as befits our Lord, the Most High. May He be pleased.

[Colophon]

Thus ends the first part of the Book of the *Futuh al-Habasa*, known as '*Destiny's Splendour*'⁹⁰² with which God has blessed and shown himself gracious towards us. It has been composed by the poor and insignificant servant of God, Sihab ad-Din the sheikh Ahmad bin ¹ Abd al-Qadir bin Salem bin ‘Utman, who dwells in Jizan.

May God pardon him, and his parents, and all the Muslim men and women, and all believing men and women. This book is the first ever complete English translation of the Arabic account on the campaigns of Imam Ahmad b. Ibrahim al-Ghazi (popularly known as Gran) as written by the Yemeni jurist, Shihab al-din Ahmad b. Abd al-Qadir b. Salim b. Uthman (also known as Arab Faqih)... it is a welcome addition to the rich corpus of Arabic literary and historical sources relevant to the sixteenth-century Ethiopia and the Horn. It is particularly useful for English-speaking researchers and established scholars who cannot read either the Arabic text or the authoritative French translation prepared by Rene Basset...both Stenhouse and Pankhurst, and the publisher, deserve high commendation,

respectively, for producing such a valuable work that represents a major contribution to the history of Ethiopia and the Horn, and for making it available to the wider English- speaking readership and scholarship.

Hussein Ahmed is a Professor of History at Addis Ababa University. He is a leading historian of Islam in Ethiopia.

In the history of conflict in Africa and beyond, "few stories of drama and human tragedy equal" Imama Ahmad's conquest of the Christian kingdom of Ethiopia (1529-1543)- His short lived spectacular victories and determination to replace Christianity by Islam and the remarkable survival of Christianity in Ethiopia" is a story of epic proportions" which still generates strong emotion among both the Christian and the Muslim population of Ethiopia. In other words, Imam Ahmad's jihadic war besides being legendary was a major turning point...

This is truly a wonderful work, which is destined to remain an indispensable source for the history of Ethiopia and the Horn of Africa during the first half of the tumultuous sixteenth century. Anyone interested in understanding the intensity and brutality of religious war will be rewarded by reading this classic.

Mohammed Hassen is an Associate Professor of African history at Georgia State University in Atlanta. He is the author of The Oromo of Ethiopia: A History 1570-1860.